FORD **Transit & E-Transit**
Body and Equipment Mounting Manual
North America

Date of Publication: 11/2025

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of development the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2025
All rights reserved

Table of Contents

1 General Information

1.1 About this Publication 10
1.1.1 EV Training 10
1.2 About this Manual 12
1.2.1 Introduction 12
1.2.2 How to Use This Manual 12
1.2.3 Important Safety Instructions 12
1.2.4 Supplemental Information 13
1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects 14
1.3.1 Legal Obligations and Liabilities 14
1.3.2 General Product Safety Requirement 14
1.3.3 Restraints System 14
1.3.4 Drilling and Welding 14
1.3.5 Minimum Requirements for Brake System 14
1.3.6 Road Safety 15
1.3.7 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (BEV) 15
1.4 Contact Information 16
1.5 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) 17
1.6 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines 19
1.6.1 Modification Impact on Fuel Economy and Performance 19
1.6.2 Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes 19
1.7 Lifting 20
1.7.1 ICE (Gasoline) Vehicles 20
1.7.2 E-Transit BEV Vehicles 21
1.8 Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH) 23
1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage 24
1.10 Package and Ergonomics 26
1.10.1 General Component Package Guidelines 26
1.10.2 Driver Reach Zones 26
1.10.3 Driver Field of View 26
1.10.4 Conversion Effects on Parking Aids 26
1.10.5 Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit 26
1.10.6 Vehicle Dimensions 26
1.10.7 Chassis Cab Body Extensions 26
1.11 Hardware 29
1.12 Load Distribution 30
1.12.1 Load Distribution 30
1.12.2 Center of Gravity Position 30
1.12.3 Center of Gravity Height Test Procedure 30
1.12.4 Center of Gravity Height Calculation 32
1.12.5 Formulas 32
1.13 Towing 34

2 Chassis

2.1 Suspension System 36
2.2 Front Suspension 37
2.2.1 Springs and Spring Mounting 37
2.3 Rear Suspension 38
2.3.1 Springs and Spring Mounting 38
2.4 Wheels and Tires 39
2.4.1 Wheel Clearance 39
2.4.2 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 39

2.4.3 Spare Wheel 39
2.4.4 Tire Repair Kit 39
2.4.5 Painting Road Wheels 39
2.5 Brake System 40
2.5.1 General 40
2.5.2 Brake Hoses General 40
2.5.3 Parking Brake 40
2.5.4 Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes 40
2.5.5 Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist 40

3 Powertrain

3.1 Engine/E Drive 42
3.1.1 Engine Types/E Drive Types 42
3.2 Engine Cooling (ICE) 43
3.2.1 Auxiliary Heater Systems 43
3.2.2 Fuel Fired Auxiliary Heaters 44
3.2.3 Air Flow Restrictions 44
3.3 Accessory Drive (ICE) 45
3.3.1 Front End Accessory Drives (FEAD) — General Information 45
3.4 Automatic Transmission, Transfer Case and Transfer Unit 48
3.5 Exhaust System (ICE) 49
3.5.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts 49
3.5.2 Exhaust Pipes and Supports 50
3.5.3 Exhaust Heat Shields 50
3.5.4 Cutaway Exhaust Systems 50
3.6 Fuel System (ICE) 51
3.6.1 3.5L PFDI and 3.5L EcoBoost Gasoline Fuel System 51
3.6.2 25 Gallon (95L) Fuel Tank 51
3.6.3 31 Gallon (115L) Fuel Tank 52
3.7 High Voltage System & Electrified Drivetrain 53
3.7.1 High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions 53
3.7.2 High Voltage System Overview 55
3.7.3 HV System De-Energizing 57
3.7.4 HV Cooling System 57
3.7.5 Electric Drive Assembly 58
3.7.6 High Voltage Battery 58
3.7.7 EV Charging 59

4 Electrical

4.1 Electrical System Overview 60
4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides 61
4.2.1 Wiring Harness Information 61
4.2.2 General Wiring and Routing 61
4.2.3 Connector Pin Out Practices 61
4.2.4 Unused Connectors 61
4.2.5 Grounding 61
4.2.6 Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles 62
4.2.7 Water Leakage Prevention 62
4.2.8 Wiring Splicing Procedures 62
4.2.9 Wiring Specification 62
4.2.10 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Awareness 63
4.2.11 Wiring through Sheet Metal 63
4.2.12 Precautionary Drill Zones - High Voltage (HV) Cables 64
4.2.13 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules, LV Cables and Connectors 67
4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding 69

4.2.15 Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding 72
4.2.16 Precautionary Drill Zones - Rear Cargo Area 73
4.2.17 Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (59B) 74
4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar 74
4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity 77
4.3 Communications Network 78
4.3.1 CAN-Bus System Description and Interface 78
4.3.2 Body Control Module (BCM) 81
4.4 LV Charging System (12V) 83
4.4.1 General Information 83
4.4.2 LV Charging System Layout 83
4.4.3 Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC) 85
4.4.4 SRC Override 85
4.4.5 Third Party High Power Mode 85
4.4.6 Test Functionality 86
4.4.7 Charge Balance Guidelines 86
4.4.8 Circuit Diagrams 86
4.4.9 Alternator Characteristics 87
4.5 Battery Systems 89
4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations 89
4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles 91
4.5.3 Battery Options 94
4.5.4 Battery Rules 95
4.5.5 Battery Configurations 96
4.5.6 Convertor Fit Additional Third Party Batteries 96
4.5.7 Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A **98**
4.5.8 Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS) 99
4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems 100
4.5.10 Additional Loads and Charging Systems 101
4.6 Battery Protection 102
4.6.1 Interior Lights and 12V Sockets 102
4.6.2 Standard Battery Guard (SBG) and Load-Shedding 102
4.6.3 Power Connections 102
4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality 103
4.7 Climate Control System 105
4.7.1 Front Climate Control System 105
4.7.2 Rear Climate Control System-ICE 107
4.8 Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC) 108
4.9 Horn 109
4.10 Electronic Engine Controls - ICE 110
4.10.1 Automatic Engine Idle Shutdown (AEIS) 110
4.10.2 Vehicle Maximum Speed Setting 110
4.10.3 Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) - New Section 110
4.11 Information and Entertainment System 111
4.11.1 Audio Head Unit (AHU) - Multimedia in Car Entertainment (ICE) Pack Summary 111
4.11.2 SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with SDARS 112
4.12 Exterior Lighting 114
4.12.1 Reversing Lamps 114
4.12.2 Lamps – Front Fog Lamps 114
4.12.3 Lighting Loads 114
4.12.4 Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication 114
4.12.5 Lamps for Wide Vehicles 114
4.12.6 Electrically Operated Door Mirrors 114
4.12.7 Power for Additional External Lamps 115
4.13 Interior Lighting 120
4.13.1 Additional Internal Lamps 120
4.13.2 Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Interior 120

4.14 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna 121
4.14.1 Bull Shark Fin Antenna 121
4.14.2 Split Antenna 123
4.15 Adaptive Cruise Control 125
4.16 Front Windshield Camera 126
4.17 Auto Wipe and Auto Lamp for Vehicles with Large Overhangs 127
4.18 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) 128
4.19 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems 129
4.19.1 Door Removal or Modification 129
4.19.2 Central Locking 129
4.19.3 Third Button on Key Fob - Single Chassis Cab 130
4.19.4 Remote Keyless Entry / Tire Pressure Monitoring System Receiver (RKE/TPMS Receiver) 130
4.20 Fuses and Relays 132
4.20.1 Fuses 132
4.20.2 Relays 132
4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections 133
4.21.1 General Information 133
4.21.2 Customer Connection Points 133
4.21.3 High Current Supply and Ground Connections 134
4.21.4 Vehicle Interface Connector 135
4.21.5 Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE) 137
4.21.6 High Capacity Auxiliary Switches (ICE) 144
4.21.7 High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector 145
4.21.8 Additional Vehicle Signals/Features 147
4.21.9 Adding Connectors 147
4.21.10 Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits 147
4.21.11 Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) 147
4.22 Grounding 154
4.22.1 Ground Points - BEV 154
4.22.2 Ground Points - ICE 161
4.23 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Relocation - General Information 166
4.23.1 Important Information 166
4.23.2 Mandatory Requirements 166
4.23.3 Tolerances 166
4.24 BLIS Radar Relocation Guidance for Chassis Cab/Cutaways 168
4.24.1 BLIS and Park Aid Installation Kit 168
4.24.2 Disassembly Instructions for Delivered BLIS & Park Aid Packaging 169
4.24.3 BLIS Radar Installation Considerations 169
4.24.4 Chassis Cab/Cutaway Field of View 170
4.24.5 Chassis Cab/Cutaway Calibration Table 171
4.24.6 Positioning the Radar on Chassis Cab/Cutaways 172
4.24.7 Process Steps for Positioning the Radar on Chassis Cab/Cutaway 175
4.25 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance 176
4.25.1 General Requirements 176
4.25.2 Sensor Positions and Tolerances 176
4.25.3 Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Requirements 176
4.25.4 Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting 176
4.25.5 Park Aid Sensor Relocation Guideline 178
4.26 Cameras 179
4.26.1 Rear View Camera Connector Changes 179
4.26.2 General Information for Rear View Camera on Chassis Cab/Cutaway 179
4.26.3 Rear View Camera Installation Kit for Chassis Cab/Cutaway 179
4.26.4 Rear View Camera Coax Cable Routing for Chassis Cab/Cutaway 181
4.26.5 Rear View Camera Operation After Installation 182
4.26.6 Rear View Camera Service 182
4.26.7 Reverse Brake Assist 182
4.26.8 360º Camera 182

4.27 Pro Power Onboard Cutaway/Single Chassis Cab (BEV) 184

5 Body & Paint

5.1 Body 188
5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info 188
5.1.2 Welding/Plasma Cutting 188
5.1.3 Boron Steel Parts 190
5.1.4 Precautionary Floor Drilling - Gasoline 192
5.1.5 Precautionary Drilling/Welding - BEV 192
5.1.6 Precautionary Floor Drilling: BEV Vans 192
5.1.7 Integrated Bodies and Conversions 193
5.1.8 Chassis Cab/Cutaway 194
5.1.9 Cutaways 201
5.1.10 Front End Integrity for Cooling, Crash, Aerodynamics and Lighting 203
5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment 204
5.2.1 Hydraulic Liftgate 204
5.3 Racking Systems 205
5.3.1 Racking Systems 205
5.4 Loadspace 207
5.5 Internal Partitions/Bulkhead 208
5.6 Body Closures 209
5.6.1 Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System 209
5.7 Interior Trim 213
5.7.1 Load Compartment Interior Lining 213
5.7.2 Plywood Lining/Cladding 213
5.8 Door Mirrors 214
5.9 Seats 215
5.9.1 Van 215
5.9.2 Windowed Van 215
5.9.3 Heated Seats 215
5.9.4 Rear Seat Fixing Positions 215
5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms 217
5.10.1 Heated Rear Window 217
5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 218
5.11.1 Airbags 218
5.11.2 Restraints Control Module (RCM) 219
5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors 219
5.12 Seatbelt Systems 221
5.12.1 Seatbelts 221
5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone 221
5.12.3 Seatbelt Reminder 221
5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder 222
5.13 Roof 223
5.13.1 Roof Ventilation 223
5.13.2 Roof Racks and Load Carriers 223
5.14 Corrosion Prevention 225
5.14.1 General 225
5.14.2 Repairing Damaged Paint 225
5.14.3 Under Body Protection and Material 225
5.14.4 Painting Road Wheels 225
5.14.5 Contact Corrosion 225
5.15 Frame and Body Mounting 226
5.15.1 Mounting Points and Tubing 226
5.15.2 Self-Supporting Body Structure 227
5.15.3 Extended Chassis Frame 228

5.15.4 Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing 230
5.15.5 Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mounting 231

1.1 About this Publication

This **Body and Equipment Mounting Manual (BEMM)** is the publication for the 2026 MY Transit & E-Transit and includes further updates since June 2025 publication.

The main changes in this version are:

November 2025:

1.2.1 Introduction Content updated
1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage Content updated with further battery storage guidelines
1.10.6 Vehicle Dimensions Reference link to Body Builders Layout Book added
4.14 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna Content updated
4.14.1 Bull Shark Fin Antenna New section
4.14.2 Split Antenna New Section
4.15 Adaptive Cruise Control Illustration updated
4.26.3 Rear View Camera Installation Kit for Chassis Cab/Cutaway Kit part table added
4.26.5 Rear View Camera After Installation Note added

June 2025:

1.3.2 General Product Safety Requirement - Warning added
1.5 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) - Content updated
1.7.2 E-Transit BEV Vehicles - Illustration added
1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage - Content updated
1.13 Towing- Reference to RV and Trailer Tow Guide added and notes amended
2.4.4 Tire Repair Kit - Section added
3.3 Accessory Drive (ICE)- Illustration of RWD 3.5L PFDI Gasoline Engine updated
3.5.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts - Gasoline Extended Exhaust (Chassis Cab/Cutaway) - part number and image updated
3.7.2 High Voltage System Overview - Exploded view of HV stack components - images updated
3.7.4 HV Cooling System - Content revised
3.7.6 High Voltage Battery - HV Battery Venting - Numbered points are now warnings
4.2.2 General Wiring and Routing - Content updated
4.2.6 Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles - Content updated
4.2.11 Wiring through Sheet Metal - Image and content updated
4.2.12 Precautionary Drill Zones - High Voltage (HV) Cables - Illustrations updated
4.2.13 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules LV Cables and Connectors - Illustrations updated
4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding - Illustrations updated and note added
4.2.15 Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding- Illustration updated
4.2.17 Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (59B)- Content updated
4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar - Content updated
4.3.1 CAN-Bus System Description and Interface - Network diagram updated
4.5 Battery Systems - Section title and warning updated
4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations- Caution and table content updated
4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles - Warning updated
4.5.5 Battery Configurations - Illustration updated
4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems- Part numbers updated
4.10.3 Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) - New Section
4.12.7 Power for Additional External Lamps - Illustrations updated
4.13 Interior Lighting- Content updated
4.14 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna - Content updated
4.16 Front Windshield Camera- Illustration updated
4.19.1 Door Removal or Modification- Warning added
4.19.2 Central Locking - Content updated
4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections- Content updated
4.21.4 Vehicle Interface Connector- Content updated
4.21.5 Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE) - Illustration and connector detail updated
4.21.6 High Capacity Auxiliary Switches (ICE) - Switch illustration updated
4.21.7 High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector - Section added
4.21.11 Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) - Section added
4.23 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Relocation - General Information - Section added
4.24 BLIS Radar Relocation Guidance for Chassis Cab/Cutaways - Section added
4.25 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance - Section added
4.26 Cameras - Section added
4.27 Pro Power Onboard Cutaway / Single Chassis Cab (BEV) - Section added
5.1.4 Precautionary Floor Drilling - Gasoline - Title updated/images removed/content updated
5.1.5 Precautionary Drilling/Welding - BEV -Title updated/images removed/content updated
5.1.6 Precautionary Floor Drilling: BEV Vans - Title updated/images removed/content updated
5.1.8 Chassis Cab/Cutaway - Illustrations updated
5.9.1 Van - Section added
5.9.2 Windowed Van - Section added
5.9.3 Heated Seats - Section added
5.9.4 Rear Seat Fixing Positions - Section added
5.10.2 Rear and Side Windows - Section added
5.11.1 Airbags - Illustrations and notes updated
5.11.2 Restraints Control Module (RCM) - Illustration and content updated
5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors - Illustration updated
5.12.3 Seatbelt Reminder - Title and content updated
5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder - Section added

Please refer to the relevant sections for further information.

It is recommended to review this manual in full.

For further information or to contact us please go to the **Body Builders Advisory Service**, https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

1.1.1 EV Training

Ford Customer Service Division (FCSD) develops the training material and deploys it to the Ford Dealer Network. For details on how to obtain this training, upfitters should visit https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas or www.motorcraftservice.com.

Recommended training regarding vehicle High Voltage systems: https://www.motorcraftservice.com/Product/Training.

Select "**High Voltage Systems**", then select "**High Voltage Systems Safety**" course **F414101103** (fee applies). Other courses that are applicable to your interest and needs may also be offered at this site.

Emergency Response Guide will be found at this link: https://www.fleet.ford.com/showroom/resources/.

Ford Tool Resources via https://rotunda.service-solutions.com.

1.2 About this Manual

1.2.1 Introduction

This guide is published by Ford and provides general descriptions and advice for modifying vehicles.

3 new statements added below

The intention of this manual is to support the conversion industry. Although individual or private users can benefit from this manual, as a manufacturer, we want to provide genuine conversion businesses with information needed for vehicle conversion/modification. If, as an upfitter, the information you require is not in this manual or you have further questions, please contact **Body Builders Advisory Service**, https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

Any changes made to the vehicle must be carried out by a competent person and, upon completion, the vehicle must be returned to a safe state.

There are references to Workshop Manual and Wiring Diagrams throughout the BEMM. Therefore, it is strongly recommended to subscribe and obtain access to these resources from Ford Service Info at https://www.fordserviceinfo.com/.

It must be emphasized that any change to the basic vehicle, which does not meet the enclosed guideline standards, may severely inhibit the ability of the vehicle to perform its function. Mechanical failures, structural failure, component unreliability or vehicle instability will lead to customer dissatisfaction. Appropriate design and application of body, equipment and or accessories is key to ensuring that customer satisfaction is not adversely affected.

The information contained within this publication takes the form of recommendations to be followed when vehicle modifications are undertaken. It must be remembered that certain modifications may invalidate legal approvals and application for re-certification may be necessary.

Ford cannot guarantee the operation of the vehicle if non-Ford approved electrical systems are installed. Ford electrical systems are designed and tested to function under operational extremes and have been subjected to the equivalent of ten years of driving under such conditions.

This manual may contain references to features and options that have not been fitted to your particular vehicle. Variations occur across territories and can also be affected by external factors. For availability of features and options, please contact your local Ford dealer.

1.2.2 How to Use This Manual

This manual covers vehicle conversion procedures.

The pages at the start of this manual list the content, by group. A group covers a specific portion of the vehicle. The manual is divided into five groups:

- General Information
- Chassis
- Powertrain
- Electrical
- Body and Paint

The number of the group is the first number of a section number. Each title listed in the contents, links to the relevant section of the manual.

In some sections of the manual it may refer you to see additional sections for information. The links have been provided in blue text. There is also an alphabetical index at the back of the manual. As with the contents pages, you will be able to link to sections. To do this just click on the page number.

All left and right handed references to the vehicle are taken from a position sitting in the driver's seat, looking forward, unless otherwise stated.

As you read through this manual, you will come across: WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTES.

If a warning, caution or note is placed at the beginning of a series of steps, it applies to multiple steps. If the warning, caution or note only applies to one step, it is placed at the beginning of the specific step (after the step number).

WARNING: Warnings are used to indicate that failure to follow a procedure correctly may result in death or personal injury.

CAUTION: Cautions are used to indicate that failure to follow a procedure correctly may result in damage to the vehicle or equipment being used.

NOTE: Notes are used to provide additional essential information required to carry out a complete and satisfactory modification.

Updated or new content in this manual is indicated with purple megaphone icon.

= Updated/New content

1.2.3 Important Safety Instructions

Appropriate conversion procedures are essential for the safe, reliable operation of all vehicles as well as the personal safety of the individual carrying out the work.

This manual cannot possibly anticipate all such variations and provide advice or cautions as to each. Anyone who does not follow the instructions provided in this manual must first establish that they compromise neither their personal safety nor the vehicle integrity by their choice of methods, tools or components.

WARNING: Any personnel working with or undertaking any modifications to the E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)

must receive training for High Voltage (HV) vehicle systems prior to starting any work.

"Working on Electrical Vehicles" includes performing mechanical works, performing electrical work and switching activities on these vehicles.

"Electrical Vehicle" includes all possible types such as HEV (Full Hybrids), PHEV (Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle), BEV (Battery Electric Vehicle) or other versions.

"Appropriate Training" means that you as a person who followed the training, has sufficient knowledge about the risks and that you have knowledge about the required safety measures to perform the work in a safe way. The competencies granted by this training are still up-to-date and have not expired.

WARNING: Orange colored cables are HV system (approximately 400V DC) parts and must not be modified nor rerouted.

CAUTION: There are limitations when adding additional electrical devices. Any power take-off consumption needs to be controlled within the guidelines. Extra equipment and usage may have an impact to weight and vehicle driving range.

1.2.4 Supplemental Information

For further information or to contact us please go to the Body Builders Advisory Service, https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

1.3 Commercial and Legal Aspects

1.3.1 Legal Obligations and Liabilities

The Vehicle Modifier should consult with their legal advisor on any questions concerning their legal obligations and liabilities.

1.3.2 General Product Safety Requirement

The Vehicle Modifier shall ensure that any vehicle it places on the market complies with all F/CMVSS standards.

The Vehicle Modifier shall release Ford from all liability for damages resulting from:

- Failure to comply with these Body Equipment Mounting Manual directives - in particular, Warnings .
- Faulty design, production, installation, assembly or alteration not originally specified by Ford.
- Failure to comply with the basic fit for purpose principles inherent in the original product.

WARNINGS:

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR), Front Gross Axle Weight Rating (FGAWR), Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (RGAWR) or trailer ratings.

Do not change the tire size or load rating.

Do not modify the steering system.

Excessive heat can build up from the exhaust system, in particular from the catalytic converter. Ensure adequate heat shields are maintained. Maintain sufficient clearance to hot parts.

The travel and function of pedals must not be restricted.

Do not modify or remove heat protection shields.

Do not route any electrical cables with the Anti-lock Braking System and Traction Control System cables because of extraneous signal risk. It is generally not recommended to hang electrical cables off existing harnesses or pipes.

Do not change original location or remove warning labels provided with the base vehicle in view to the driver. Ensure that labels remain in full view.

Warning added

For Component Traceability, it is imperative that components removed during the conversion process are refitted to the same vehicle, in accordance with Ford Workshop Manual procedures.

CAUTION: Ensure that components removed during conversion are kept clean and dry.

1.3.3 Restraints System

WARNINGS:

Modifications to the restraints system are not allowed.

Airbags are explosive. For safe removal and storage during modification follow the procedures in the Ford Workshop Manual.

Do not alter, modify or relocate the airbag, sensor and modules of the restraints system or any of its components.

Attachments or modifications to the front end or B Pillar of the vehicle may affect the airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled deployment.

For additional information, refer to 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

1.3.4 Drilling and Welding

WARNING: Do not Drill or Weld Boron steel parts, see figures E184299 and E185270 in the welding section of this manual.

Refer to 5.1 Body.

Drilling and welding of frames and body structure have to be conducted following the guidelines in Welding and Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing sections.

Refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.

1.3.5 Minimum Requirements for Brake System

It is not recommended to modify the brake system. If a special modification should require modifications:

- maintain original settings
- maintain brake certification load distribution

Changes to the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control ESC (also known as ESP) system are not permitted.

1.3.6 Road Safety

The respective instructions should be strictly observed to maintain operational and road safety of the vehicle.

1.3.7 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (BEV)

WARNING: Do not move or modify the components of the AVAS system. The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System warning is a legal requirement.

Refer to 4.18 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).

1.4 Contact Information

As a manufacturer, we want to provide you with the information you need for your vehicle modification. If the information you require is not in this manual or you have further questions, please contact Ford Body Builders Advisory Service at https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

1.5 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)

Content updated

WARNINGS:

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes, or hoses.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 3.9" (100mm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

NOTE: Ford Motor Company test and certify vehicles to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is the modifier's responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, Bluetooth® connectivity or satellite navigation.

NOTE: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in the vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. Ford Motor Company do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Frequency Overview

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watts (Peak RMS)	Antenna Position
1 - 30[1]	50W	1
50 - 54	50W	2, 3
68 - 87	50W	2, 3
144 - 174	50W	2, 3
380 - 512	50W	2, 3
806 - 940	10W	2, 3

[1] For battery electric vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

Permitted Antenna Locations

E167532

Item	Description
1	Antenna Location 1
2	Antenna Location 2
3	Antenna Location 3

NOTE: Only fit the antenna to the roof of your vehicle in the positions shown in figure E167532.

NOTE: After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With ignition **ON.**
- With the engine running/vehicle ready to drive.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin, by the transmitter installed, do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

1.6 Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines

It is necessary to take into account the customer usage profile and the anticipated vehicle duty cycles of the modified vehicle in order to choose the appropriate specification of the base vehicle.

It is necessary to select the appropriate drive, engine, gear ratio, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR), Front Gross Axle Weight Rating (FGAWR), Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (RGAWR) and payload of the base vehicle to match the customer requirements.

Where possible, make sure that the base vehicle is ordered with any necessary plant fit options.

A high numeric gear ratio is recommended for vehicles with customer requirements for:

- high payload
- Trailer tow
- frequent stop-go cycles
- high altitude and gradients
- terrain conditions such as found on building and construction sites

1.6.1 Modification Impact on Fuel Economy and Performance

Any modification may affect the fuel consumption and performance depending on the aerodynamics and the weight added by the modification. It is advisable to control the weight, but without deteriorating other vehicle attributes and functions (especially those related to safety and durability).

1.6.2 Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes

CAUTION: Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR), Front Gross Axle Weight Rating (FGAWR), Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (RGAWR) or trailer rating limits.

NOTE: Raising the center of gravity will affect ride and handling.

NOTE: The vehicle should be evaluated for safe operation prior to sale.

1.7 Lifting

WARNING: When lifting the vehicle with a two post lift, for the removal of the engine/ transmission or rear axle, make sure the vehicle is secured to the lift using vehicle retention straps to prevent tilting. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

CAUTIONS:

When lifting the vehicle with two post lift, vehicle lift arm adapters must be used under the lifting points.

When lifting the vehicle with a two post lift, the maximum curb weight must not be exceeded.

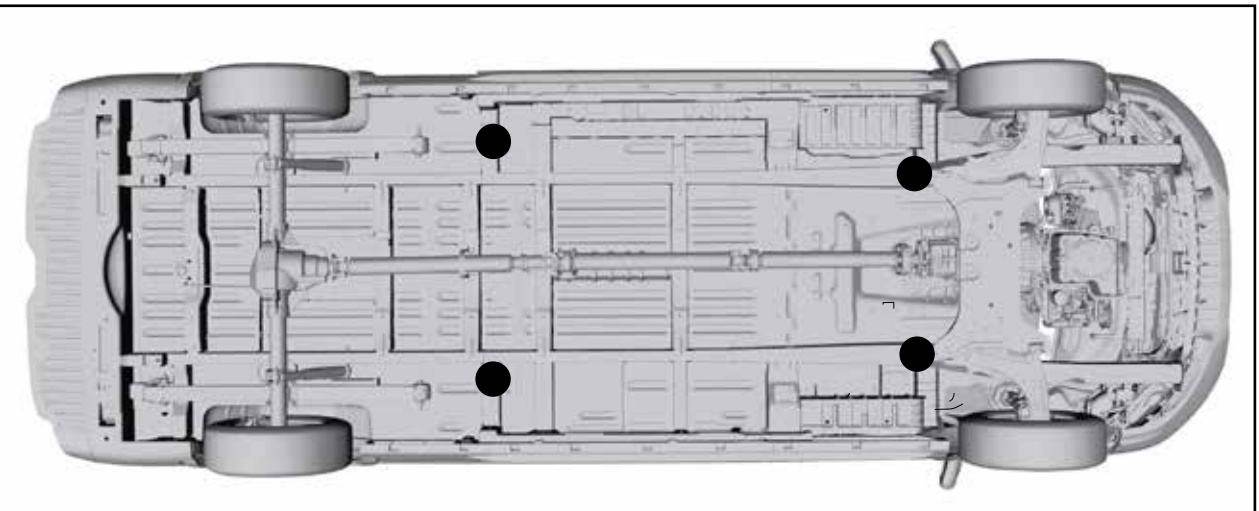
It is important that only the correct lifting and support locations are used at all times.

Ensure there is sufficient clearance when positioning the lifting equipment to prevent damage of any underfloor components.

NOTE: For further information refer to the Owner's Manual.

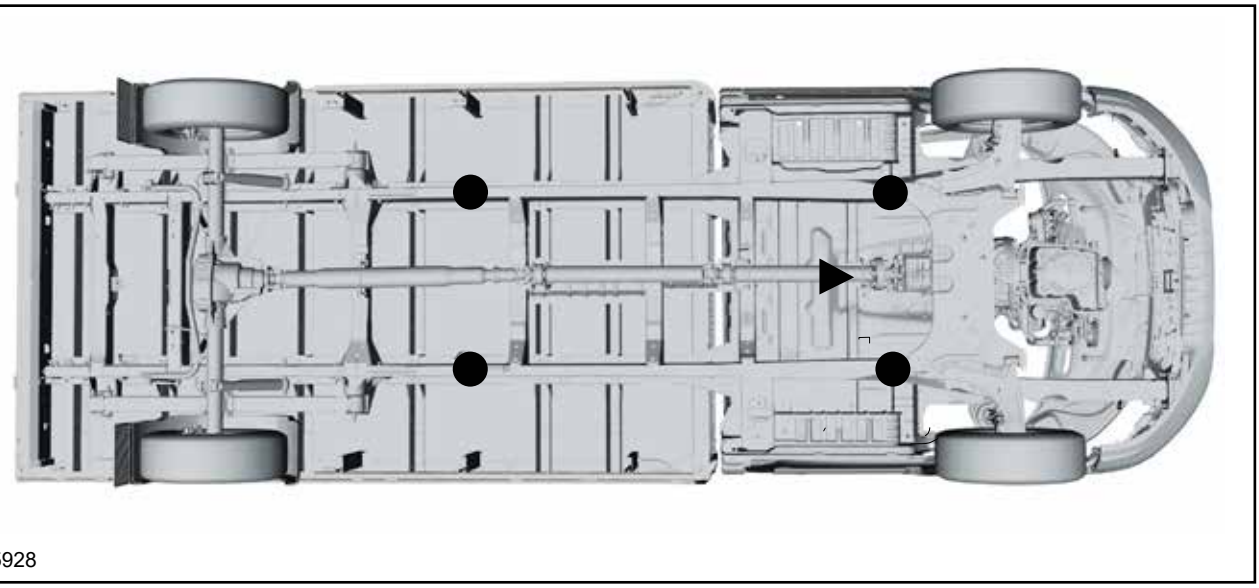
1.7.1 ICE (Gasoline) Vehicles

Lifting Points - Van, Wagon



E175927

Lifting Points - Chassis Cab/Cutaway



E175928

1.7.2 E-Transit BEV Vehicles

WARNING: The E-Transit BEV must NOT be lifted using the Battery, Battery Cradle, Side Impact Protection. Megabrace or Electric Drive Assembly as a lifting point.

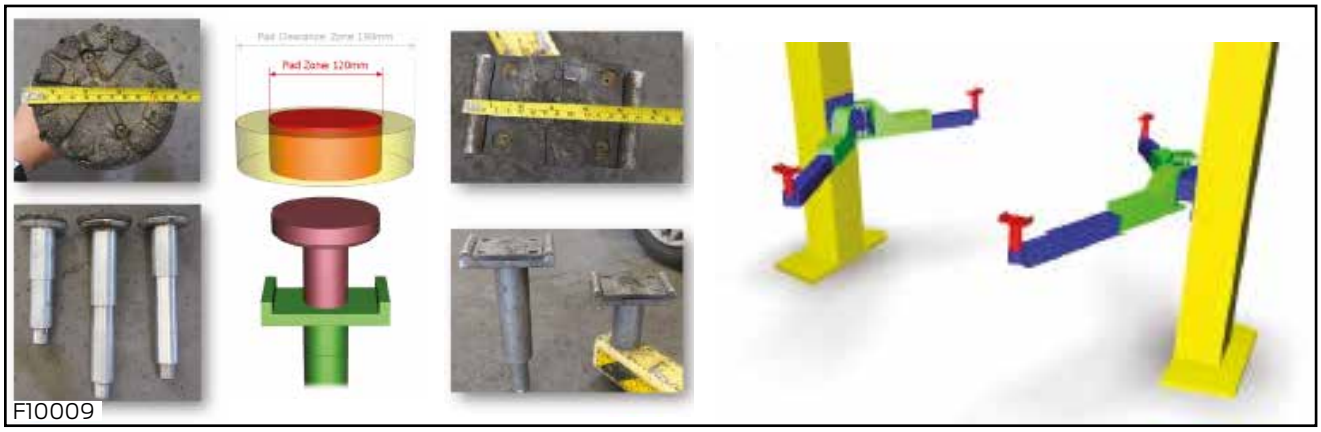
Front Hoist Locations

- Common for all variants.
- Use of the “front step” body location either side.
- Dependent on pad used, a block may need to be employed to avoid wheel arch liner damage.

Rear Hoist Locations

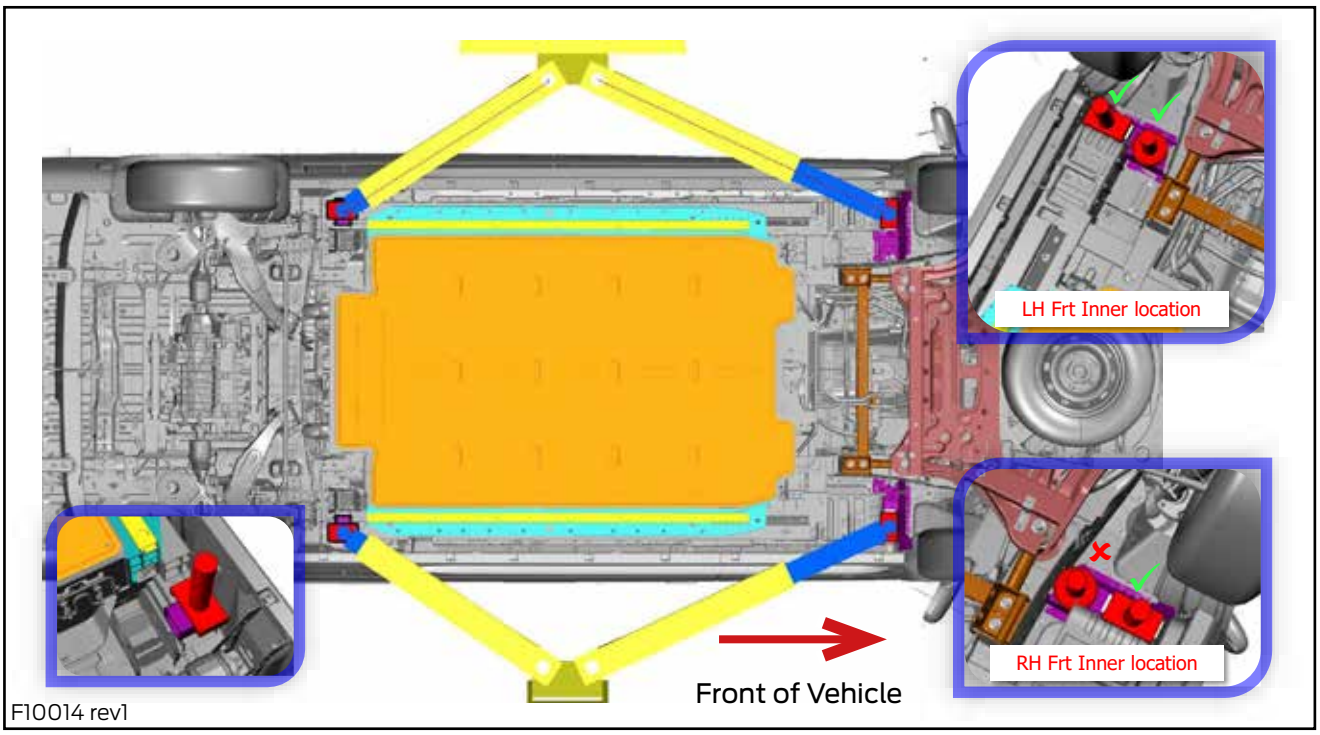
- Specific to variant.
- L2 Van/Bus/Kombi - dedicated cradle lift pad.
- L3/L4 Van/Bus/Kombi rail location.
- L3/L4 Single Chassis Cab dedicated cradle lift pad.
- All other Single Chassis Cab variants use rail location.

Lift Pad and Dedicated Lift Cradle Pad



F10009

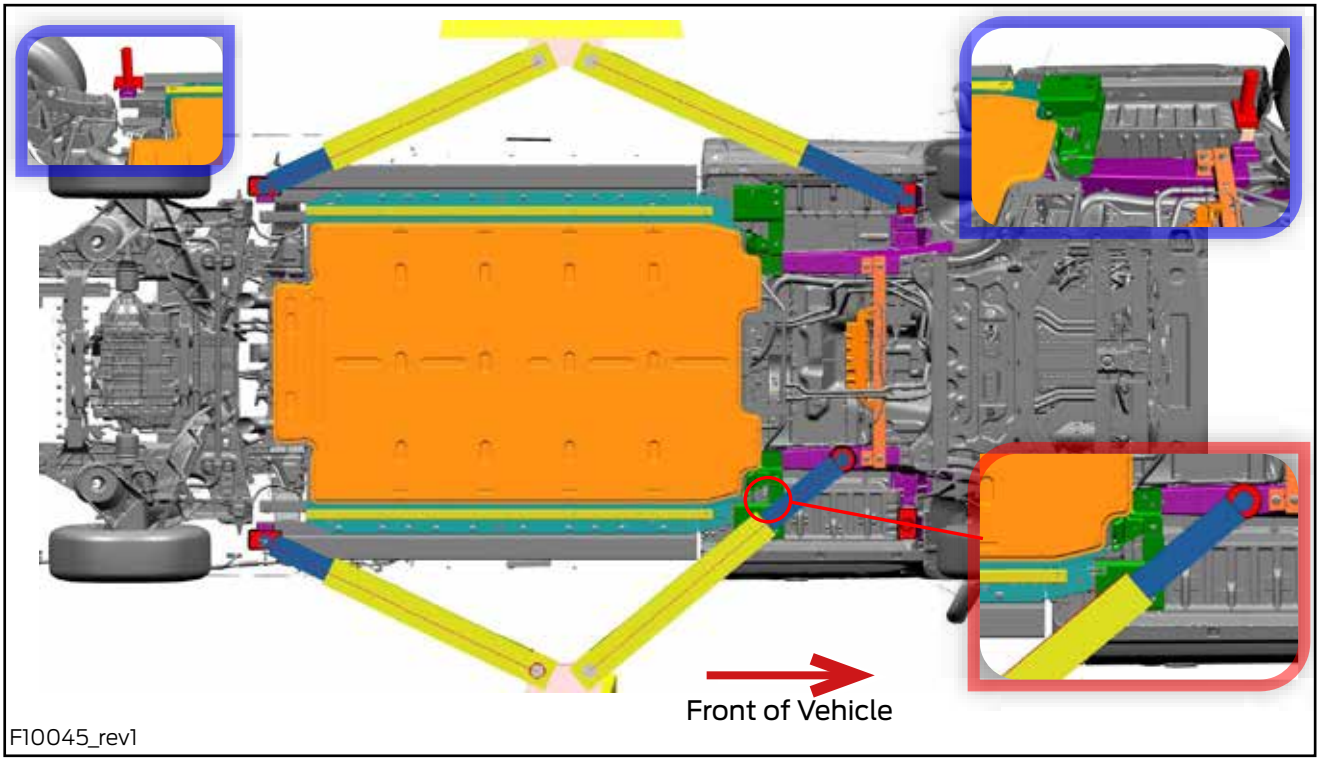
LWB Van, Bus, Kombi - Enhanced Range Battery



F10014 rev1

Illustration added

LWB Single Chassis Cab - Enhanced Range Battery



F10045_rev1

1.8 Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH)

WARNING: Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.

CAUTION: The travel and function of pedals must not be restricted.

Changes to the powertrain, engine, transmission, exhaust, air intake system or tires may influence the exterior noise emission. Therefore, the exterior noise level of the modified vehicle must be verified.

The interior noise levels should not be deteriorated by the modification. Reinforce panels and structures, as appropriate, to avoid vibrations. Consider the usage of sound deadening material on panels.

1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage

Content updated

WARNING: Transport Mode will reduce the risk of Powertrain System damage from multiple starts without sufficient engine run time to warm the vehicle up to normal operating temperatures. There is a maximum number of starts allowed in Transport mode. Exiting Transport Mode prior to upfitting/conversion increases the risk of Powertrain System damage.

CAUTIONS:

Make sure that the protective covers are not removed from an incomplete vehicle until the modification is started.

If disconnected, make sure the 12 Volt battery negative cable is isolated or separated from the battery terminal to avoid unintended re-connection or arcing.

NOTE: If the 12 Vbattery is disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

In addition:

- The windshield wipers should be lifted off the glass and set right up.
- All air intakes should be closed.
- To avoid flat-spotting, tire pressures should be increased but MUST NOT exceed the maximum tire pressure marked on the tire's side wall.
- The brakes and parking brake released fully
- Apply suitable wheel chocks to prevent roll away.
- Store vehicle between 32ºF (0ºC) and 113ºF (45ºC) if possible.

A significant risk during storage is deterioration of vehicle bodywork, therefore, appropriate storage procedures must be observed, including periodic inspection and maintenance.

Claims arising from deterioration caused by incorrect storage, maintenance or handling are not the responsibility of Ford.

NOTE: Please refer to Owner's Manual for further information on preparing the vehicle for storage.

Vehicle Modifiers must determine their own procedures and precautions, particularly where vehicles are stored in the open, as they are exposed to any number of airborne contaminants.

The following may be considered a sensible approach to storage:

Short term storage (up to 14 days):

- Wherever possible, vehicles should be stored in an enclosed, dry, well-ventilated area. This area must be on firm, well drained ground which is free of long grass or weeds and where possible, protected from direct sunlight.
- Vehicles must not be parked near, under foliage or close to water as additional protection may be necessary for certain areas of the vehicle.

Long term storage (over 14 days):

- It is important to maintain the integrity of the 12V battery. The battery may be disconnected but not removed from the vehicle. A minimum charge level should be maintained through the use of a mains trickle charger or solar charger. After the vehicle is fully charged, do not keep the batteries on charge
- The wiper blades should be removed and placed inside the vehicle. Make sure the wiper arms are suitably prevented from resting on the windshield.
- Wheel trims (where fitted) should be removed and stored in the luggage compartment.
- Place the automatic transmission in park position 'P' and release the parking brake completely. Chock the wheels first if the vehicle is not on level ground.
- Set climate controls to the 'open' position to provide ventilation, where possible.
- Where protective film has been applied at manufacturing it must be left on the vehicle until prepared for delivery but must be removed after a maximum storage period of six months (film is date stamped to indicate required removal date).
- Make sure that all windows, doors, hood, lift gate, tailgate, luggage compartment lid, convertible top and roof opening panel are completely closed, and the vehicle is locked.

The Pre-Delivery Inspection (PDI) is the final opportunity to make sure a battery is fit for purpose prior the customer taking delivery of their new vehicle. The battery must be checked and appropriate action taken prior to the vehicle being handed over to the customer. Test results must be recorded on the PDI repair order.

LV Batteries: To make sure the battery is maintained correctly and to assist in preventing premature failure, it is necessary to check and recharge the battery monthly while a vehicle is not in use. Where a battery is left below its optimum charge level for any length of time, it may result in premature failure of the battery.

LV Battery Drain Prevention: As part of the Vehicle Convertor process and to maximise battery life and prevent premature failure of the Ford batteries, protect and prevent battery discharge during any conversion or whilst the vehicle is in storage. This may include leaving the vehicle in Transport mode as long as possible, reducing the amount of crank cycling around the facility, door ajar events and duration. The voltage MUST be checked when receiving and before shipping. Recharge with an appropriate proprietary battery charger if the vehicle battery voltage is below 12.4V for all types of 12V Batteries. Measure connected to the vehicle at ignition off and no loads active including interior or exterior lights in Off status. Refer

to 4.5 Battery Systems.

- At no time should vehicles sit with the key in the ignition and the engine not running.
- Vehicles with push button start should not be left in accessory or run mode.
- All electrical features should be in the off position.
- All doors and hatches need to be completely closed.
- Keep ignition off (blade keys removed from ignition cylinder).
- Do not use indicators, fuel doors or headlights to "mark" a vehicle's status, for example to signal that a repair is finished or a vehicle is ready for collection.
- Ensure automatic transmission gear shifter is in Park (P) when the vehicle is stationary.
- Ensure Roll-Away Protection is active before exiting the vehicle (Car Wash Mode / Neutral Mode will be deactivated).

If the above recommended adjustments do not adequately reduce battery drain, you may explicitly request, in writing, that your Ford Dealer maintain or return the vehicle to Transport Mode in PDI. Please be aware that Transport Mode is designed for diagnostics, logistics and vehicle health monitoring during transportation. While active, therefore, it shares data with Ford, including but not limited to vehicle error codes, location and battery charge/fuel levels.

By requesting the continued use of Transport Mode, you acknowledge and consent to this ongoing data sharing which is used by Ford for broader product improvement, safety and logistics purposes. It is crucial that you ensure Transport Mode is deactivated before the vehicle is handed over to your end customers. Failure to do so will result in continued, inadvertent data sharing from the customer's vehicle. For more information about Transport mode refer to 4.5.3 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles**.**

HV Batteries: Subsequent stage manufacturers and Vehicle Modifiers who will be working with BEV vehicles should develop a plan to potentially charge these vehicles.

Charging stations may be particularly important at vehicle receiving locations in case vehicles arrive with insufficient charge to manoeuvre through the manufacturing process.

Charging stations are recommended at vehicle storage locations.

Convertors should also check the High Voltage vehicle state of charge when it arrives and leaves their facility. If the high voltage battery state of charge is less than 20%, charge to 40%.

When storing the vehicle longer than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%.

Action/Time in Storage	Receiving	Every 15 Days	Monthly	Every 3 Months	Before Shipping
Check vehicle is clean	X	-	X	-	X
Remove external contamination	X	-	X	-	X
Visually check tyres	X	-	X	-	X
Check interior for condensation	X	-	-	X	X
Run engine for 5 minutes minimum with air conditioning switched on, where applicable (ICE only)	X	-	-	X	-
Check 12V battery condition (recharge if necessary)-applies to all vehicles except BEV	X	-	X (if connected -12V battery)	X (if disconnected -12V battery)	X
Applies to all BEV-check High Voltage battery state of charge, recharge if necessary	X	X	-	-	X

1.10 Package and Ergonomics

1.10.1 General Component Package Guidelines

WARNING: Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.

The Vehicle Modifier must ensure that sufficient clearance is maintained, under all drive conditions, to moving components such as axles, fans, steering, braking system etc.

The Vehicle Modifier is responsible for all installed components during the modification. The durability has to be confirmed by appropriate test procedures.

1.10.2 Driver Reach Zones

Controls and/or equipment required to be used while driving should be located within easy reach of the driver so as not to impair driver control.

1.10.3 Driver Field of View

WARNING: Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.

1.10.4 Conversion Effects on Parking Aids

WARNING: Ensure that monitors mounted in the cabin meet the interior package and safety requirements.

System will not function if an aftermarket rear step or other rear mounted equipment is installed. Reverse Brake Assist feature will not automatically brake when a collision is imminent

On modifications requiring a rear camera, the reverse signal may be taken as detailed in the electrical section, described in 'reversing lamps'.

Refer to 4.12 Exterior Lighting.

1.10.5 Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit

Grab Handles

WARNING: Make sure that the location of the no-drill zones are checked before drilling.

CAUTION: Make sure that reinforcements are installed to maintain the integrity of the original body structure.

1.10.6 Vehicle Dimensions

Reference to BBLB added

Depending on the body style, Transit is available in 3 Wheelbases and 3 Roof Heights

Wheelbases:

- Regular Wheelbase
- Long Wheelbase
- Extended-Length Long Wheelbase

Roof Heights:

- Low
- Medium
- High

For further information please go to the Body Builders Advisory Service,https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/publications/ and refer to Transit Body Builders Layout Book (BBLB).

1.10.7 Chassis Cab Body Extensions

WARNINGS:

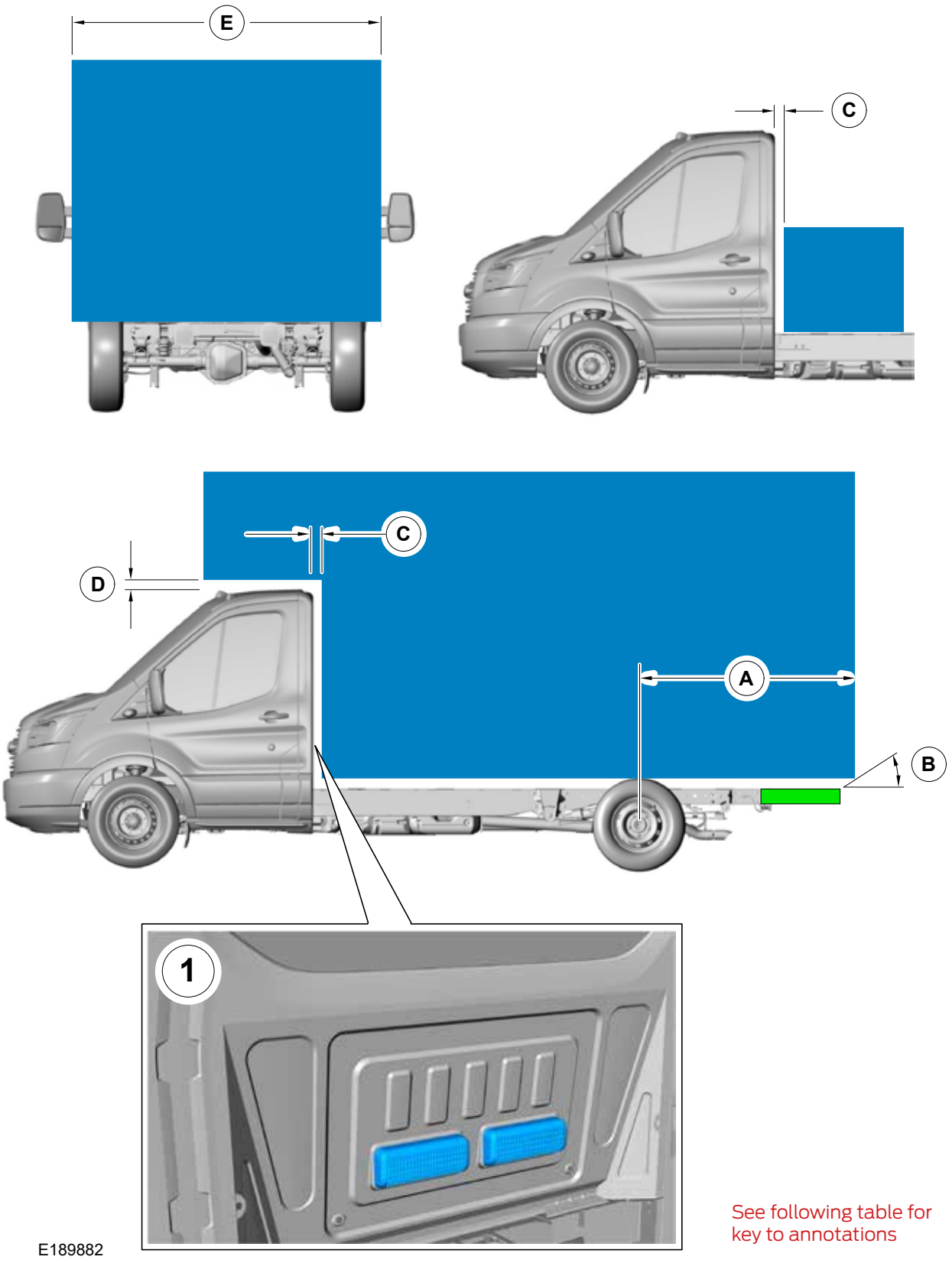
Do not modify the wheelbase.

Do not allow Center of Gravity of the body payload to fall behind the rear axle center line.

NOTE: Extreme rear overhang may encourage unacceptable loading conditions, which could unload the front axle producing unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

NOTE: For frontal area restrictions for completed Chassis Cabs and Cutaways, please see the Incomplete Vehicle Manual in the 'Publications' section of the BBAS website https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas

Chassis Cab Body



See following table for key to annotations

Rear Frame Extensions

Description		RWB -138” (3505mm)	LWB -156” (3962mm)	EL-LWB - 178” (4521mm)
Maximum Rear Frame Extension		30” (762mm)	50” (1270mm)	80” (2032mm)(1)
Rear axle to end of frame, not including frame adapter		37.35” (948.8mm)		
A	Maximum recommended rear overhang(1) considering CoG of body and payload is not rearwards of the rear axle centerline and requirements of masses and dimensions regulation.	67.35” (1710.8mm)	87.35” (2218.8mm)	117.35” (2980.8mm)
B	Ensure local lighting legislation is maintained (F/CMVSS 108)(2)			
C	1.18” (30mm) minimum clearance between the back of the cab and the second unit body			
D	1.18” (30mm)			
E	Maximum external body width(1)	Short Arm Mirrors - 86” (2185mm)(2)		
		Long Arm Mirrors - 96” (2439mm)(2)		
1	Vents must be free from obstruction			

RWB = Regular Wheelbase, LWB = Long Wheelbase, EL-LWB = Extended-Length Long Wheelbase, CoG = Center of Gravity

(1) > 60” (1524mm) extensions require additional cross members.

(2) Vehicle Modifiers must ensure that unique second unit body upfits comply with the appropriate F/CMVSS and emissions requirements as specified in the Incomplete Vehicle Manual (IVM)l.

Refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.

All drag reduction devices that the second unit body vehicle modifiers add should not exceed the maximum frontal area and width as specified in the Incomplete Vehicle Manual (IVM).

1.11 Hardware

Material Specification, Strength and Torque

Standard Hardware and Tightening Torques (Nm) Bolts/Studs: ISO 898-1, Nuts: ISO 898-2				
Thread Size	**Grade 8.8**		**Grade 10.9**	
	Minimum	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Maximum**
M5	5.2	7.2	5.9	8.1
M6	8.9	12.1	10.2	13.8
M8	21.2	28.8	25.5	34.5
M10	40.3	54.7	53.1	71.9
M12	68.0	92.0	93.5	126.5
M14	113	153	148.7	201.3
M16	170.0	230.0	233.7	316.3

This torque chart is a recommendation and the upfitter is responsible for the optimal torque for a specific joint.

1.12 Load Distribution

1.12.1 Load Distribution

WARNINGS:

Overloading of the vehicle could result in unacceptable ground clearance.

The center of mass of the payload must be located within the wheelbase of the vehicle.

Avoid one-sided load distribution.

Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

Load distribution outside of the permitted range may result in unacceptable steering, handling and braking characteristics.

Do not exceed the total gross weight mass, which must include curb weight, driver, all passengers and additional loads to the vehicle.

CAUTIONS:

Do not exceed the axle plated weights.

Do not exceed the gross vehicle weight.

In rear wheel drive (RWD) single rear wheel (SRW) vehicles, the front axle load must, in all load cases, exceed 36% of the actual vehicle weight.

In RWD dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles, the front axle load must, in all load cases, exceed 30% of the actual vehicle weight.

1.12.2 Center of Gravity Position

The position of the center of gravity is changed when masses are added or removed from the vehicle. This may influence the steering characteristics, handling behavior and the brake performance.

Do not raise the center of gravity beyond specified limits or the vehicle may become unstable and dangerous.

Lateral Position

It is important to keep the Center of Gravity laterally within given limits.

Lateral Center of Gravity is determined by the vertical wheel forces difference, right (front right mass added to rear right mass) to left (front left mass added to rear left mass).

For any lateral position information please refer to the IVM.

Vertical Position - Center of Gravity Height

The Center of Gravity Height of the vehicle is determined by the mass of the base delivered vehicle and the added and removed masses. In physics this relation is described by the Steiner's theorem.

The Center of Gravity Height influences axle weights while braking. Center of Gravity height influences roll stability.

1.12.3 Center of Gravity Height Test Procedure

Measurement

Vehicle Center of Gravity calculation is required to determine compliance with F/CMVSS 105 Brakes and F/CMVSS 126 Electronic Stability Control. Maximum allowable Vertical Center of Gravity values for these standards can be found in the Incomplete Vehicle Manual: https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

In order to check the center of gravity height, the following described method is proposed:

For this test four scales are required. The test is possible with two scales, but this requires more preparation and it results in lower accuracy.

Initially the vehicle weights needs to be measured in a horizontal position. Afterwards the front is lifted and weights measured again. The higher it is lifted the more accurate the results will be. The height is restricted by different possible touch conditions: between vehicle parts and roof, ground and environment.

In order to improve measurements, following preparations need to be done:

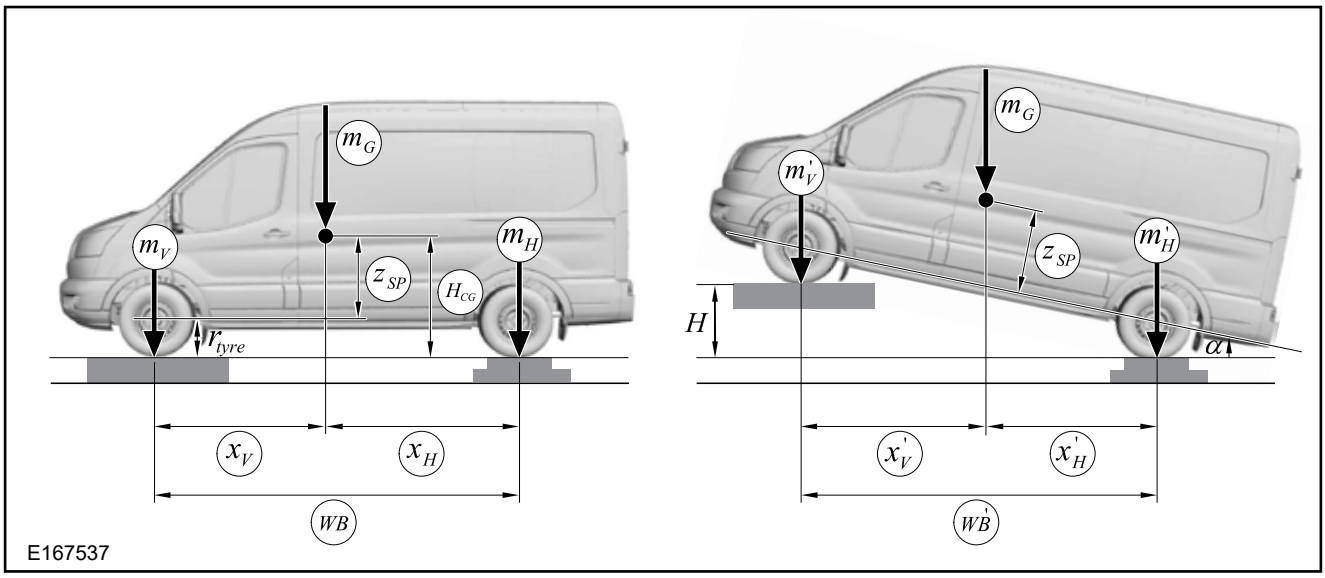
- Fix wheel travel, for example: solid shocks, or spring fixes.
- Increase tire pressure to maximum allowed value.
- It is important to remove all load, for example, moving items, from the vehicle or it should be properly fixed.
- Doors should be closed.

Before measuring the vehicle, the engine must be switched off. After lifting, it should be rolled freely in order to release tension in the tires and suspension.

Calculation

In order to estimate the resulting Center of Gravity (CG_v) the axle load needs to be measured twice. The first measurement is in the horizontal plane and the second measurement is after the front is lifted. To get a consistent result, this test should be done 3 times independently with different heights.

To improve accuracy the test is done additionally the other way around, where the rear end is lifted.



E167537

Variables, to be measured, calculated or known			Measurement		
			1st	2nd	3rd
Wheelbase	WB	mm			
Front Axle Weight	m_V	kg			
Rear Axle Weight	m_H	kg			
Total Mass	$m_G = m_V + m_H$	kg			
Inclined Vehicle					
Front Axle Weight	m'_V	kg			
Rear Axle Weight	m'_H	kg			
Height (Lift)	H	mm			
Inclination Angle		deg			
Center of Gravity Height Z		mm			

Inclination Angle:

$$\alpha = \arcsin\left[\frac{H}{WB}\right].$$

E146623

Center of Gravity Height Z:

$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_H - m'_H}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos\alpha$$

$$z = H_{CG} = z_{SP} + r_{tyre}$$

E146624

1.12.4 Center of Gravity Height Calculation

Given or measured parameter	
Wheelbase	WB
Front axle weight	m_V
Rear axle weight	m_H
Front height	H
Calculated and auxiliary parameter	
Center of Gravity (CoG) height	Z_{SP}
Total vehicle mass	m_G
Distance front axle to CoG (horizontal)	X_V
Distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)	X_H
Wheelbase (projected in horizontal)	WB'
Front axle weight	m'_V
Rear axle weight	m'_H
Distance front axle to CoG (projected in horizontal direction)	X'_V
Distance rear axle to CoG (projected in horizontal direction)	X'_H
Inclination angle	arc sin
Front part of 'distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)'	X_{H1}
Rear part of 'distance rear axle to CoG (horizontal)'	X_{H2}

1.12.5 Formulas

- Masses and lengths. Total vehicle mass is the sum of front and rear axle weights:
- $m_G = m_V + m_H$

The longitudinal distances between the Center of Gravity and the centers of wheels equal:

$$x_V = \frac{m_H}{m_G} WB$$

$$x_H = \frac{m_V}{m_G} WB$$

E146626

In inclined system, the main variable is the inclination angle, which is the quotient of the lifting height and the wheelbase:

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{H}{WB}$$

E146627

Similar to the equation for the horizontal system, the distance projected into the ground plane can be determined using the sum of moments around front and rear wheel center:

$$x_V' = \frac{m_H'}{m_G} WB'$$

$$x_H' = \frac{m_V'}{m_G} WB'$$

E146628

The following equations apply:

$$WB' = WB \cos\alpha$$

$$x_{H2} = \frac{x_H'}{\cos\alpha}$$

$$x_{H1} = x_H - x_{H2}$$

E146629

Using the rule of proportion leads to the Center of Gravity height formula:

$$\frac{x_{H1}}{z_{SP}} = \frac{H}{WB'}$$

$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_V - m_V'}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos\alpha \quad , \quad \alpha = \arcsin\left[\frac{H}{WB}\right]$$

or

$$z_{SP} = \frac{m_H' - m_H}{m_G \cdot H} \cdot WB^2 \cdot \cos\alpha \quad , \quad \alpha = \arcsin\left[\frac{H}{WB}\right]$$

E146630

1.13 Towing

Reference to RV and Trailer Tow Guide added and notes amended

For customer use information along with descriptions/ definitions of the different types of towing available please refer to the RV and Trailer Tow Guide.

WARNING: BEV Only - No tow bars are to be fitted to the E-Transit BEV. The vehicle has no towing capability due to the risk of damaging the High Voltage motor during braking.

NOTE: It is not recommended to retrofit a tow bar to vehicles equipped with rear air suspension.

NOTE: If planning to retrofit a Tow Hitch to extended wheelbase vans and wagons, ensure Trailer Wiring Prep Pack (59B) is ordered on the vehicle.

NOTE: Trailer Wiring Prep Pack (59B) only guarantees support for trailer lighting and does not contain any tow bar, reinforcements or tow bar hardware.

NOTE: If trailer brake functionality is required order Trailer Brake Controller (67D). Heavy Duty Trailer Tow (53B) provides connector in instrument panel for add-on trailer brake controller.

NOTE: See Trailer Brake Controller (67D) for requirements necessary for addition of trailer lighting capability on capable vehicles.

NOTE: There is no wiring provisions for Trailer Tow operations provided on the base vehicle.

For additional details regarding components necessary for the addition of trailer lighting capability on capable vehicles refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides Electrics for Tow Bar section.

NOTE: Tow Haul Mode is only available when ordering Trailer Tow packages 59B or 53B.

For availability please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

2.1 Suspension System

WARNINGS:

Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.

Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.

Caution recatagorized as a warning

Modifications to the suspension system can cause a deterioration of the vehicle handling characteristics and durability.

2.2 Front Suspension

2.2.1 Springs and Spring Mounting

WARNINGS:

Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, subframe or anti-roll bars, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.

Caution recatagorized as a warning

Make sure that components loosened or removed and reinstalled are properly reassembled and the torque set in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.

CAUTIONS:

When carrying out welding work the springs must be covered to protect them against weld spatter.

Do not touch springs with welding electrodes or welding tongs.

NOTE: Do not modify the wheelbase or track width or add any type of frame extension.

NOTE: Do not damage the surface or corrosion protection of the spring during disassembly and installation.

2.3 Rear Suspension

2.3.1 Springs and Spring Mounting

WARNINGS:

Do not modify, drill, cut or weld any suspension components, specifically the steering gear system, sub-frame, springs or shock absorbers including mounting brackets.

(ICE Only) The rear leaf springs are pre-stressed in manufacture and must not be altered for rate or height in any way during vehicle conversion. Adding or removing leaves (or any other spring type) may result in failure or reduced function of the spring as well as other vehicle related issues for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible.

(BEV Only) The rear coil springs on E-Transit are pre-stressed in manufacture and must not be altered for rate or height in any way during vehicle conversion. Modification of any suspension component may result in failure or reduced function of the spring as well as other vehicle related issues for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible.

Caution recatagorized as a warning

Make sure that components loosened or removed and reinstalled are properly reassembled and the torque set in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

Interchangeability (including between different Transit variants) of springs, shock absorbers and jounce bumpers is not permitted as the changes in vehicle dynamic performance can affect the ESP system.

CAUTIONS:

When carrying out welding work the springs must be covered to protect them against weld spatter.

Do not touch springs with welding electrodes or welding tongs.

NOTE: Do not modify the wheelbase or track width or add any type of frame extension.

NOTE: Do not damage the surface or corrosion protection of the spring during disassembly and installation.

NOTE: Do not add any additional axles.

Rear Anti Roll Bar

The following vehicles have rear anti roll bars:

- Single rear wheel (SRW) long wheelbase Wagon.
- All dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles.

2.4 Wheels and Tires

2.4.1 Wheel Clearance

The distance from the tire to the mudguard or wheel arch must be sufficient, even if snow or anti-skid chains are fitted and the suspension is fully compressed allowing for axle twist as well.

NOTE: Make sure that only approved wheels and/or permissible tire sizes are fitted.

NOTE: Ensure access to the wheel and wheel jack and provide sufficient clearance in the wheel arch to allow changing the wheels after modification.

NOTE: Maintain access to the spare wheel winch on Chassis Cab/Cutaway via the hole in the side rail, under all loading conditions.

For standard wheelhouse dimensions, refer to 5.1 Body.

2.4.2 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Ford TPMS is a direct system, using physical pressure sensors. TPMS is calibrated according to the correct tire pressure for the GVWR of the vehicle. If the spare wheel is ordered on a base vehicle with TPMS, the tire will not be supplied with a TPMS sensor.

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair and refit the damaged road wheel and tire to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire refitted to the vehicle.

NOTE: If fitting new tires, you must ensure that the TPMS sensors are fitted correctly. For further information refer to the Owner's Manual, Ford Shop Manual or contact your Local Ford Dealer.

The TPMS receiver is located in the overhead shelf and points directly towards the rear doors.

For additional information, refer to 4.22 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems

E167541

2.4.3 Spare Wheel

When modifying or relocating the spare wheel, access must be ensured.

2.4.4 Tire Repair Kit - Section added

If your vehicle does not have a spare tire, it will have a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire. The temporary mobility kit is made up of a compressor and separate sealant. The compressor and the sealant will be located in the right hand sidestep well.

For more information and usage of the tire repair kit please refer to the Owner's Manual.

2.4.5 Painting Road Wheels

Caution recatagorized as a warning

WARNING: Do not paint wheel clamp surfaces in contact with other wheels, brake drum or disc, hub and holes, or surfaces under wheel nuts. Any further treatment in these areas may affect the wheel clamp performance and the vehicle safety.

Mask the wheel when changing the color or repairing paint.

2.5 Brake System

2.5.1 General

The Brake System must be fully functional when the vehicle modification is completed. The vehicle brake operating modes must be checked, including warning system and parking brakes.

Brakes are certified to F/CMVSS 105 on completed vehicles. Guidance for complying with F/CMVSS 105 on incomplete vehicles is provided in the Incomplete Vehicle Manual.

WARNING: Do not restrict the airflow and cooling to the brake system.

CAUTIONS:

Spoilers and wheel covers must not affect the brake cooling performance.

For converted vehicles fitted with AEBS (Advanced Emergency Braking System), where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, it is recommended that the radar vertical alignment and system functionality is checked by a Ford dealer. For further information, refer to the Workshop manual or Owner's manual.

NOTE: Do not obstruct the view of the brake fluid reservoir level.

NOTE: The donor vehicle brake fluid reservoir is translucent so that it is possible to check the level of fluid without opening the reservoir which will reduce the risk of contamination. Do not move the brake fluid reservoir.

NOTE: Do not obstruct the radar. Refer to 4.15 Adaptive Cruise Control.

The brake fluid reservoir must remain accessible for servicing and for adding brake fluid.

2.5.2 Brake Hoses General

CAUTION: Make sure that the front and rear brake hoses are not twisted and are correctly located away from body and chassis components.

Front and rear brake hoses must not rub, chafe or rest on body or chassis components. There must be clearance under all operating conditions, between full compression and extension and full lock to lock.

Brake lines must not be used to support or secure any other component.

2.5.3 Parking Brake

WARNINGS:

Do not modify the brakes.

Do not splice into the parking brake cable.

Do not modify the Electronic Parking Brake.

CAUTION: Make sure that a new parking brake cable is fitted if modification impacts the existing parking brake cable.

2.5.4 Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes

WARNINGS:

Do not modify the brakes.

Do not modify the disc inflow and outflow of cooling air.

2.5.5 Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist

WARNING: Do not modify any part of the braking system, including Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC), also known as Electronic Stability Program (ESP).

3.1 Engine/E Drive

Caution recatagorised as warning

WARNING: Make sure to follow the equipment supplier's instructions for safety, warranty and legal compliance.

CAUTION:For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Electric Drive Assembly.

CAUTION:For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Halfshafts in the Electric Drive Assembly.

For electrical supply to auxiliary equipment, refer to 4.4 LV Charging System (12V).

3.1.1 Engine Types/E Drive Types

Engine/E-Drive	Max Power HP or kW/RPM	Max Torque lb-ft/RPM	Emissions	Transmission
RWD				
PFDI Gasoline 3.5L	275 HP @ 6000 rpm	260 lb-ft @ 4250 rpm	50 State	10 SPD AUTO (10R80)
EcoBoost Gasoline 3.5L	310 HP @ 5500 rpm	400 lb-ft @ 2500 rpm	50 State	10 SPD AUTO (10R80)
E-RWD				
Enhanced Range Battery	198kW (269PS)	317 lb-ft	Zero	1 SPD AUTO

3.2 Engine Cooling (ICE)

3.2.1 Auxiliary Heater Systems

WARNINGS:

Ford coolant additives are necessary for the complete function of the system. Only use Ford approved, or equivalent specification component, to withstand any detrimental effects on the materials.

Do not mount components in front of the grille or in an area of air flow around the engine which could affect the engine cooling.

CAUTIONS:

Only make connections into the heater hose between the front cab heater and water pump return inlet.

Do not exceed the vehicle's original coolant volume (without prep. pack and auxiliary heater) by more than 10%.

Maintain a coolant level between maximum and minimum line in cold condition after fill and de-aerating operations.

Only use the manufacturer recommended (or equivalent specification) coolant additives/anti-freeze. Do not mix coolant types.

- Coolant flow to cab heater must have priority overflow to auxiliary heater or hand wash facility.
- Coolant tube routing must be below the minimum line of the degas bottle.
- Tube routing must be secured to the body structure or suitable brackets avoiding electrical components or wires, hot or moving parts and brake or fuel system components.
- Hose must be heat sleeved with appropriate material if within 3.9" (100mm) of exhaust components (for example, manifold or exhaust gas recirculating).
- The vertical clearance between the critical cooling components (radiator, fan shroud and radiator brackets) and both the hood inner and outer (assembly) panels at design position shall not be less than 0.6" (15mm).
- There must be a minimum clearance of 0.4" (10mm) between the engine assembly and flexible components (for example, hoses or wiring harnesses) affixed to front end sheet metal hardware, under a maximum engine torque roll condition.

For auxiliary heater and A/C installation use climate control prep-pack. The prep-pack is available for Van/ Wagon Prep and Cutaway vehicles.

Base Package (62C)

- A/C refrigerant line prep lines
- heater prep lines

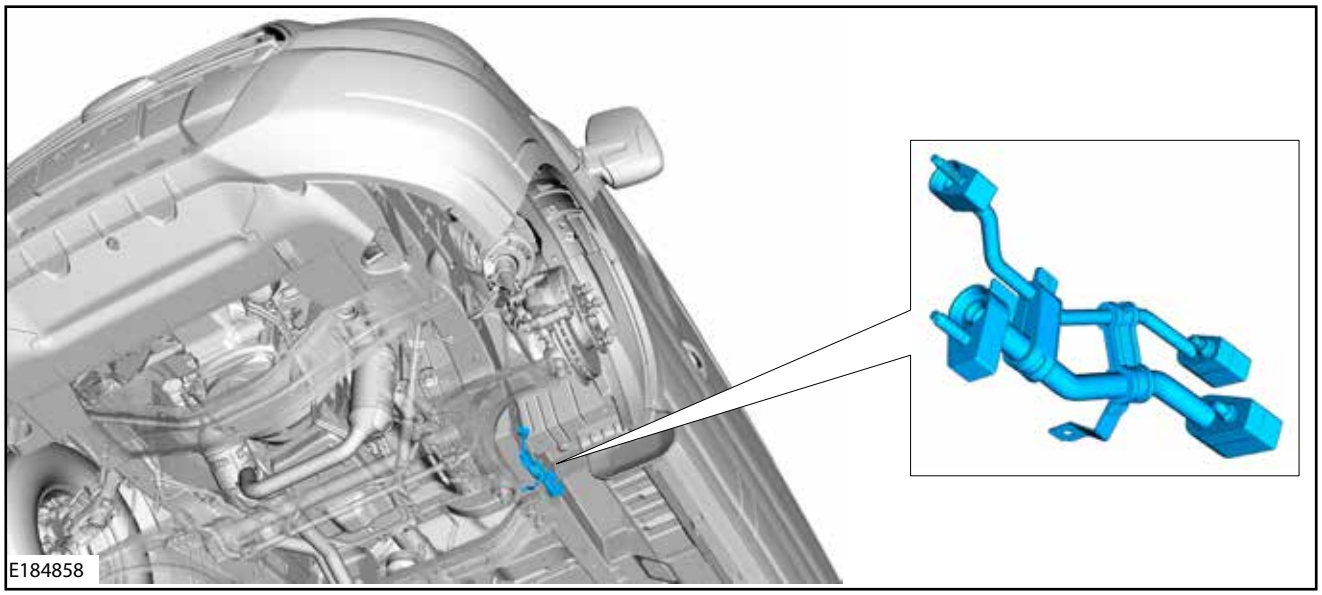
Connecting to the OEM A/C System

- A/C taps are located beneath the driver's side 'B' Pillar.
- Recover R-134a and measure any oil removed. Remove metal seal fitting blank and replace with female metal seal fitting.
- Replace rubber seals for any metal seal fitting being serviced.
- Complete addition of auxiliary system.
- Charge system and replace the oil.

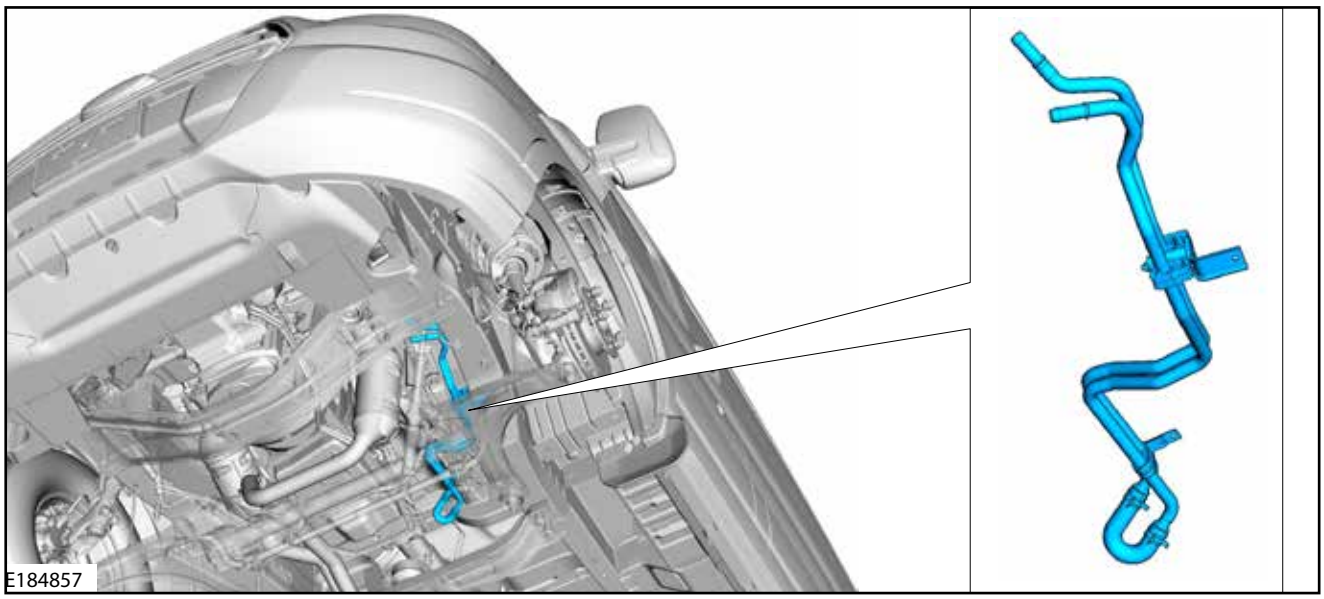
Connecting to the OEM Heater System

- Clamp the heater lines upstream of the prep-pack system.
- Remove 180° U-Bend and restriction from the end of the prep-pack lines by removing the tension

Common A/C Prep-Pack



Gasoline Heater Prep-Pack



For prep-pack connections see Workshop Manual

clamps.

- U-Bend contains a restriction to prevent loss of coolant flow to the front HVAC.
- The bottom, car rearward coolant line supplies the hot coolant.
- Complete addition of the auxiliary heater system.
- Replace 50/50 coolant and water mixture.
- De-aerate coolant systems as per Workshop Manual.

Aftermarket Rear Auxiliary A/C and Rear Heater Guidelines

A/C System

- The auxiliary system must use a TXV expansion system and must be properly sized to maximize performance.
- Refrigerant shut off valves are not recommended.

Heater System

- Coolant temperature must be able to maintain 158ºF (70ºC) throughout normal operation.

A/C Prep-Pack Constraints

- Do not operate the A/C compressor prior to the installation of an auxiliary unit. This will cause oil to accumulate in the prep-pack lines and starve the compressor of oil.
- Keep maximum defrost use to a minimum as this also uses the compressor to de-humidify the air.

3.2.2 Fuel Fired Auxiliary Heaters

WARNING: Ensure that the exhaust gas from any auxiliary heating system cannot be re-circulated into the vehicle. The exhaust gases must not pass into the engine intake system or the air intake for the passenger compartment ventilation.

WARNING: The heating system must be installed outside the passenger compartment. The location of the heating system should not be in close proximity to movable components.

CAUTION: Any body reworks which damage the paint must be fully protected against corrosion.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

3.2.3 Air Flow Restrictions

WARNING: Do not mount components in front of the grille, or in an area of air flow around the engine, which could affect the engine cooling performance.

CAUTION: Overheating within the engine compartment can seriously compromise component robustness.

NOTE: Please assume under hood environment is about 266ºF (130ºC) when selecting appropriate materials.

3.3 Accessory Drive (ICE)

3.3.1 Front End Accessory Drives (FEAD) — General Information

When the correct belt is used, tensioning is and remains fully automatic for the life of the belt.

CAUTIONS:

Only use the manufacturer's recommended (or equivalent specification) components.

Make sure that the ancillary pulley diameter is less than the crankshaft pulley diameter.

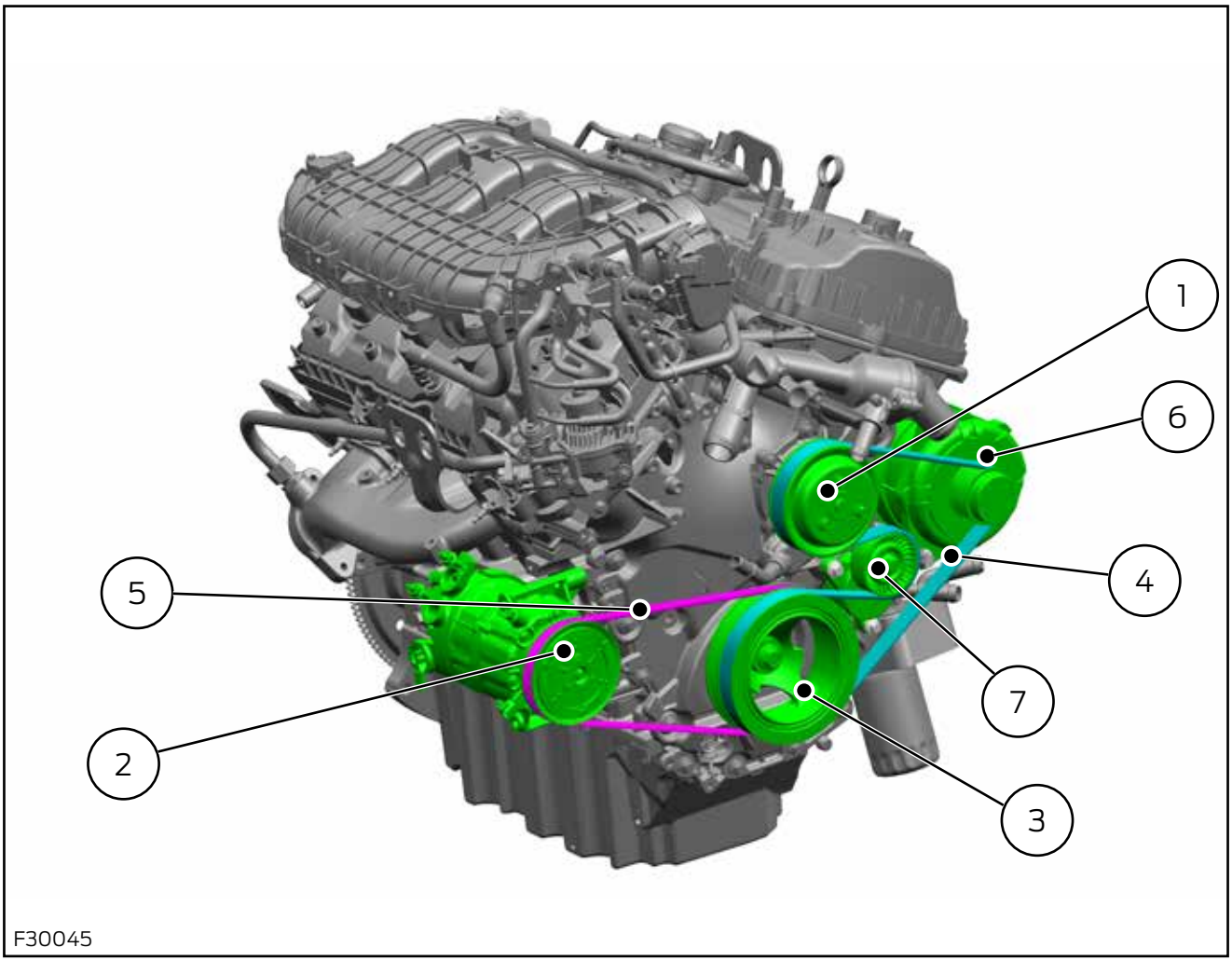
If fitted, Front End Accessory Drive shields must be maintained at all times. If shields are removed, for example, when attaching an ancillary unit, they must be replaced so that it is protected appropriately.

NOTE: No devices can be taken off the crank damper as this is a tuned device for system resonance.

The Eigen frequency of the bracket with auxiliary unit should be above the maximum excitation frequency of the main excitation order of the individual engine at engine top speed. On V6 cylinder engines this is the third engine order.

Image updated

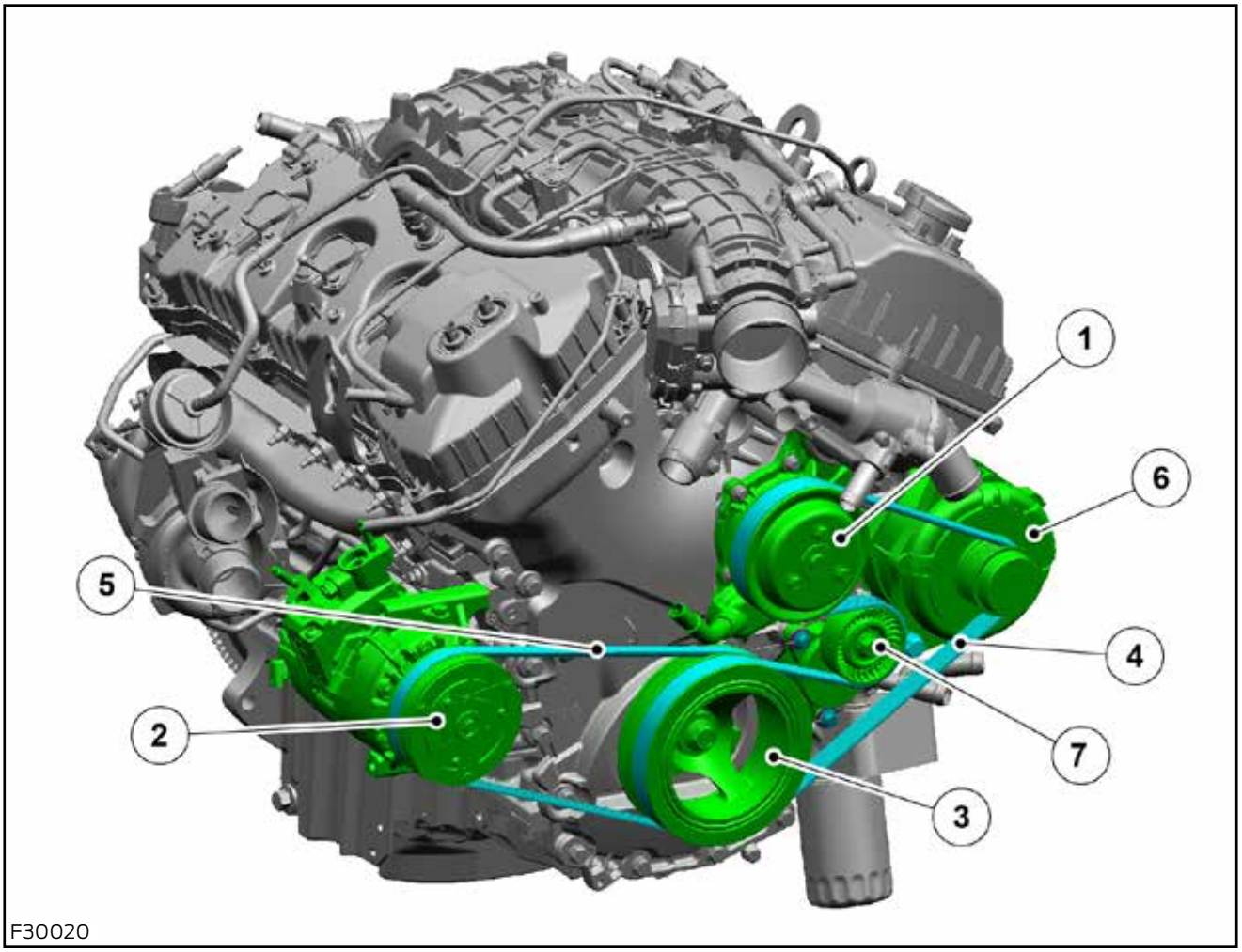
RWD 3.5L PFDI Gasoline Engine



F30045

Item	Description
1	Water Pump
2	AC Compressor
3	Crankshaft Pulley
4	Primary FEAD Belt
5	Secondary FEAD Belt
6	Alternator
7	Tensioner

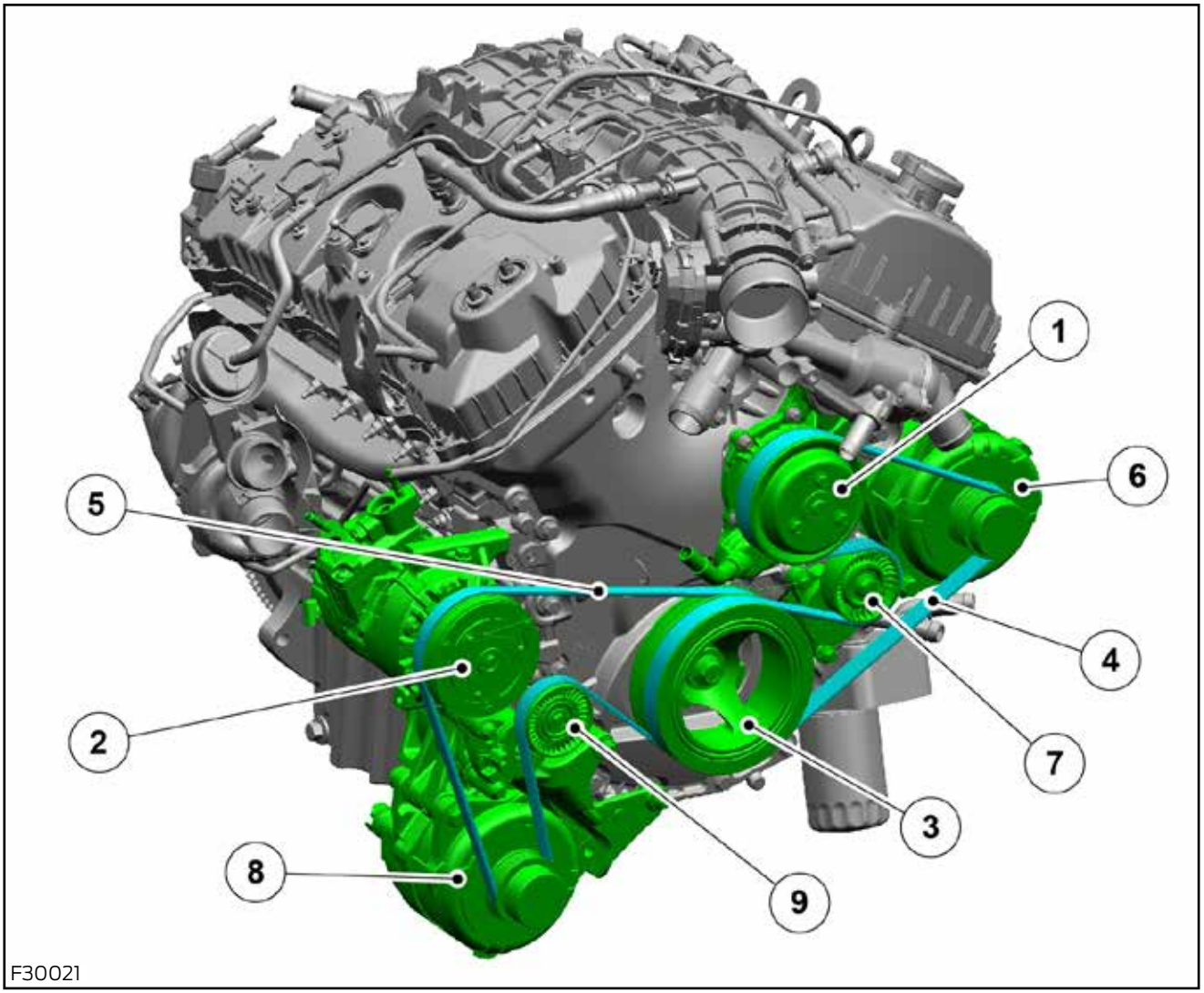
RWD 3.5L EcoBoost Gasoline Engine



F30020

Item	Description
1	Water Pump
2	AC Compressor
3	Crankshaft Pulley
4	Primary FEAD Belt
5	Secondary FEAD Belt
6	Alternator
7	Tensioner

RWD 3.5L EcoBoost Gasoline Engine - Dual Alternator



F30021

Item	Description
1	Water Pump
2	AC Compressor
3	Crankshaft Pulley
4	Primary FEAD Belt
5	Secondary FEAD Belt
6	Alternator
7	Tensioner
8	Alternator 2
9	Tensioner 2

3.4 Automatic Transmission, Transfer Case and Transfer Unit

WARNINGS:

Do not reroute external transmission gear shift cables.

Do not change external electrical connectors.

10R80 - 10 Speed Automatic Transmission

Gears	Base Transmission Ratio	Overall Transmission Ratio		
		Final Drive 3.31	Final Drive 3.73	Final Drive 4.10
1st	4.696	15.544	17.516	19.252
2nd	2.985	9.880	11 .134	12.239
3rd	2.146	7.103	8.005	8.799
4th	1.769	5.855	6.598	7.253
5th	1.520	5.031	5.670	6.232
6th	1.275	4.220	4.756	5.228
7th	1.000	3.310	3.730	4.100
8th	0.854	2.827	3.185	3.500
9th	0.689	2.281	2.570	2.826
10th	0.636	2.105	2.372	2.606
Reverse	4.866	16.106	18.150	19.951

3.5 Exhaust System (ICE)

3.5.1 Extensions and Optional Exhausts

CAUTIONS:

Non-standard systems must be tested for engine back pressure and all legal compliance (noise and emissions).

Make sure that for any pipes that require bending, the radius of the bend is minimum 2.5 x tube diameter.

Make sure that sufficient clearance is maintained for all driving conditions to all hot and moving components.

Repositioning of any of the emission devices, including emission substrates, sensors or actuators, will render the donor vehicle non-compliant from a legal/ emissions homologation point of view.

NOTE: Where possible all pipe connections should be designed so that the gas flows from smaller to larger diameter pipes.

When utilizing tailpipe extensions, overloading the tailpipe hanger system must be avoided to ensure exhaust durability. If a ground out condition has been noted at the rear most tailpipe isolator, an incremental hanger will be required. Align the exhaust so it meets Ford package recommendations. Use an exhaust isolator (CK41-5A262-A*) as a link between the exhaust and a body side hanger location.

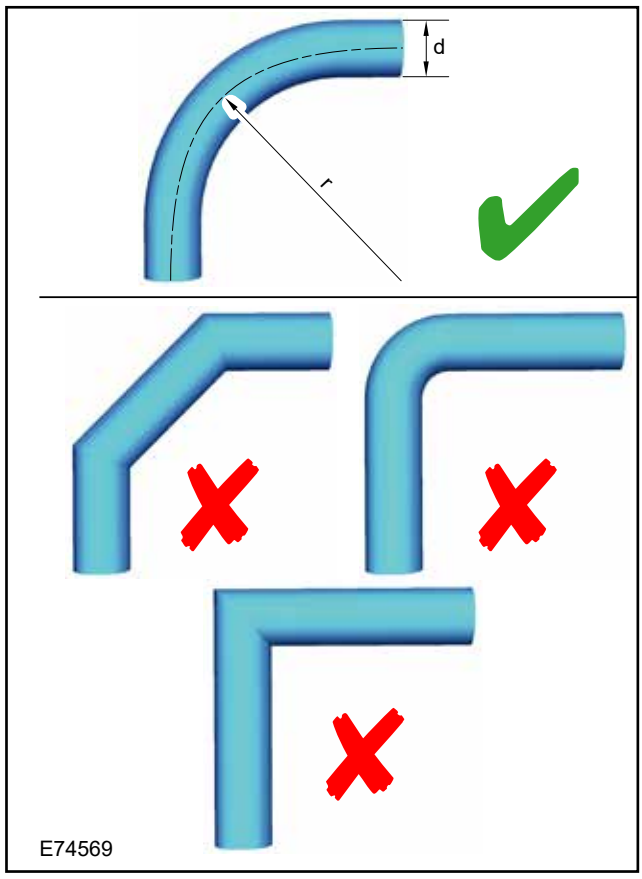
Extensions to the exhaust outlet pipe should direct exhaust way from the body to minimize the possibility of fumes entering the vehicle. Extensions should also protrude beyond the vertical body surface.

Part number updated

NOTE: This procedure is to be performed by the vehicle modifier. The service procedure is provided with the Gasoline Exhaust Modification Kit (SK41-5C262-A*) which is included on all Chassis Cab and Cutaway vehicles.

- Air entrainment position should remain in the system (primary tailpipe).
- Only the pipe section aft of the primary air entrainment can be modified.
- The length from the primary air entrainment to tailpipe end can be increased in length but not decreased.
- The tip cannot be removed nor altered.
- Modification must not change back pressure (neither increase nor decrease).
- Appropriate heat shielding must be added if required.

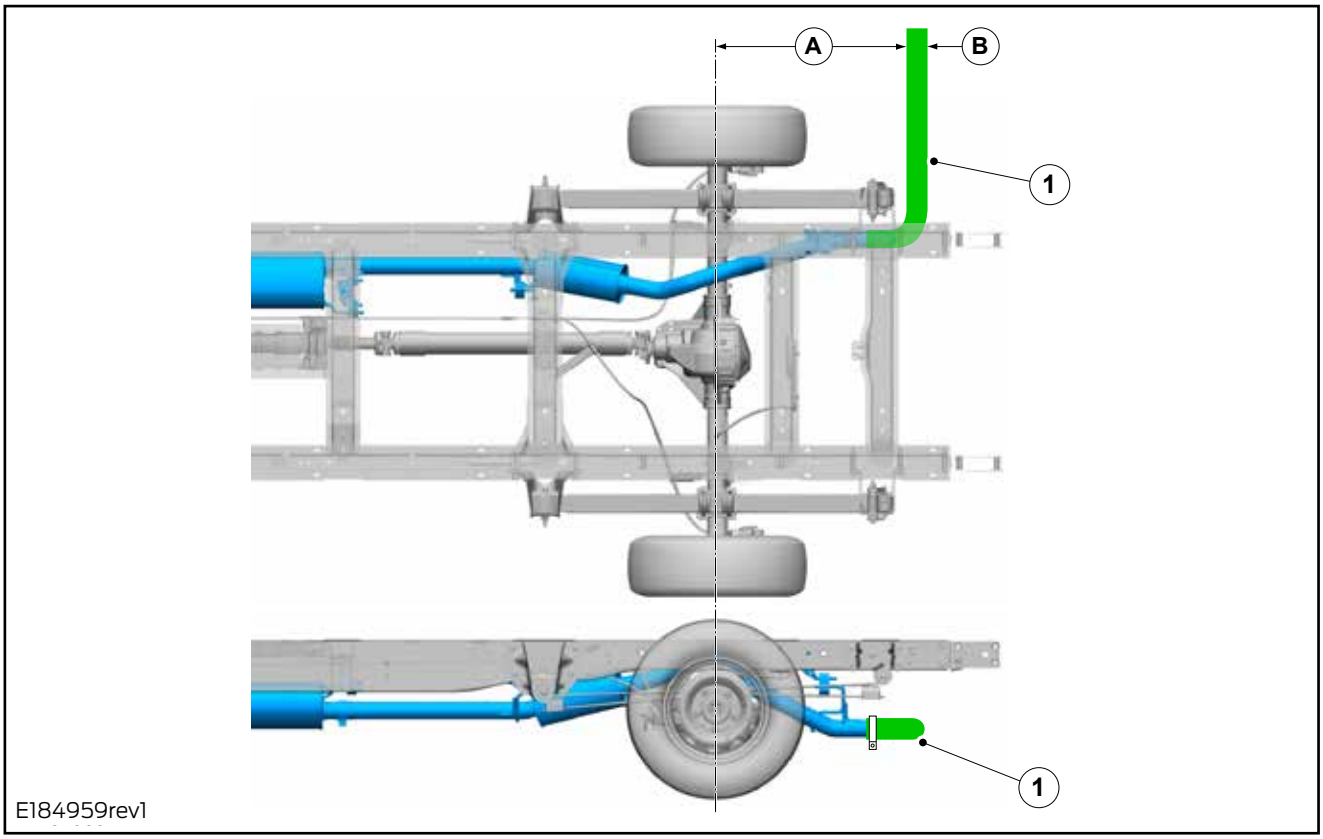
Exhaust Pipe Design Principles



Item	Description
d	diameter
r	radius => 2.5d

Image updated

Gasoline Extended Exhaust - Chassis Cab/Cutaway



Item	Description
A	32.7” (830.6mm)
B	2.8” (70mm)
1	Extended Exhaust

3.5.2 Exhaust Pipes and Supports

CAUTIONS:

Maintain the original set-up and heat shields.

Do not position any components closer than 5.9” (150mm) nominal, 3.9” (100mm) minimum clearance to the downpipe, the catalytic converter and any part of the exhaust system.

3.5.3 Exhaust Heat Shields

CAUTION: Standard heat shields are available from your local dealer and can easily be fitted. Additional heat shields may be required over the modified exhaust system, particularly in areas of close proximity to the floor.

Catalytic converters, in particular, operate at high temperatures. Ensure existing shields are maintained.

Add further shields over exhaust system as necessary to avoid fire risk

3.5.4 Cutaway Exhaust Systems

To avoid exhaust gas ingress into the vehicle, the gap in the floor between the B-pillar will require a spacer plate (not supplied).

For additional information refer to:

- 5.1.9 Cutaways Cutaway Floor Spacer
- 5.1 Body

3.6 Fuel System (ICE)

3.6.1 3.5L PFDI and 3.5L EcoBoost Gasoline Fuel System

WARNINGS:

Do not cut into the original fuel supply lines.

Make sure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.

3.6.2 25 Gallon (95L) Fuel Tank

NOTE: A 90º connector can be ordered as a service item, part number CK4Z-9B210-A. The auxiliary fuel line is not offered as a serviceable item.

For vehicles without auxiliary fuel line that require a fuel supply for applications (for example: auxiliary heater), it is advisable to use the auxiliary fuel supply port on the top of the fuel sender unit located on the top of the fuel tank as shown in figure E185264.

NOTE: To fit the auxiliary fuel line, the fuel tank will need to be lowered. See following process:

To lower fuel tank:

- Drain tank.
- Remove filler pipe from tank.
- Remove bolts securing the three tank straps (four tank straps on extended range fuel tank option).
- Lower the fuel tank to gain access to the top, see Figure E185264 for fitting auxiliary fuel line to refit fuel tank.
- Lift fuel tank ensuring not to trap fuel lines and electrical wires.
- Refit straps, torque bolts to 47.5Nm ± 7.2Nm.
- Refit filler pipe to tank spud securing hose clip torque to 3.7Nm ± 0.6Nm.

CAUTION: Make sure that sufficient clearance is maintained for all driving conditions to all hot and moving components.

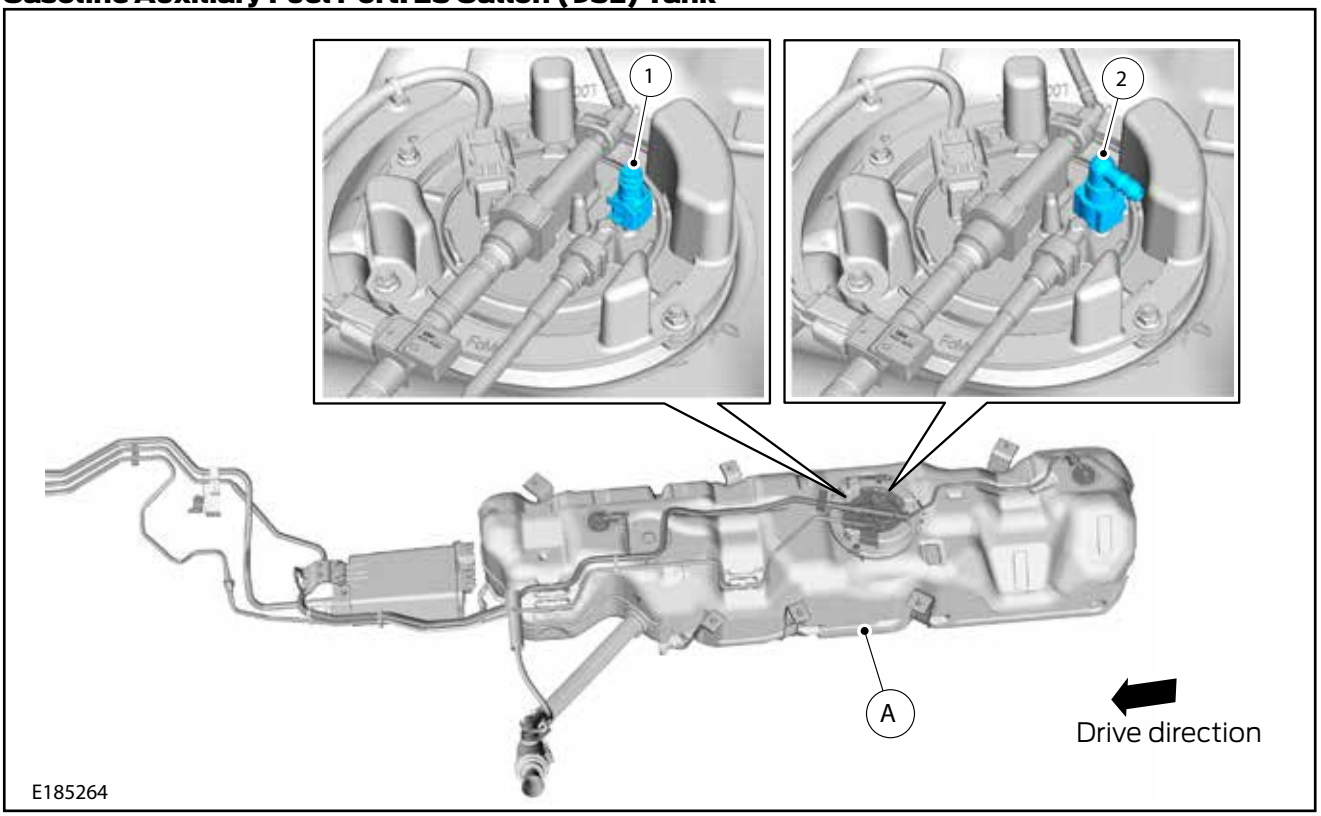
NOTE: Remove protective cap from auxiliary port on top of FDM and assemble connector.

NOTE: The tube and/or line must be routed independently and secured to the body structure or to suitable brackets.

NOTE: Ensure that a suitable fuel shut-off is fitted in any unique system.

NOTE: Do not fasten anything to existing electrical components, wires or fuel lines.

Gasoline Auxiliary Fuel Port: 25 Gallon (95L) Tank



Item	Description
A	Gasoline Fuel Tank
1	Protective cap - To remove: slide the plastic tab, squeeze the cap and pull off to expose the gasoline fuel port. Assemble quick fit 90º connector
2	A 90º connector is required. Gasoline Aux Port kit part number CK41-9B210-A*

3.6.3 31 Gallon (115L) Fuel Tank

Auxiliary Fuel Extension Line Option for Extended Range Fuel Tank.

This option allows commercial vehicle upfitters to add an additional fuel line to the Transit fuel tank (31 Gallons/115L only) to power installed equipment such as generators without having to remove and reinstall the fuel tank assembly. An additional fuel line can be attached to the Auxiliary Fuel Extension using the Female 5/16" Gen 3 Quick Connect fitting at the lower end. A Male 5/16" Gen 3 Quick Connect fitting will be required to mate with the fitted Female fitting.

CAUTION: Make sure that sufficient clearance is maintained for all driving conditions to all hot and moving components.

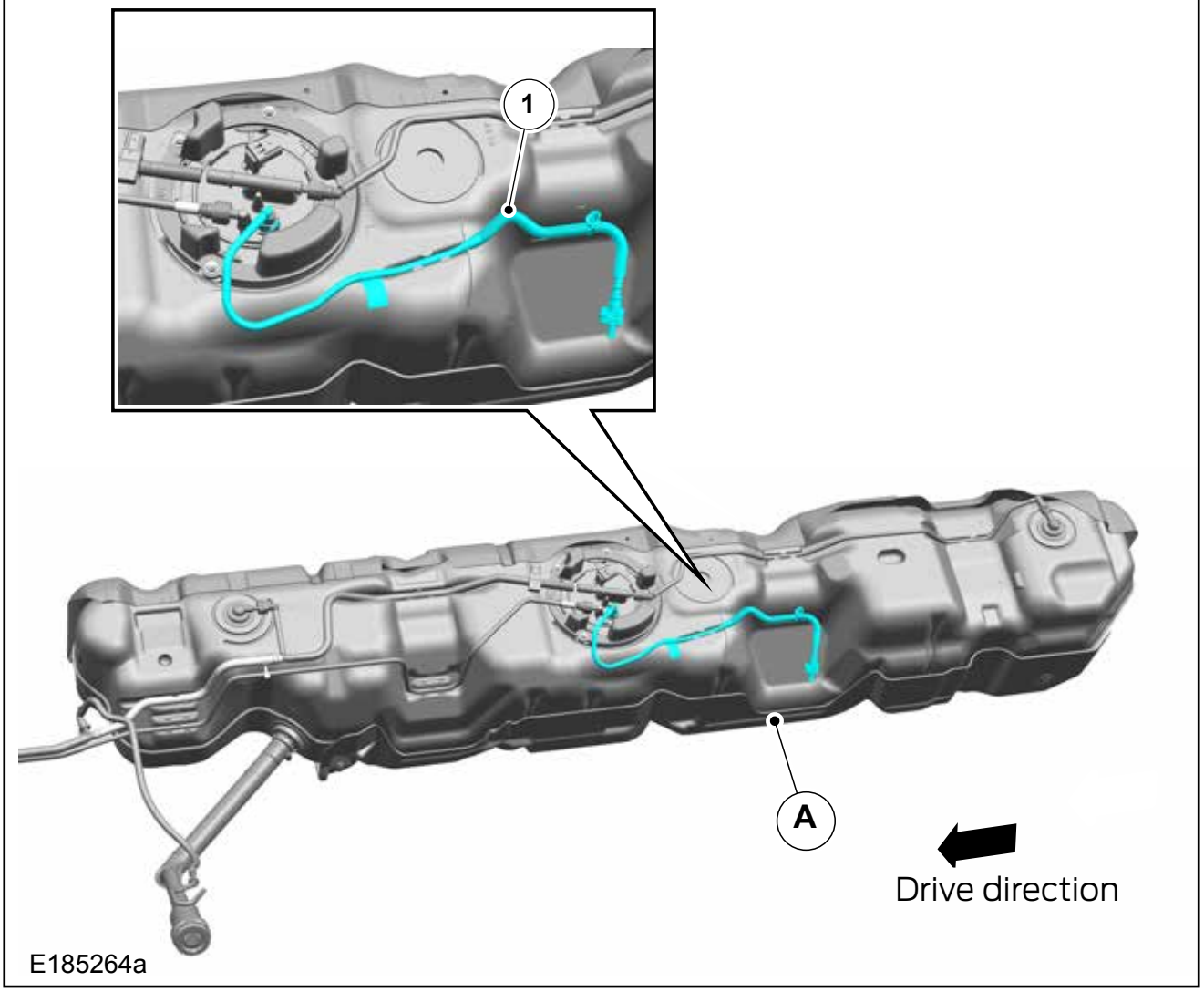
NOTE: Any additional fuel lines must be routed independently and secured to the body structure or to suitable brackets.

NOTE: Ensure that a suitable fuel shut-off is fitted in any unique system.

NOTE: Do not fasten anything to existing electrical components, wires or fuel lines.

Additionally, refer to 5.1.4 Precautionary Floor Drilling - Gasoline.

Gasoline Auxiliary Fuel Extension Line: 31 Gallon (115L) Tank



Item	Description
A	Gasoline Fuel Tank
1	Auxiliary Fuel Extension Line

3.7 High Voltage System & Electrified Drivetrain

WARNING: Before beginning any vehicle modifications refer to the following overview of High Voltage System Health & Safety Precautions.

3.7.1 High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions

WARNINGS:

Do not touch, drill, modify or obscure the orange high voltage cables, fasteners, channels, strain relief, ground wire or connectors

Service of the high voltage system on this vehicle is restricted to qualified personnel. The required qualifications vary by region. Always observe local laws and legislative directives regarding electric vehicle service. Failure to follow this instruction may result in serious personal injury or death.

To prevent the risk of high voltage shock, always follow precisely all warnings and service instructions including instructions to de-energize the system. The high voltage system utilizes approximately 400V DC, provided through high voltage cables, to its components and modules. The high voltage cables and wiring are identified by orange harness tape or orange wire covering. All high voltage components are marked with 'High Voltage' warning labels with a 'High Voltage' symbol. Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious personal injury or death

Any work on the high voltage system requires the Low Voltage Service Disconnect to be open and locked out. Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious personal injury or death.

Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause the damage to the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 60°C (140°F). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damage to the high voltage battery which could cause serious personal injury or death in a fire or explosion. Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual.

De-energizing the high voltage system does not dissipate the voltage inside the high voltage battery. The battery pack remains live and dangerous. Contact with the high voltage battery pack internals may result in serious personal injury or death

Powertrain software calibrations must not be modified (this includes Electric Vehicle Control Module, Primary Drive Control Module, Battery Charge Control Module Battery Energy Control Module and Antilock Braking System Control Module).

Direct contact with high voltage components by personnel, tools or equipment should be avoided including stepping on them, leaning on them, setting tools on them, etc.

"High Voltage" is defined in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 305 as:

- Greater than 60 volts for Direct Current (DC) circuits.
- Greater than 30 volts RMS for Alternating Current (AC) circuits.

Subsequent stage manufacturers and vehicle modifiers should NOT plan to connect with or modify the high voltage system or components in any way. Integration with the vehicle electrical system must be done only with the low voltage (12 volt) electrical system or with outlet(s) provided with the "Pro Power Onboard" feature (where applicable).

Only qualified Ford service personnel should attempt to diagnose or repair any high voltage components or systems. Any personnel involved in engineering, subsequent stage manufacturing, modifying or servicing vehicles with high voltage systems (content other than the HV systems) should be trained in basic understanding and safety principles regarding HV systems.

Emergency Response Guides – Information for First Responders may be helpful in developing an emergency response plan in case a vehicle with a HV system is damaged.

The following manufacturing operations are not recommended on vehicles with high voltage systems:

- Operations generating significant heat near HV components, especially near the HV battery.
- Paint curing operations above 60°C (140°F) or longer than 45 minutes.

For welding/drilling or cutting, refer to sections:

- 5.1.5 Precautionary Drilling/Welding - BEV
- 5.1.6 Precautionary Floor Drilling - BEV Van

High Voltage Labels

On electric vehicles, 'WARNING' labels are located on high voltage components throughout the vehicle as per the following examples. High voltage warning symbols are not to be obscured or altered in any way.

HV Label Example 1

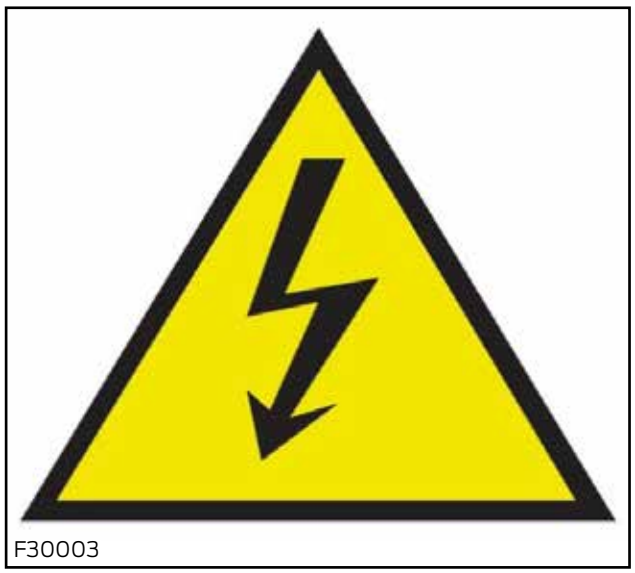
F30001

HV Label Example 2

DANGER / PELIGRO
TEHLİKE / PERIGO
HIGH VOLTAGE / HAUTE TENSION /
ALTO VOLTAJE / YÜKSEK VOLTAJ
/ ALTA TENSÃO / 高压 /
LIMM-C:F
Corrosive & Flammable Electrolyte causes injury. Keep out of the reach of children. Keep away from sparks or flame. Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.
Electrolyte corrosif et inflammable – Risque de blessures. Garder hors de portée des enfants. Garder loin des étincelles ou des flammes. Recycler conformément aux règlements locaux.
Electrolito corrosivo e inflamable que puede causar lesiones. Mantener fuera del alcance de los niños. Mantener alejado de chispas o llamas. Reciclar de acuerdo a las ordenanzas locales.
Aşındırıcı ve Alevlenir Elektrolit yaralanmaya neden olur. Kıvılcımlardan, alevden ve çocukların ulaşabileceği yerlerden uzak tutun. Lütfen yerel düzenlemeler uyarınca geri dönüşümünü sağlayın.
Eletrólito corrosivo e inflamável, causa ferimentos. Mantenha longe do alcance de crianças. Mantenha afastado de faíscas ou chamas. Recicle de acordo com os regulamentos locais.
Li-Ion
锂离子电池
KUSA-10661-AC

F30002

HV Label Example 3f

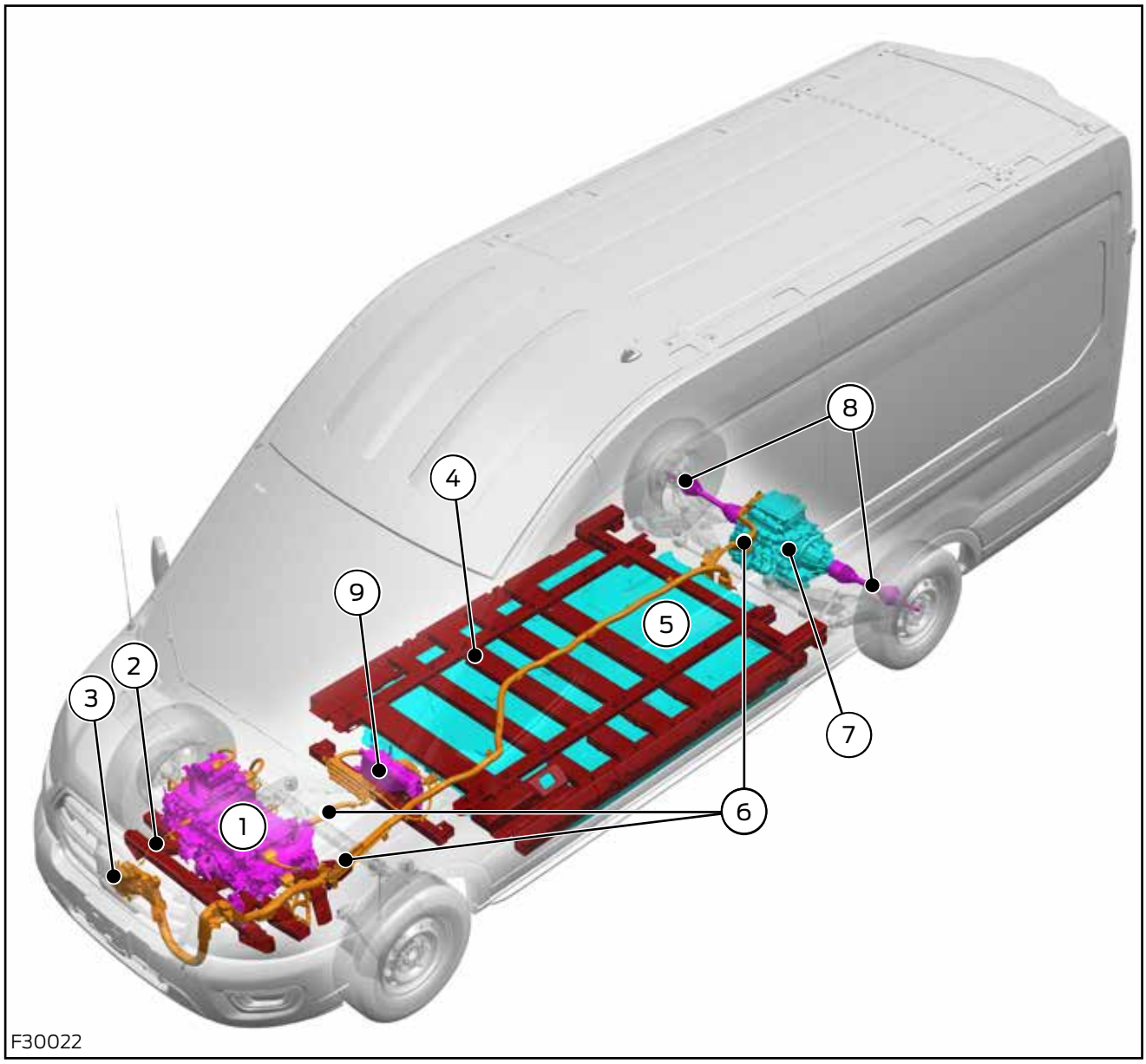


F30003

3.7.2 High Voltage System Overview

The High Voltage System on E-Transit consists of a centrally mounted, underfloor High Voltage Battery Pack, a front-mounted 'stack' of HV control systems under the 'hood' that are mounted to the 'Megabrace' and an Electric Drive Assembly providing drive to the rear wheels. These are connected by orange high voltage cables and a system for cooling the components of the high voltage system.

High Voltage System Overview - Enhanced Range Battery

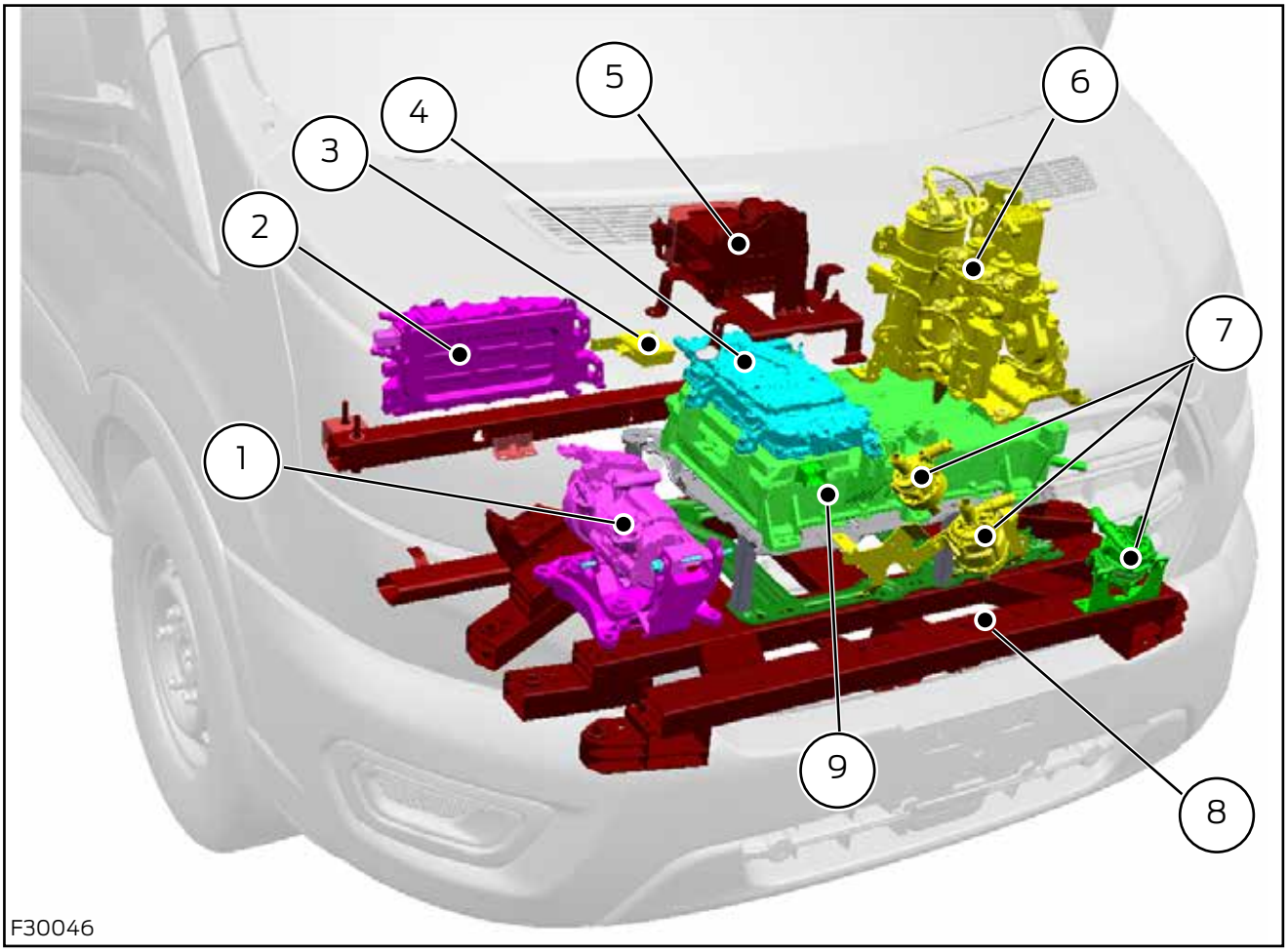


F30022

Item	Description
1	High Voltage Module Stack
2	Megabrace
3	High Voltage Charge Port Inlet
4	High Voltage Battery Cradle
5	High Voltage Battery Pack
6	Orange High Voltage Cables
7	Electric Drive Assembly
8	Halfshafts
9	On Board Generator Inverter

Illustration updated

Exploded View of HV Stack Components - Enhanced Range Battery (Single Charger)

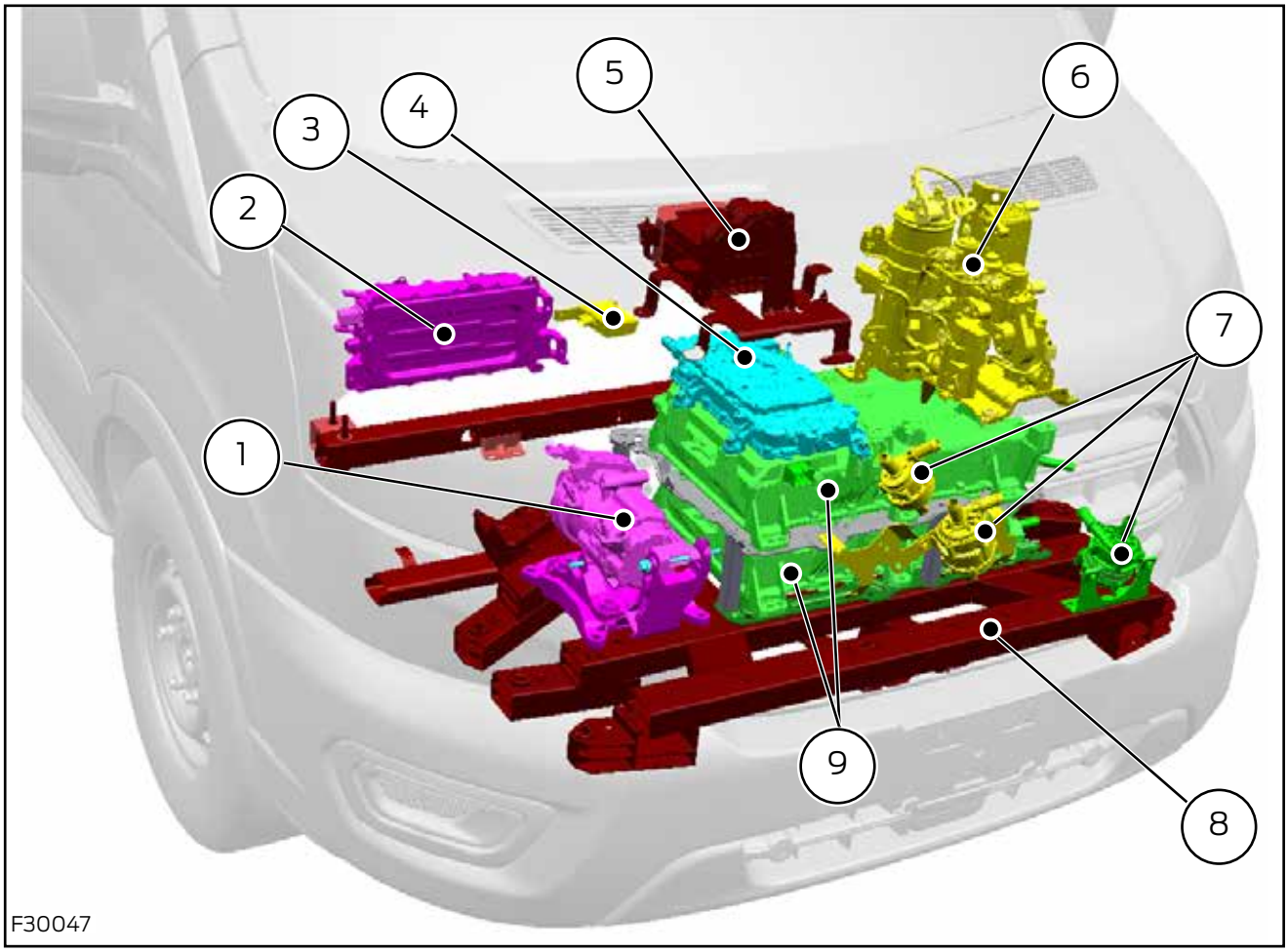


F30046

Item	Description
1	Electric Air Conditioning Compressor
2	On Board Generator Inverter (OBGI) Module (optional)
3	Off Board Charger Control (OBCC) LV Module
4	DC-DC Converter
5	Electric Heater
6	Heat Pump (LV Module)
7	Cooling Pumps and Valves
8	Megabrace
9	Charge Unit (Single)

Illustration updated

Exploded View of HV Stack Components - Enhanced Range Battery (Dual Charger)



Item	Description
1	Electric Air Conditioning Compressor
2	On Board Generator Inverter (OBGI) Module (optional)
3	Off Board Charger Control (OBCC) LV Module
4	DC-DC Converter
5	Electric Heater
6	Heat Pump (LV Module)
7	Cooling Pumps and Valves
8	Megabrace
9	Charge Unit (Dual)

3.7.3 HV System De-Energizing

Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual for de-energizing procedure.

WARNING: De-energizing the high voltage system does not dissipate the voltage inside the high voltage battery. The battery pack remains live and dangerous. Contact with the high voltage battery pack internals may result in serious personal injury or death.

NOTE: When the HV system has been de-energized, the 12V low voltage system will remain live.

3.7.4 HV Cooling System

Content revised

WARNING: For E-transit BEV, do not modify the high voltage Battery cooling system.

Ford E-Transit vans equipped with the Enhanced Range Battery use a Vapor Injection Heat Pump (VIHP) system for climate control. Ford advises against modifying the original climate control system because the VIHP is complex. Alterations could negatively affect how well it works and how reliable it is.

Alternative Solution:

E-Transit is available with an optional 2.4 kW Pro Power Onboard feature. Final Stage Manufacturers may want to consider usage of an aftermarket system for supplemental heater and cooling purposes.

Additionally, to make the E-Transit more energy-efficient, Final Stage Manufacturers should explore modifications like solar glass and lightweight insulation to lower the vehicle's thermal load which would maximize battery power for driving.

3.7.5 Electric Drive Assembly

CAUTIONS:

For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Electric Drive Assembly.

For E-Transit BEV, do not modify the Halfshafts in the Electric Drive Assembly.

3.7.6 High Voltage Battery

Observe the following precautions when working on or around high voltage Batteries:

- Do not cut the High Voltage Battery case. Do not penetrate the batteries or case in any way.
- The High Voltage Battery Pack is located under the vehicle.
- The total voltage of the HV Battery Pack may be up to approximately 450V DC.
- The Battery Case is water resistant.
- The battery cells contain liquid electrolyte absorbed in a porous special polymeric film. The electrolyte will not leak from the battery under most conditions. However, if the battery is crushed, it is possible for a small amount of electrolyte to leak.
- If possible, isolate and avoid contact with any electric vehicle components. If contact with the high voltage system cannot be avoided, Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) such as a splash shield or safety goggles, gloves (butyl), an apron or overcoat and rubber boots are required when handling damaged batteries. Exposure to electrolyte could cause skin and/or eye irritation/ burns. If exposed, rinse with large amounts of water for 10-15 minutes.

The high voltage system has a floating return reference which is designed to completely isolate the HV system from the vehicle chassis and non-HV components and circuits. As part of the safety features built into the HV system, measurements between the HV bus and vehicle ground are monitored during key “on” state to detect high voltage leakage or stray current to the chassis.

The power terminals of the high voltage battery are only activated when necessary for vehicle operation, including:

- When the vehicle is in key “on” or “accessory” state.
- When the 12v battery has a low state of charge, the HV battery will activate to charge the 12V battery through the DC-to-DC Converter, even in the vehicle key “off” state.
- When the vehicle is plugged into a charging station (BEV only), the charge port, charge unit, HV battery and wiring between these components may be active with high voltage present even in the vehicle key “off” state.

HV Battery Venting

Numbered points are now warnings

WARNINGS:

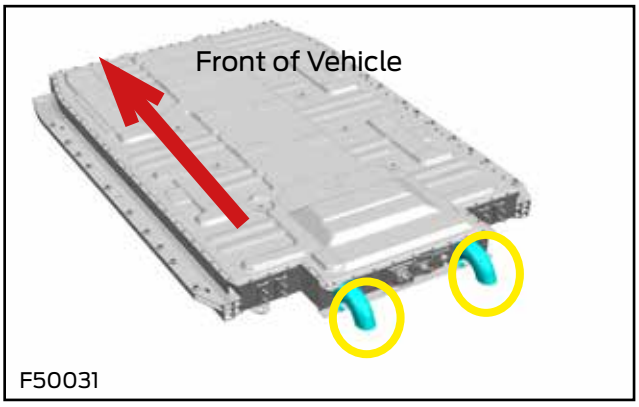
The E-Transit BEV HV Battery is equipped with an exhaust vent. No additional components nor obstructions (beyond any installed by Ford) are to be located in the same environment as the battery (e.g., underbody) and within 150 mm of these features. Additionally, no components which may contain combustible liquids or gases at any time are to be added within 300 mm of these features.

There must be no modifications or installed components which confine the air space near the outside of the HV Battery or obstruct the free flow of air about the battery (beyond any installed by Ford).

Any cut outs or openings created between the occupant space and the vehicle underbody must be sealed such that air is not free to pass from under the vehicle into the occupant space.

If any primary ingress/egress paths for occupant spaces are located above or rearward of the rear axle(s), a metallic shielding must be added to obstruct any air flow from the battery towards those ingress/egress paths and redirect that air flow towards a side/rear area that is not a primary ingress/egress path.

HV Battery Vent - Enhanced Range Battery



HV Battery Grounding

WARNINGS:

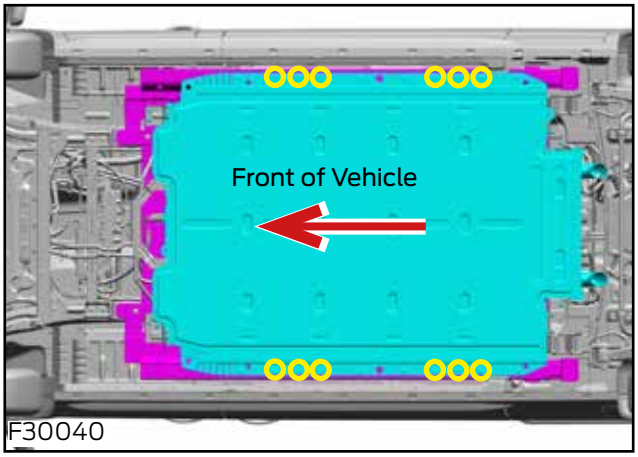
The following illustrations indicate the points where the High Voltage Battery and Cradle are grounded. These points must NOT be used as additional/auxiliary grounding points for the low voltage (12V) system.

Electrical ground paths (case grounds and/or ground straps and/or low voltage wiring) for high voltage components on the E-Transit BEV must not be altered or modified in any way. Do not tamper with or modify any of these HV component fastener joints or ground points.

NOTE: As part of the safety features built into the HV system, measurements between the HV circuitry and vehicle ground are measured using these ground paths. Therefore, HV battery ground paths must not be altered in any way.

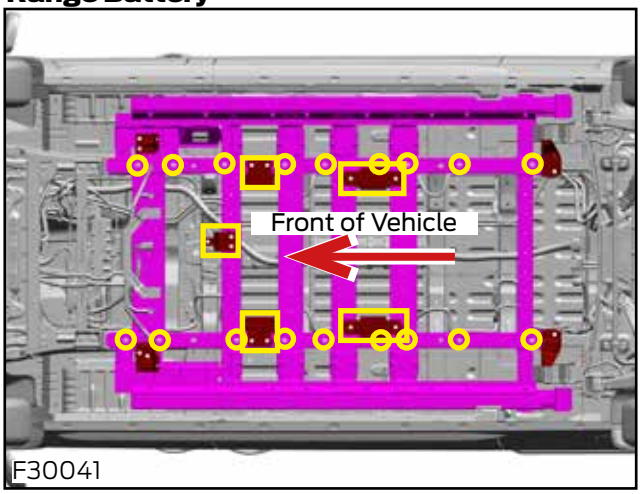
NOTE: Battery ground path for Van and Chassis Cab/Cutaway are not the same. The complete battery ground path includes the cradle as well as attachment to the body rail.

HV Battery to Cradle Grounding Fasteners: Van and Chassis Cab - Enhanced Range Battery



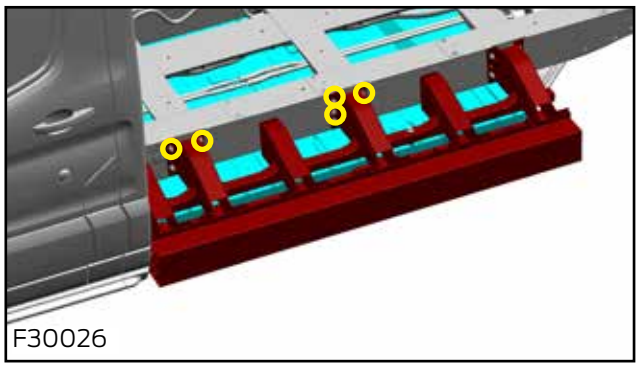
F30040

HV Cradle to Chassis Grounding Fasteners and Grounding Brackets: Van - Enhanced Range Battery



F30041

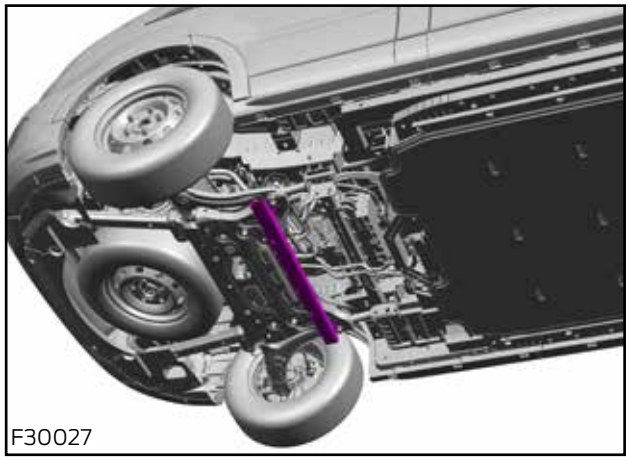
HV Battery Grounding Location - Cradle to Chassis: Chassis Cab - Enhanced Range Battery


F30026

Battery Protection Bar

CAUTION: The E-Transit Chassis Cab Variant has a front-mounted Battery Protection Bar to protect the battery from hitting the road surface where ground clearance is an issue. The Battery Protection Bar must NOT be removed.

Battery Protection Bar: Location - Enhanced Range Battery


F30027

3.7.7 EV Charging

Please refer to the E-Transit Owner Manual for ePower Pack System and Mobile Charger Unit.

NOTE: Chargers provided with vehicles should be reserved for end customer use only and not used during manufacturing or delivery processes to prevent damage or loss.

NOTE: The standard charge cord storage location is lost if the passenger seat delete option is chosen and the upfitter must provide their own storage feature for the cord.

4.1 Electrical System Overview

WARNINGS:

It is recommended to follow the guidelines in the electrical sections of the BEMM. Incorrect design, for example, overloaded ground paths or insufficient mechanical protection to a third party wiring, could lead to serious system or vehicle failure.

The fitting of voltage boosters or other devices to enhance alternator output are not permitted. The fitting of such devices will not only invalidate vehicle warranties but could damage either or both the alternator and Engine Management System/Power Control Module and possibly affect vehicle legal compliance. Check local legislation.

Do not fit an additional Front End Accessory Drive (FEAD) to vehicles already fitted with an Air Conditioning System Compressor.

NOTE: Ford Motor Company has no control over the modification or installation process of the electrical content of auxiliary systems and, therefore, can take no responsibility for such installations.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer.

4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides

4.2.1 Wiring Harness Information

NOTE: Ford Motor Company has no control over the modification or installation process of the electrical content of auxiliary systems and, therefore, can take no responsibility for such installations.

The following provides an installation guide for any electrical modifications or additional systems being added to the vehicle. The aim is to maintain robust integration of auxiliary systems without compromising existing systems in areas such as splicing techniques into existing wiring, module package location and Electromagnetic Capability (EMC) issues. It is also expected that the vehicle modifier will test their installation and comply with all regulation and homologation requirements.

4.2.2 General Wiring and Routing

Content updated

Temperature requirements: Wiring systems in the vehicle interior are expected to function over the temperature ranges of –40ºF to 185ºF (-40ºC to 85ºC) for exposure and –40ºF to 167ºF (-40ºC to 75ºC) for function.

For engine compartment and underbody, the minimum temperature is -40ºF (-40ºC), while the maximum exposure and operational temperatures are 257ºF (125ºC) for exposure and 221ºF (105ºC) for operational.

Make sure that the insulation is compatible with any fluids it may encounter, for example, gasoline, oil, antifreeze, brake fluid, transmission fluid and power steering fluid.

If a connector will be located in a hostile environment or wet area use a sealed connector. 'Hostile environment' areas include the engine compartment, wheel wells, underbody and doors.

In general, the distance between retention points for wiring not contained in a rigid shield should be less than 11.8" (300mm). For wiring inside the doors this should be reduced to 5.91" (150mm).

Minimum clearances:

- 9.8" (250mm) from exhaust system
- 1" (25mm) from all sharp edges
- 1.2" (30mm) from rotating or moving components
- 0.79" (20mm) from fluid lines
- 0.6" (15mm) from weld points
- 0.4" (10mm) from static components

If these clearances cannot be met, protect the wires with a convolute &/or heat shielding.

For vehicle modifications with walkthroughs, it is recommended to provide appropriate protection on the floor in the walkway.

4.2.3 Connector Pin Out Practices

When designing a harness to component connection, it is best practice to put the female terminals in the harness side connection and the male terminals in the component side. When determining connector pin outs, make sure that power and ground circuits are not in close proximity or adjacent to one another. A minimum separation of 0.2" (5mm) between power and ground circuits is required.

WARNING: Do not use connectors which cut through the outer covering and into the core wire.

CAUTION: It is recommended to only use Ford approved connectors.

Cutting into vehicle wiring is not permitted because:

- The base vehicle specification is unsuitable for incremental loads except in conjunction with Auxiliary Fuse Panel.
- Long term risk of a faulty connection developing.
- Potential fire risk from overloading.

All connections into existing wiring must be permanently insulated. Exterior connections must be waterproof.

When designing electrical circuits or making alterations, the following must be considered:

- Current rating of wiring. See table 'Current Rating of Wire Sizes' in this section.
- Any voltage drop in the circuit should not lower the terminal voltage at consumption point to below 95% of battery voltage.
- Do not cut into the original harness.
- Additional grounds should be included to support new equipment.
- A supplementary circuit diagram and accompanying instructions should be added to the Owner's information, or a separate manual supplied with the vehicle for each unique component.

4.2.4 Unused Connectors

The harnesses may have a number of unused connectors which are dedicated to other features and options, for example, heated seats but are not always present depending on level of harness fitted. Ford does not recommend the use of these connectors for any other purpose than that intended by design.

4.2.5 Grounding

If a new grounding point is required, avoid placing it in a wet area, especially for high current grounds. Ground connections should be routed back close to the location of the +12V supply. This helps to reduce the electromagnetic field particularly generated by inrush current and improve electromagnetic compatibility.

Drill point screws are not to be used for any ground attachments:

- Do not ground to moving structures, for example, doors, deck lids, lift gates as the ground return path through the hinges is not reliable.
- Do not place more than 2 eyelet terminals under a single ground screw.

Refer to 4.5 Battery Systems.

- Do not place electrical component attachments or ground nuts adjacent to vehicle fuel tanks or fuel lines.
- Each individual third party load must have a dedicated ground connected directly to the vehicle body ground or to the battery negative spare stud. See 'Additional Loads and Charging Systems' later in this section of the BEMM.
- Multiple grounds must not go to an interim splice to a main ground cable.
- If additional ground studs are required, it is recommended to install a busbar with multiple studs fed directly from the battery ground post. See 'Additional Loads and Charging Systems'.

4.2.6 Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles

Content updated

Wiring should be positively retained every 11.8" (300mm) except when inside a door when retention should be every 5.91" (150mm). All connectors should be positively retained. Use tapes which do not squeak against metal or plastic.

4.2.7 Water Leakage Prevention

Make sure that drip loops are provided to prevent water leakage into the vehicle interior, passenger and cargo compartments, using wiring assemblies that pass from outside into the vehicle interior. The drip loop is a section of wiring that is deliberately formed and routed BELOW the point of entry into the vehicle, so that gravity assists in forming water droplets that escape from the lowest part of the wiring.

Wiring from door to passenger compartment should be made such that the door entry point is below the passenger compartment entry point, which creates a type of drip loop.

4.2.8 Wiring Splicing Procedures

TYCO-RAYCHEM crimp splices

E131081

Ford Motor Company strongly advises against the use of wire splicing due to the variable and unpredictable nature of making robust, durable and reliable connections. However, if it is deemed that a wire splice is absolutely unavoidable, it must be made with **DuraSeal Heat-Shrinkable, Environmentally Sealed, Nylon-Insulated Crimp Splices** (manufactured by TYCO-RAYCHEM). For example, the D406 series. As a further process to improve the splice integrity, the splice should be further sealed with a suitable heat shrink tubing. See Figure E131081.

4.2.9 Wiring Specification

NOTE: The maximum continuous current (A) values shown for 86°F to 122°F (30°C and 50°C) are values below the maximum fuse rating allowed for the cable. This is because the fuse/cable system values at these temperatures are the continuous usage whereas the maximum fuse also needs to protect for high current short term loadings such as electric motors.

When designing wire installations for additional equipment, use the cable size recommended by the equipment manufacturer or select a suitable size from the 'Current Rating of Wire Sizes' table.

Current Rating of Wire Sizes

		Maximum Continuous current (A)	
Cross Sectional Area (mm²)	**mOhms/m@68°F**	**86°F**	**122°F**
0.35	54.4	7	4.9
0.5	37.1	11	7.7
0.75	24.7	14	9.8
1	18.5	19	13.5
1.5	12.7	24	17.0
2.5	7.6	32	22.7
4	4.71	42	29.8
6	3.14	54	38.3
10	1.82	73	51.8
16	1.16	98	69.6
25	0.743	129	91.6
35	0.527	158	112

4.2.10 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Awareness

WARNING: Do not route other wiring near/ close to electrical cables with the Anti-Lock Brake System and Traction Control System cables due to extraneous signal risk. It is generally not recommended to hang extra wiring off existing looms or tubes.

The installation and routing of Ford wiring has been fully-validated and has passed the requisite EMC tests. However, Ford Motor Company is not responsible for the vehicle's EMC immunity when non-Ford-approved systems are installed.

Wiring must be suitably fixed without any detrimental effect on other wiring.

Single or bunched looms must maintain the following clearances:

- 0.4" (10mm) from static components (unless clamped to it).
- 9.8" (250mm) from exhaust system.
- 1.2" (30mm) from rotating or moving components.

4.2.11 Wiring through Sheet Metal

Image and content updated

WARNING: Harnesses passing through sheet metal must be routed through protective grommets that also ensure a watertight seal. If needed, a windscreen type sealer should be used. Adhesive or tape is not acceptable.

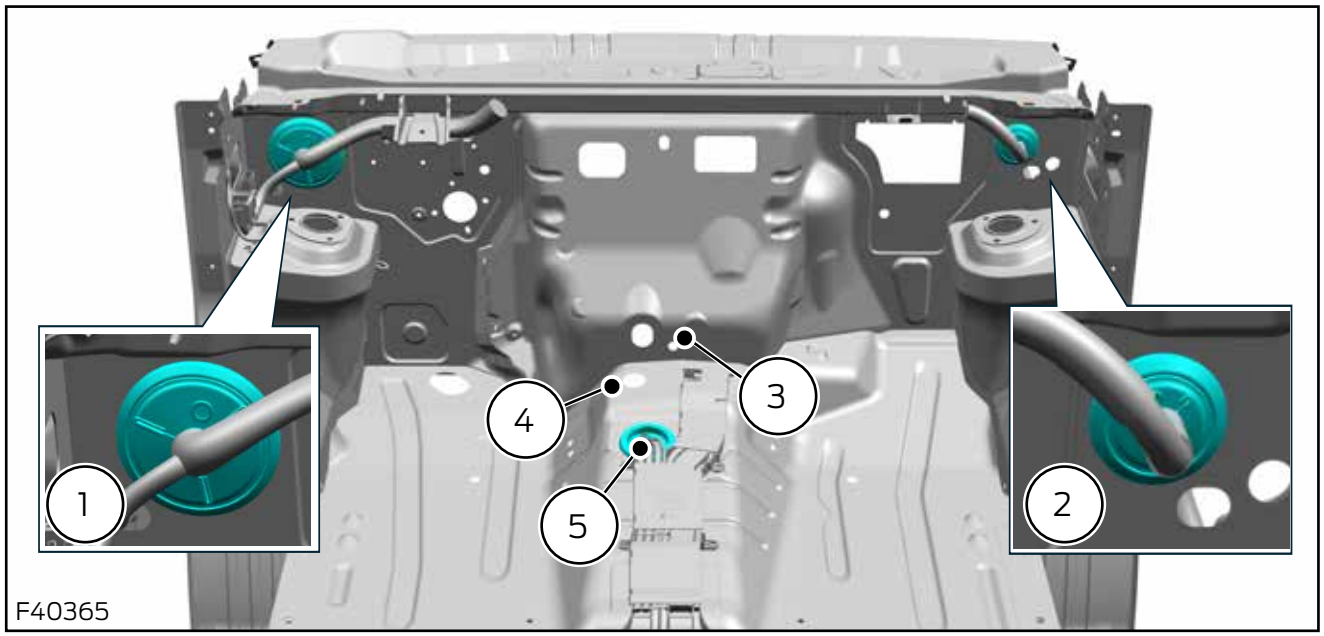
There are three locations in the dash panel which have been identified for additional holes to route wires through. There is also a grommet in the floor that can be used on BEV vehicles. See figure F40365 (view from inside the vehicle) for locations. The number of suitable locations will depend on the vehicle specification.

The grommets in locations 1, 2 and 5, shown in figure F40365, are moulded directly to wire bundles in polyurethane material. It is not possible to feed extra wires through alongside the main wire bundle.

Grommets 1 and 2 have a feature molded into the surface. These can be used to route up to 6mm wires between engine bay and the cabin. Check the area surrounding this feature is clear on both sides, move any wiring clear of the area before proceeding. Cut the cap off the feature on the engine bay side of the grommet, and pierce/drill through the hole and into the cabin. Take care not to damage any components on the other side.

Grommets 3 & 4 have no feature to aid wiring but can be modified, replaced or used to route wiring through the bodywork. Ensure these remain watertight.

Dash Panel (Viewed from inside the vehicle)



Item	Description
1	Dash Grommet Left Hand Side, available for wiring routing
2	Dash Grommet Right Hand Side, available for wiring routing
3	This location is available for wiring routing
4	This location is available for wiring routing (on BEV only)
5	Do not feed extra wires through this grommet

4.2.12 Precautionary Drill Zones - High Voltage (HV) Cables

Illustrations updated

WARNINGS:

Do not touch, drill, modify or obscure the orange high voltage cables, fasteners, channels, strain relief, ground wire or connectors.

Fasteners that upfitters install must point away from the battery so as to not to cause damage to the battery. Do not add a fastener into the vehicle that would point toward the HV Battery.

No components or structure installed by an upfitter shall result in contact, penetration (especially added fasteners pointed towards the high voltage battery or other electrical components), separation, or other damage to the high voltage electrical system or any portion thereof when the vehicle is tested in any manner.

Do not modify the High Voltage Charge Port Inlet Connector/Mounting Bracket.

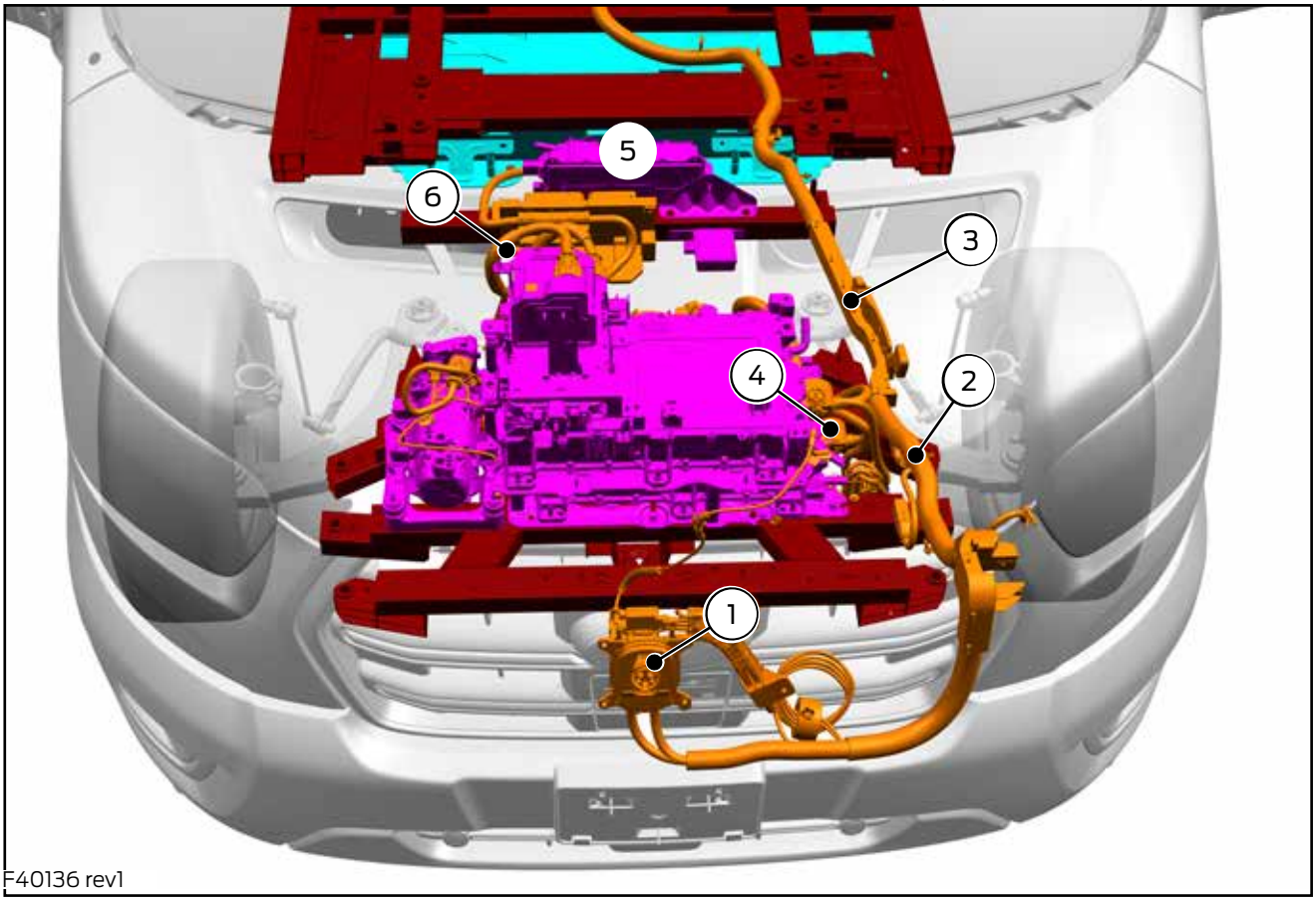
Do not modify the high voltage/low voltage grounding locations/joints/fasteners of the Charge Port Harness Package Grounds.

Do not modify the length of any orange high voltage cables.

Do not remove fasteners and protective shield from the Charge Port Inlet Harness.

Take precaution when undertaking drilling or any other operation in or near any HV cable to prevent damage.

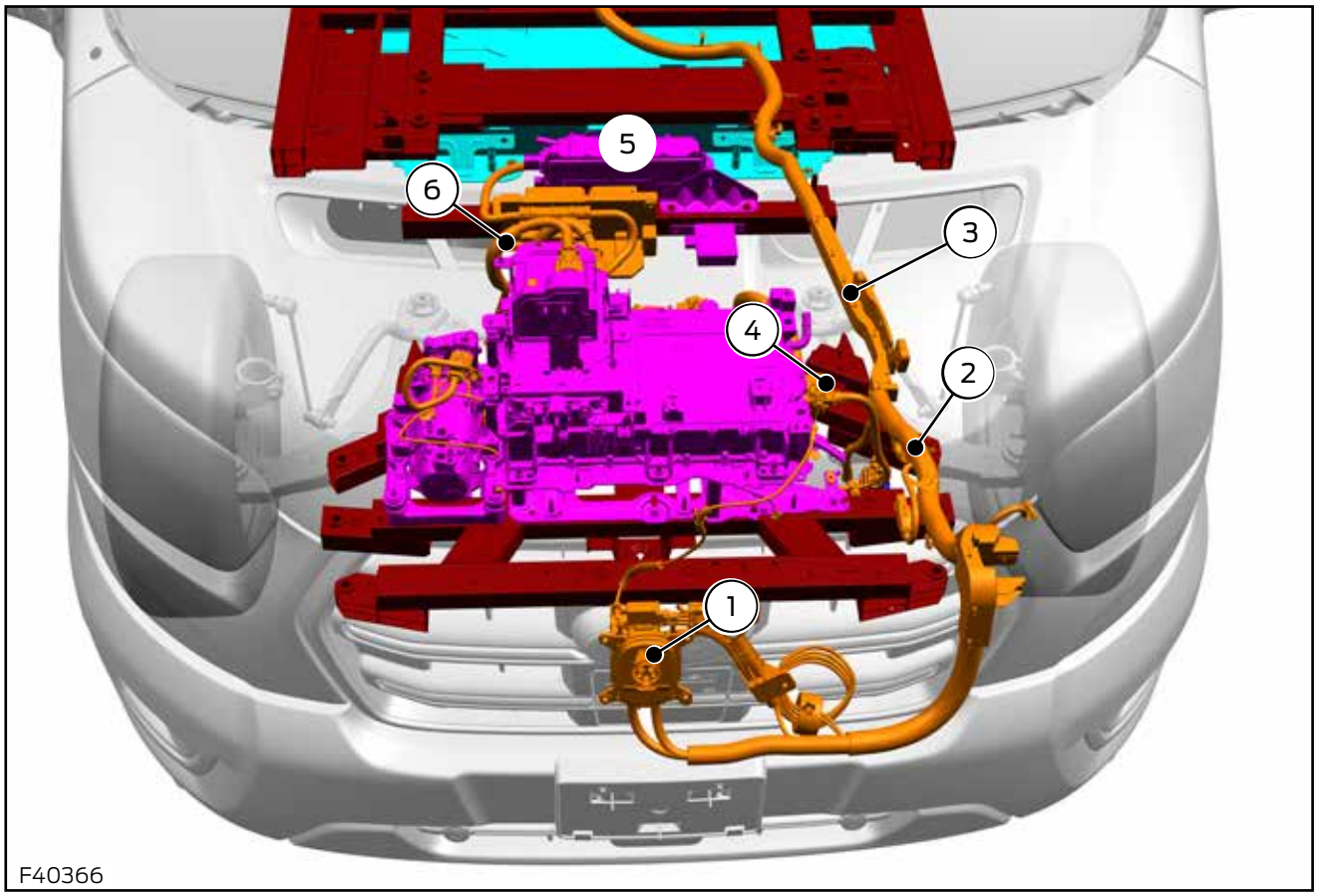
Front End High Voltage Wiring Package - Enhanced Range Battery (Dual Charger)



F40136 rev1

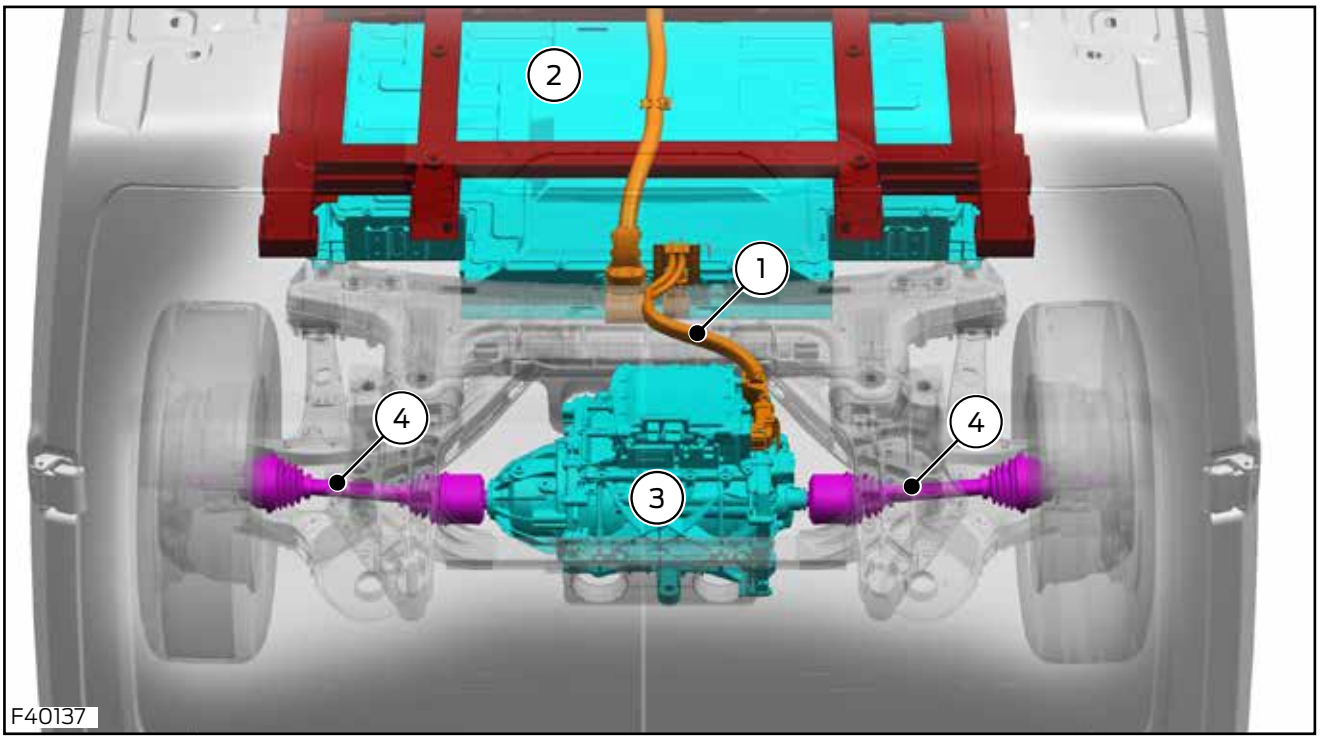
Item	Description
1	High Voltage Charge Port Inlet
2	Charge Port Harness
3	Charge Port Harness Protective Shield
4	Battery Charger Inline Jumper
5	On Board Generator Inverter (OBGI) Module (optional)
6	Accessory Harness

Front End High Voltage Wiring Package - Enhanced Range Battery (Single Charger)



Item	Description
1	High Voltage Charge Port Inlet
2	Charge Port Harness
3	Charge Port Harness Protective Shield
4	Single Charger Harness
5	On Board Generator Inverter (OBGI) Module (optional)
6	Accessory Harness

Rear End HV Cable Package - Enhanced Range Battery



Item	Description
1	Electric Drive Assembly to High Voltage Battery Cable
2	High Voltage Battery Pack
3	Electric Drive Assembly
4	Halfshaft

4.2.13 Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules, LV Cables and Connectors

Illustrations updated

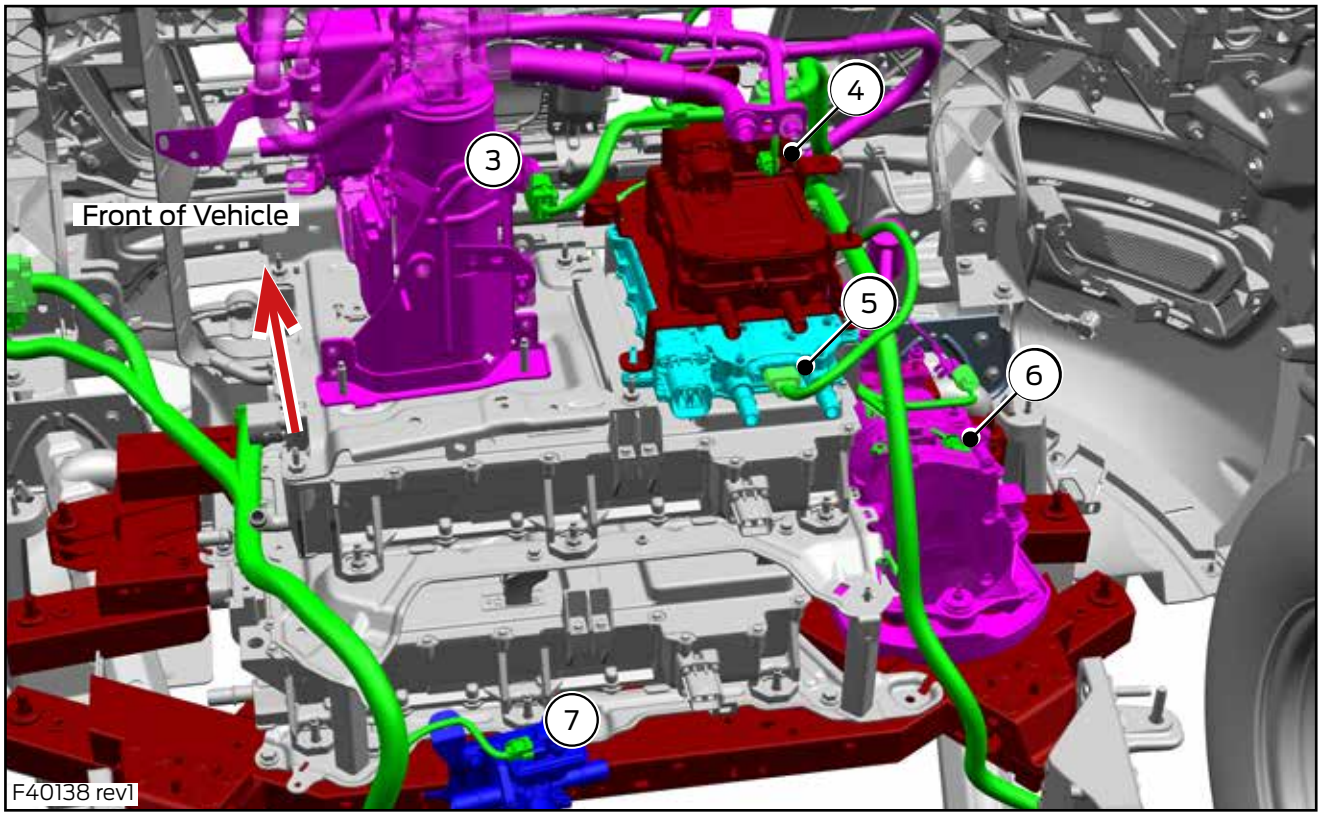
CAUTION: Beware when drilling or undertaking any operation near the LV cable that connects to the HV modules as this could negatively impact vehicle performance. The LV cable also includes a ground for HV components.

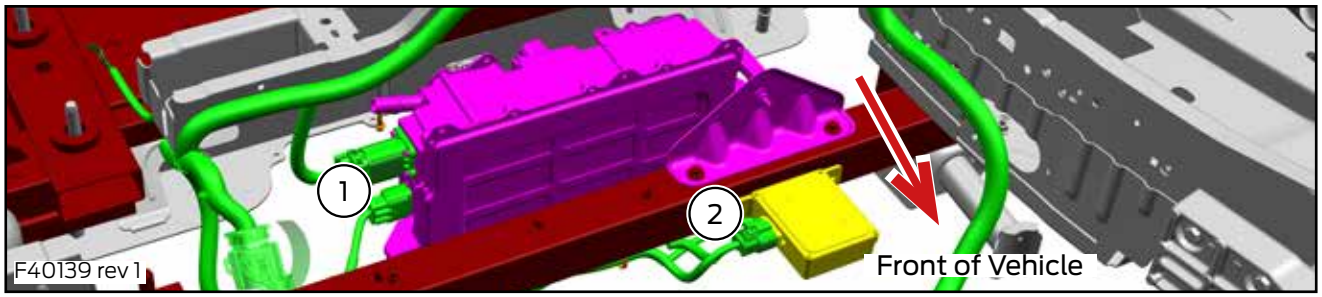
WARNINGS

Take precautions when drilling or undertaking any other operation in the areas indicated in order to prevent damage to any components.

Do not modify any existing LV Cables or cable/connections.

LV Connectors: Rear of HV Stack - Enhanced Range Battery (Dual Charger)*

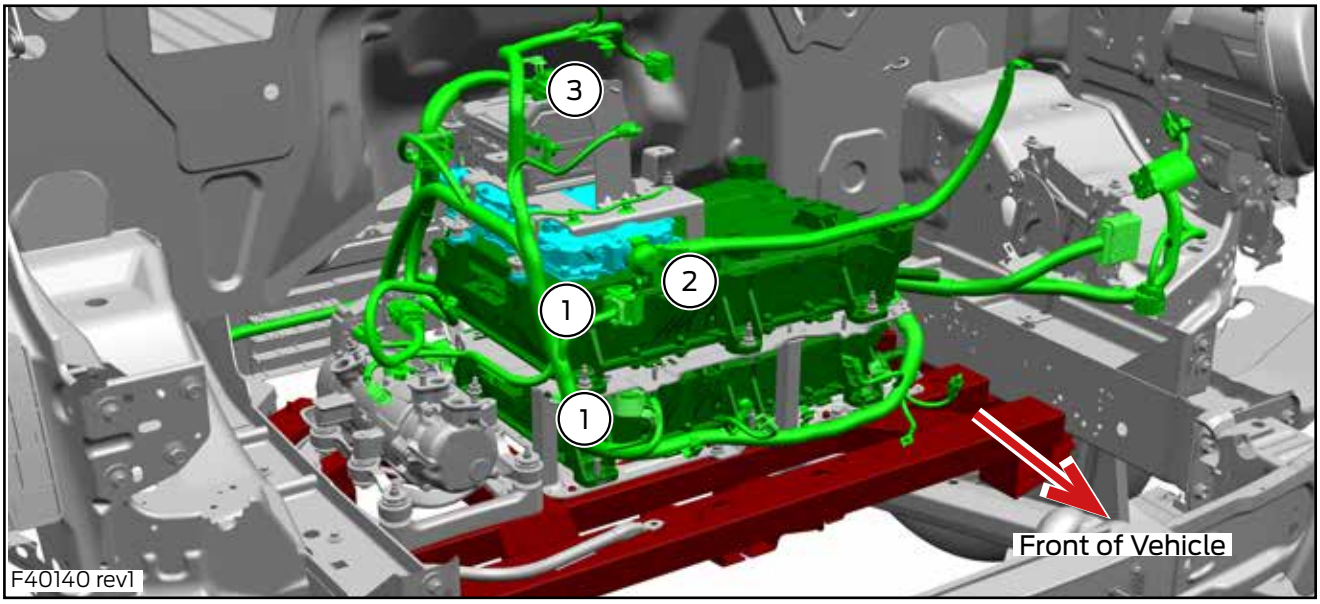




Item	Description
1	LV Connector to On Board Generator Inverter
2	LV Connector to Off Board Charger Control Module
3	LV Connector to Heat Pump
4	LV Connector to Electric Heater
5	LV Connector to DC-DC Converter
6	LV Connector to AC Compressor
7	LV Connector to Coolant Valve

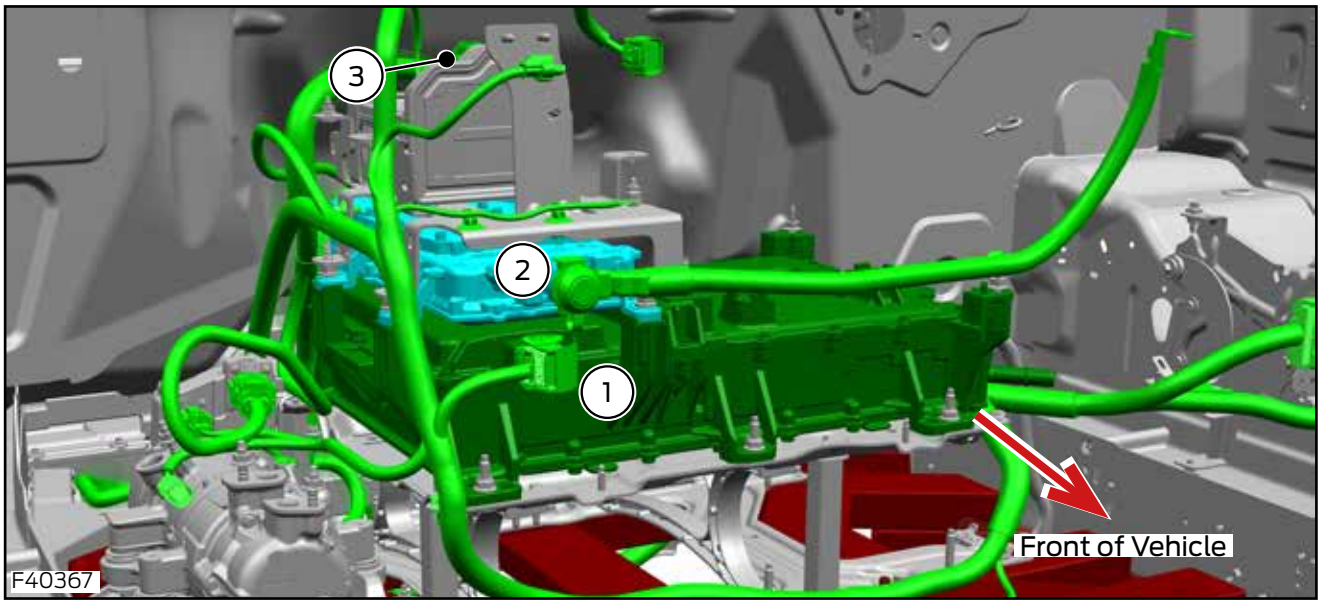
*Refer to F40138 rev1 and F40139 rev1 for location of LV connectors in the rear of HV stack on both single and dual charger variants.

LV Connectors: Front of HV Stack - Enhanced Range Battery (Dual Charger)



Item	Description
1	Low Voltage Connectors to Chargers
2	Low Voltage Connector to DC-DC Converter
3	Low Voltage Connector to Electric Heater

LV Connectors: Front of HV Stack - Enhanced Range Battery (Single Charger)



Item	Description
1	Low Voltage Connector to Charger
2	Low Voltage Connector to DC-DC Converter
3	Low Voltage Connector to Electric Heater

4.2.14 Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding

Illustrations updated

WARNINGS:

Take precautions when undertaking drilling, or any other operation, in or around the high voltage stack or electric drive assembly in order to prevent damage to any components. Do not touch HV grounding points in the vehicle.

Do not modify any high voltage grounding locations, connectors or joints.

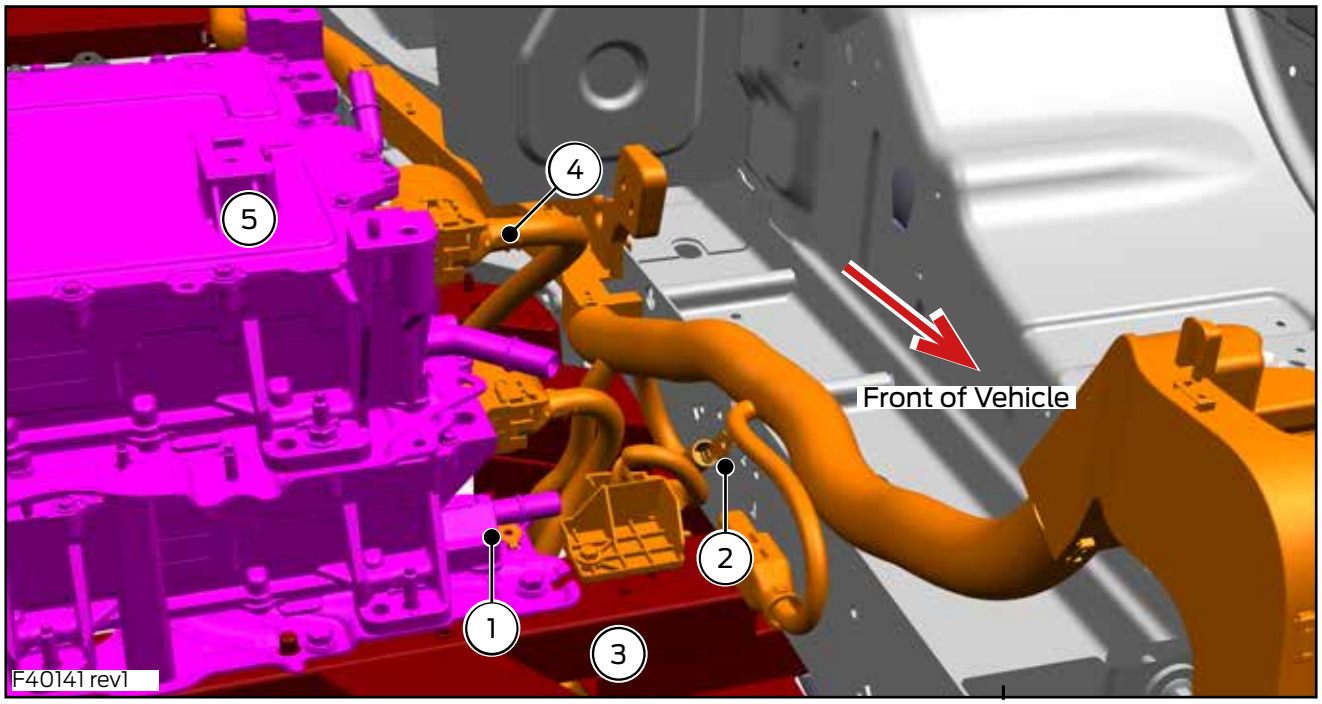
On the E-Transit BEV, the high voltage (HV) circuitry is not grounded to the body/chassis in the same way as the low voltage (12V) system. As part of the safety features built into the HV system, measurements between the HV circuitry and vehicle ground are measured using these ground paths. Therefore, HV module ground paths must not be altered in any way.

WARNING: Do not modify these high voltage/low voltage grounding locations/joints/fasteners of the Charge Port Harness Package Grounds.

Note added

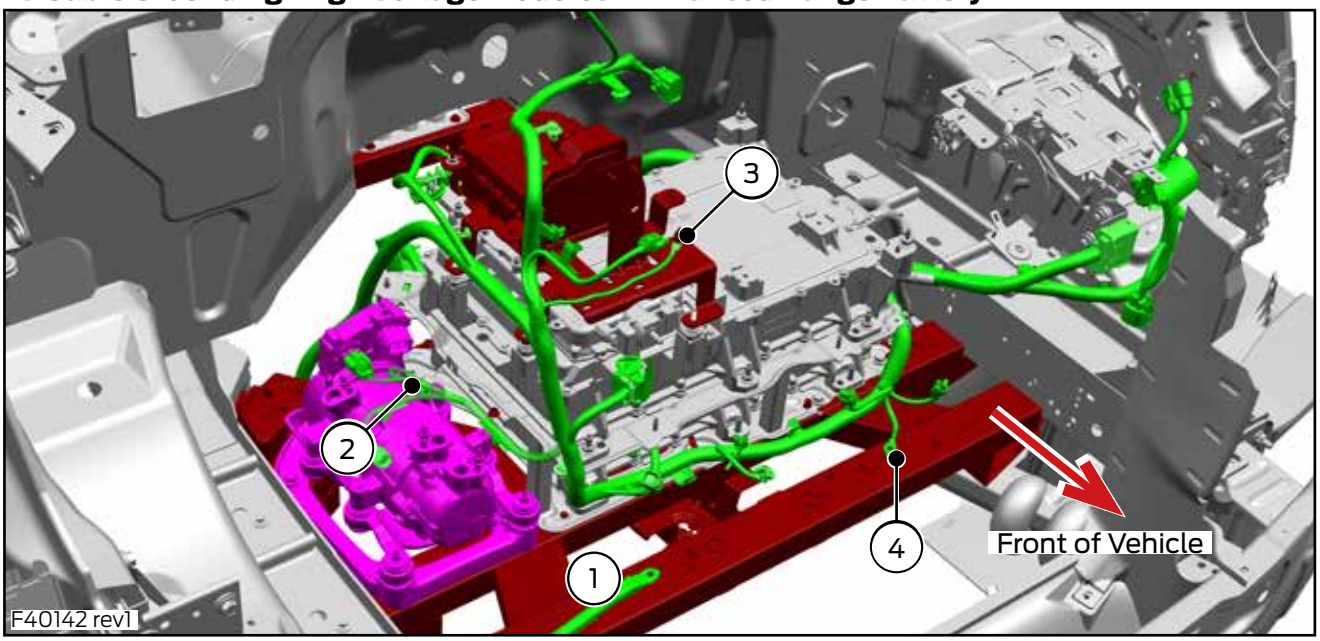
NOTE: E-Transit with Dual Charger and Single Charger have the same HV/LV cable grounding locations. Refer to F40141 rev1,F40142 rev1, F40143 rev1 and F40156 rev1 for both variants.

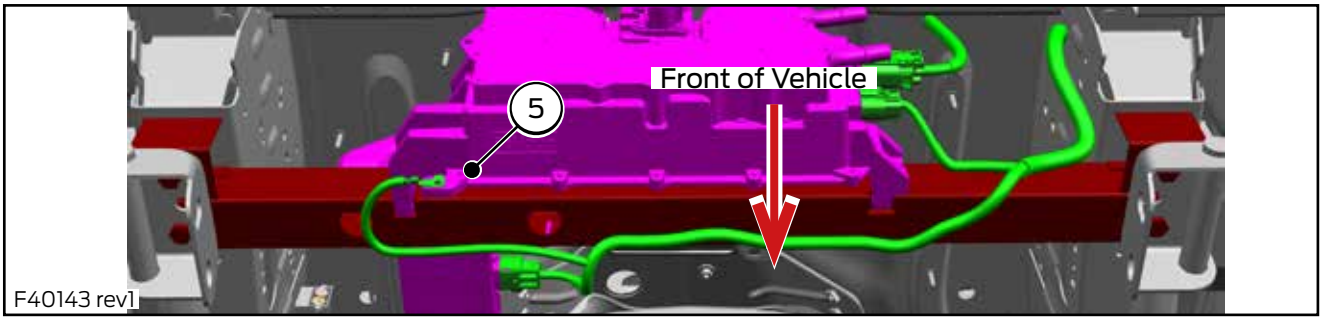
HV Cable Grounding: Charge Port Harness - Enhanced Range Battery (Dual Charger)



Item	Description
1	Harness Ground to Megabrace
2	Harness Ground to Chassis
3	Megabrace
4	Harness Protective Shield
5	High Voltage Stack

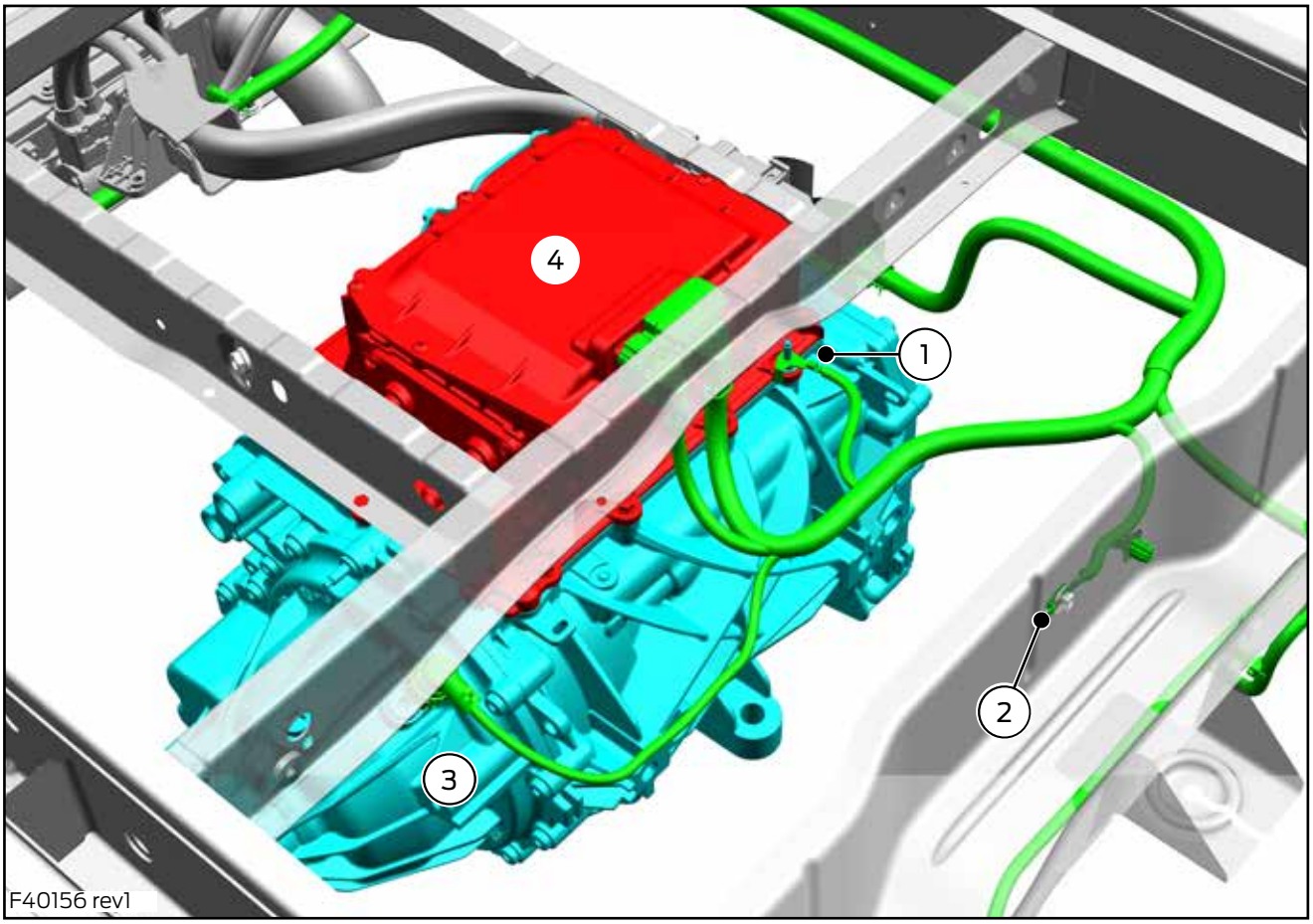
LV Cable Grounding: High Voltage Modules - Enhanced Range Battery





Item	Description
1	Megabrace Ground Strap to Chassis
2	Electric A/C Compressor Grounding
3	HV Electric Heater Grounding
4	EDS Grounding to Megabrace for Electric A/C Compressor and HV Electric Heater
5	On Board Generator Inverter Ground Strap to Chassis

LV Cable Grounding: Electric Drive Assembly - Enhanced Range Battery



Item	Description
1	Harness Ground to Electric Drive Unit
2	Inverter System Controller Harness Ground to Chassis Crossmember
3	Electric Drive Unit
4	Inverter System Controller (ISC)

4.2.15 Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding

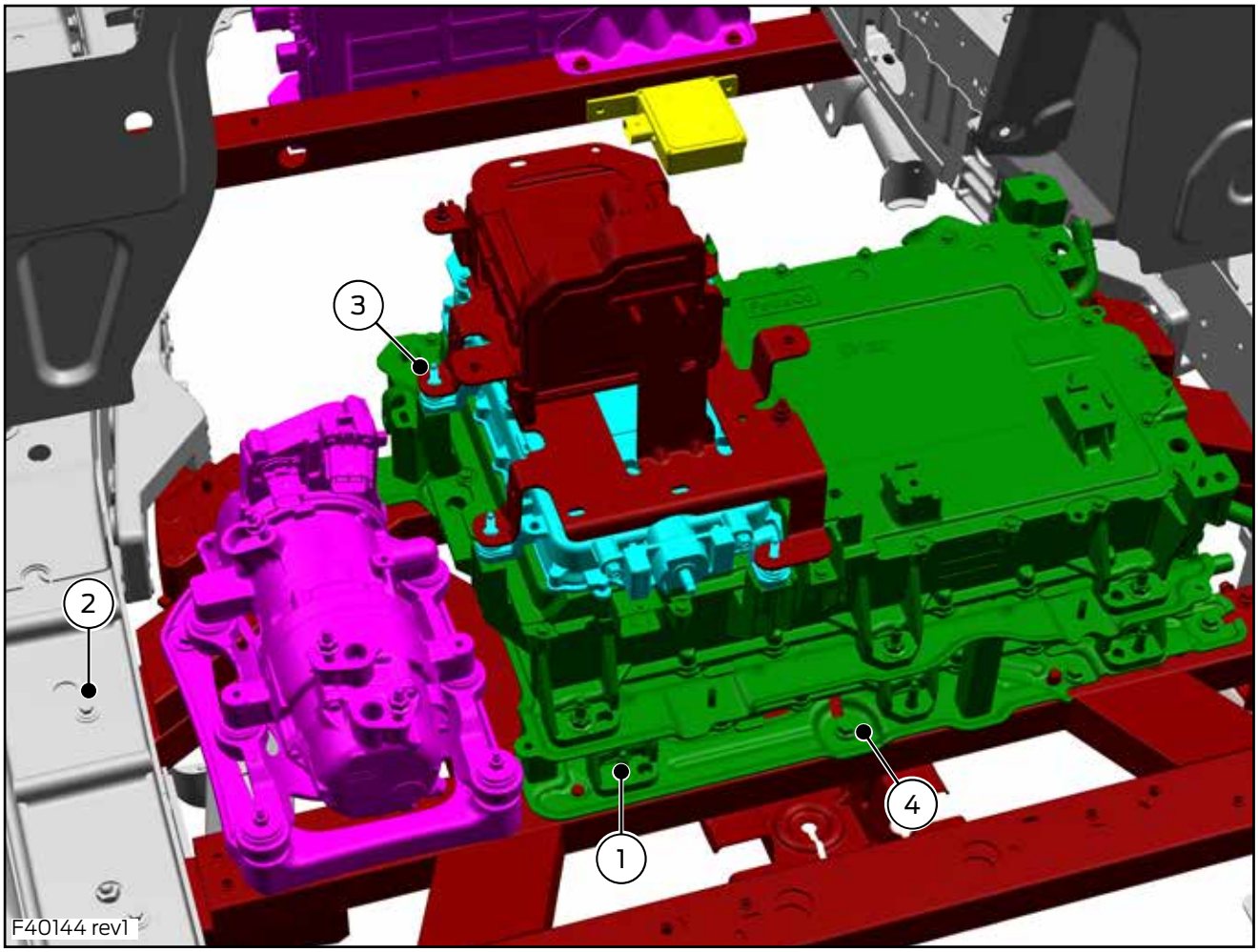
WARNING: Do not modify locations/joints of the Electric Drive Assembly Ground Path from the Inverter System Controller to the Electric Drive Unit or Chassis Crossmember.

WARNING: Do not modify High Voltage Charger to Charger Bracket chassis grounds.

WARNING: Do not modify Charger Bracket to Megabrace chassis grounds.

Illustration updated

Chassis Grounding: High Voltage Modules - Enhanced Range Battery*



Item	Description
1	High Voltage Charger to Charger Bracket - 6 Locations
2	Megabrace to Chassis - 6 Locations
3	DC-DC Converter to HV Charger - 4 Locations
4	Charger Bracket to Megabrace - 9 Locations

Ford released hardware is available to support further installations to the vehicle. Only this hardware and released parts are to be used for this.

*For both dual and single charger variants, refer to F40144 rev1 to locate chassis grounding points.

4.2.16 Precautionary Drill Zones - Rear Cargo Area

CAUTION: Do not drill into the vehicle before checking the precautionary drill zones and electrical wire routing.

NOTE: Refer also to 5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone for details of the restrictions in the area around the Seat Belt installation.

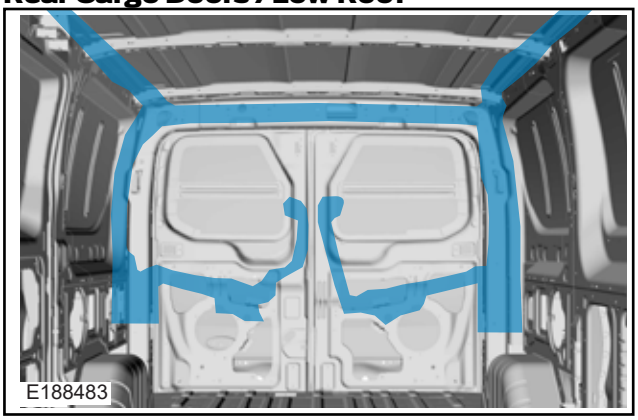
For vehicle wheelbase and roof height refer to 1.10 Package and Ergonomics.

The areas marked in blue on figures E188483 - E188487 show the 'Precautionary Drill Zones' for the rear cargo area where wiring harnesses are located. Caution should be taken when drilling in these areas to not damage wiring harnesses, (for example: when installing cladding and racking). The same care should also be taken when using self-tapping screws. Not all derivatives are shown but the routing is the same for roof line and wheelbase with regards to 'B', 'C' and 'D' pillars or roof bows and doors. Other non-electrical systems may also be present, for example fuel tank under floor, so it is important to check before drilling.

For additional information refer to the following links.

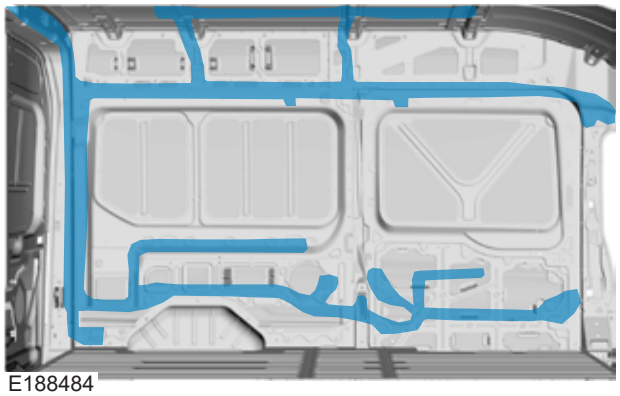
- 5.1 Body
- 5.1.4 Precautionary Floor Drilling-Gasoline
- 5.1.5 Precautionary Floor Drilling - BEV Vans
- 5.4 Loadspace
- 5.3.1 Racking Systems
- 5.6 Body Closures for No Drill Zones
- - Closures.

Rear Cargo Doors /Low Roof



E188483

Long Wheelbase/High Roof (LHS)

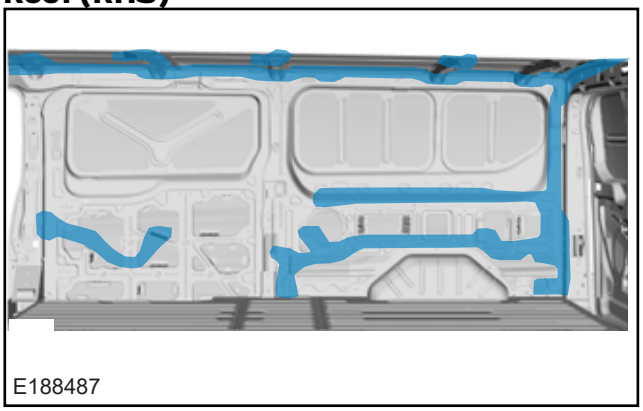


E188484

Long Wheelbase/High Roof (RHS)

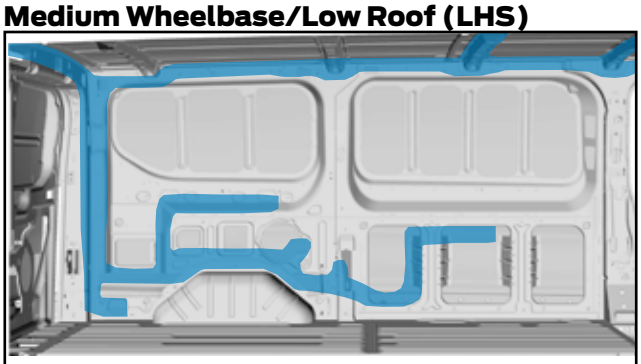
E188486

Side Load Doors/Long Wheelbase/Low Roof (RHS)



E188487

Medium Wheelbase/Low Roof (LHS)



E188485

4.2.17 Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (59B)

Content updated

NOTE: Fix over length of wiring on a secure area of the vehicle.

NOTE: 12V socket bracket can stay in its original position when socket is mounted in a different location.

Figure E236337 shows routing for Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (59B) without a tow bar and recommended wiring routing and wiring clip positions if a tow bar will be retrofitted.

4.2.18 Electrics for Tow Bar

Content updated

Tow bar electrical system may be ordered as a 7-pin SAE connector as part of the original vehicle build.

When fitting trailer tow to an existing vehicle, to ensure compliance with lighting regulations, the appropriate wiring accessory kit can be obtained from your Ford Dealer.

Fitment of non-Ford trailer tow wiring is not advisable due to Body Control Module control of lighting, and meeting legal lighting regulations. Contact your local Ford dealer for details of a harness that connects to the base vehicle harness.

NOTE: Ford trailer tow system is integrated with the Ford Park Aid system. When a trailer is connected, the system communicates on CAN only, to deactivate Reverse Park Aid feature. There is no hardwired interface. It is not possible to turn off Reverse Park Aid with an aftermarket trailer tow system.

NOTE: For Van tow bars it is necessary to connect into the rear lamp unit.

NOTE: If tow bar connectors are not used, appropriate fixing and cover must be applied for protection from water and contaminant ingress.

NOTE: Trailer detect circuit is part of the Ford Trailer Tow module. It can only be implemented on vehicles with power locking and perimeter alarm.

Trailer Tow Module (TRM) can support pure LED trailer lights as long as each circuit exceeds 500mA. Below this, the system will not detect that a trailer has been connected, and shuts down all outputs (sleep mode). It is recommended to target a 550mA minimum load to allow for system tolerances. This would need to be obtained with a supplemental load resistor if the LED lighting circuits are below this threshold.

A higher current is interpreted as short circuit. If a short circuit is detected, the related output will be switched off. The following table shows the recommended output maximums per circuit.

TRM has a battery charge of 30A. The feed is protected by a 30A fuse (not in TRM but in the vehicle fuse panel). It is NOT protected for current overload. The fuse will blow if the current is exceeded.
For the following functions, Delphi LED detection limit of typically 330mA (110mA - 660mA) applies:

- Stop Light
- Turn Indicator

Summary of Current:

- Max load for Turn/Stop Lamps is 15A each.
- Total module is 30A for Lamp loads.

Park/Reverse Lamp is a relay located in the vehicle not in the TRM module.

If trailer tow system is to be added, the correct wiring and module needs to be ordered. The vehicle needs to have Central Car Configuration (CCC) programmed to the correct parameters:

CCC Parameter 20

- 0x01 without trailer tow
- 0x08 Trailer Module 7 - Pos Socket

NOTE: It is mandatory that a trailer is detected. Therefore, at least one of the following lights have to be connected in the **on mode** or in the **standby mode** (anti-theft mode): Stop right, Stop left, Position lights or Direction indicator left.

Trailer connect will be detected if a load is detected on the Right Turn/Stop or Left Turn /Stop Lamps. If the current loads for either lamp are exceeded, the module will shut the driver off and send a message to the instrument cluster that the lamp driver has failed.

The module will also detect if either the right or left side is open (for example, if the lamp is burned out).

If a short circuit is detected or an overheating of the drivers occurs, the related output remains off until an ignition cycle is performed, and the engine is restarted.

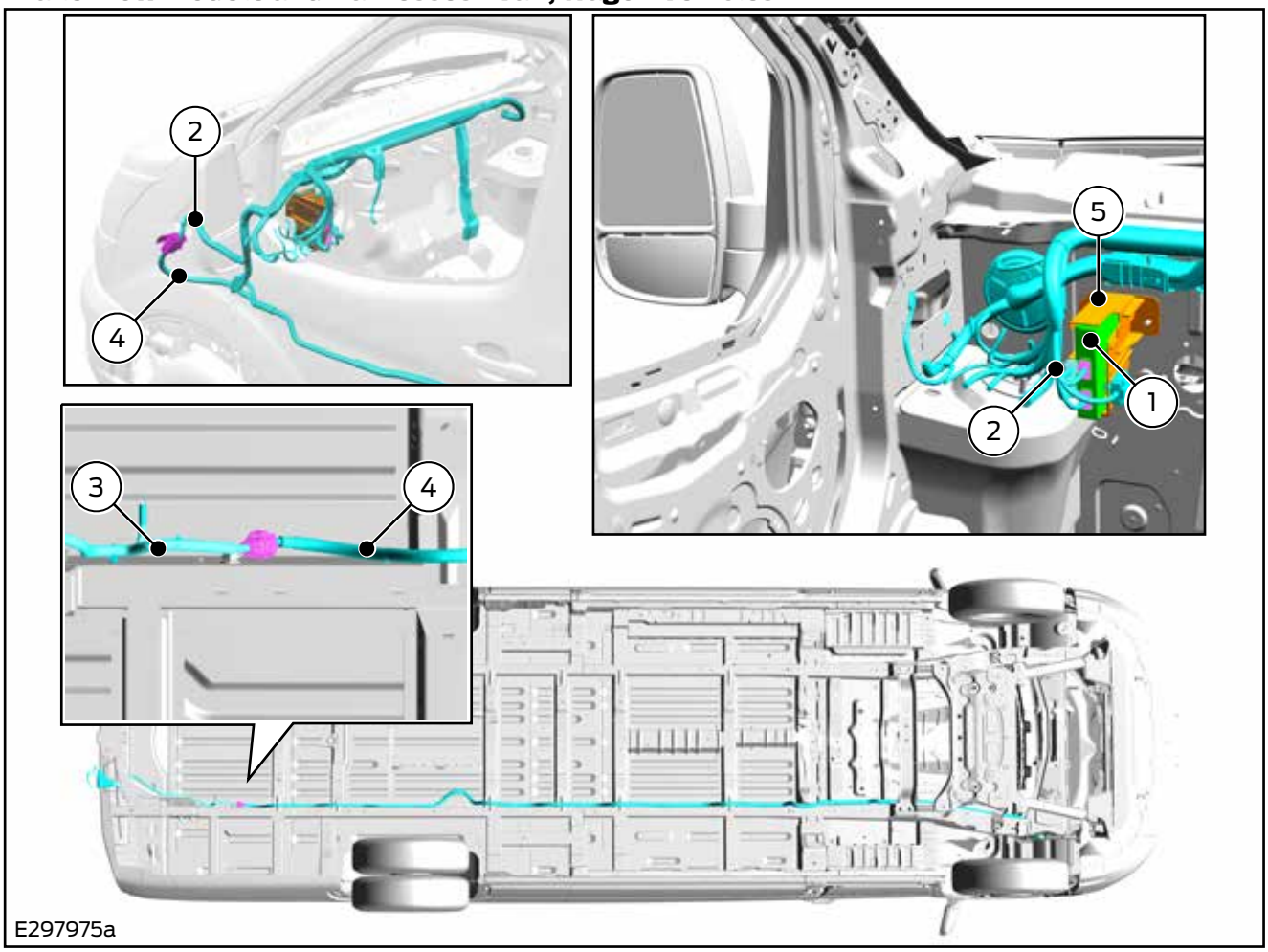
The trailer detection uses a strategy of having a 1K ohm resistor, if the lights are not actually switched on, to detect that the trailer has been connected. If a trailer light is already switched on, the related current will be checked.

NOTE: Extended wheelbase vehicles with less Trailer Tow option and have Fuel Harness SK4T-14406-* will not have the connector for Trailer Tow Socket Jumper.

Item	Description
1	Integrated Trailer Module (RL3T-19J294-BF/FF)
2	Main Body Harness (SK4T-14A005-**)
3	Trailer Tow Socket Jumper (SK4T-13B576-AK*)
4	Fuel Tank Harness (SK4T-14406-*)
5	Trailer Tow Module Bracket

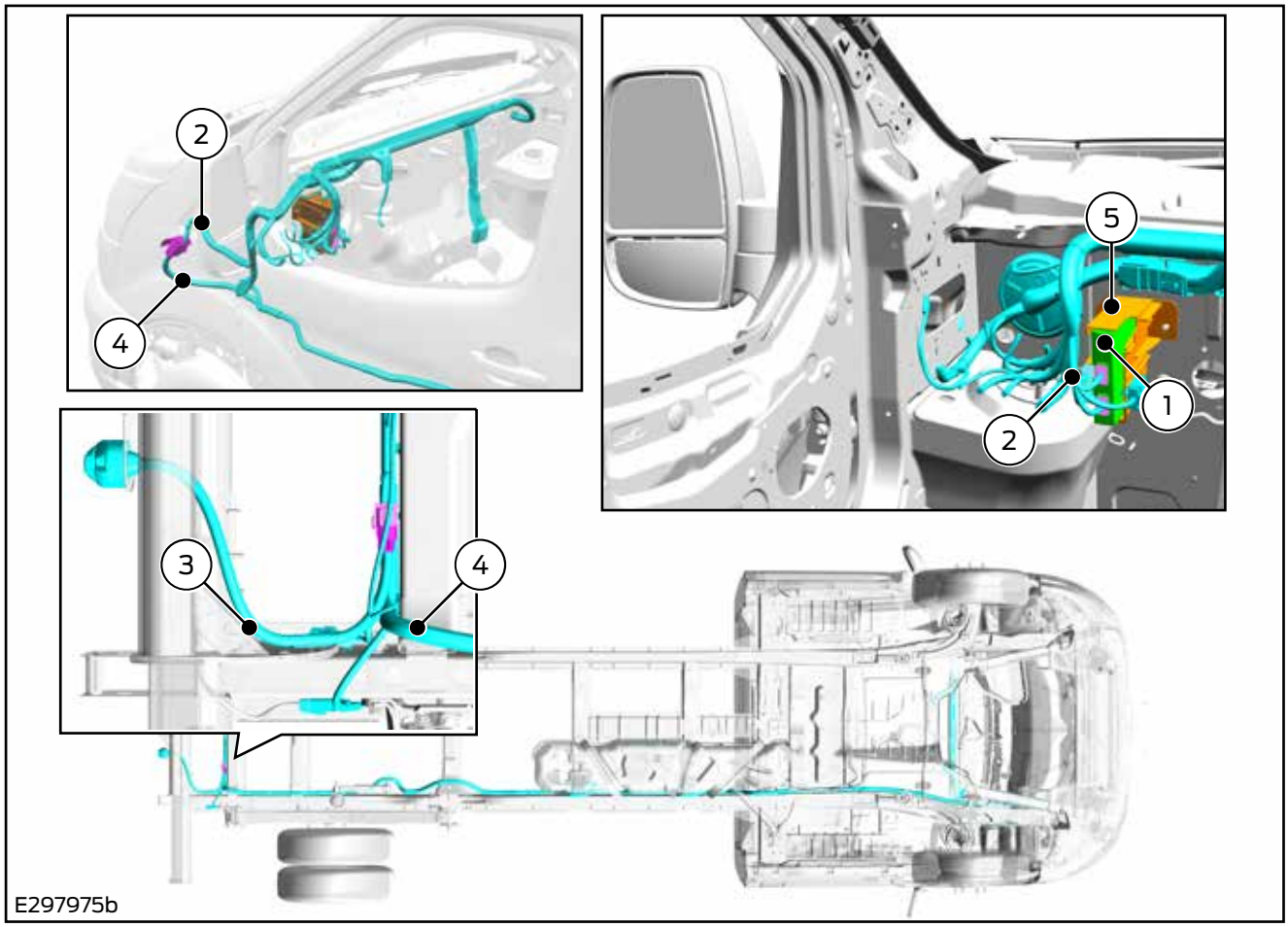
Refer to E297975a & E297975b

Trailer Tow Module and Harnesses - Van, Wagon Vehicles



E297975a

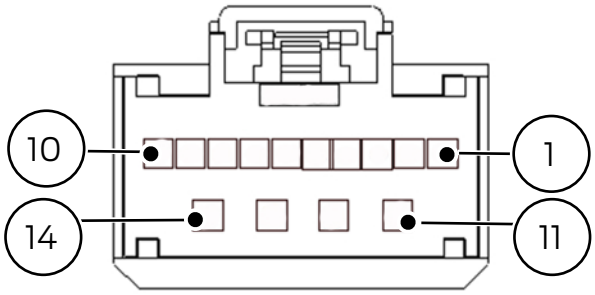
Trailer Tow Module and Harnesses - Chassis Cab Vehicles



E297975b

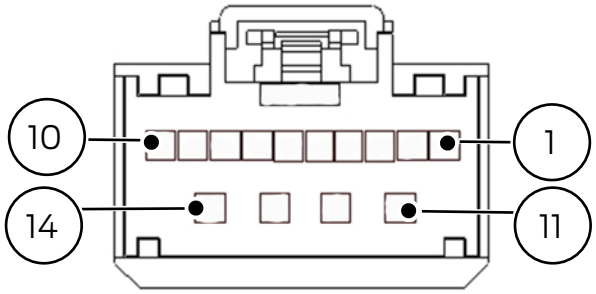
Trailer Tow Module (RL3T-19J294-F* / B*) Connectors*

KU5T-14489-XA



F40357

KU5T-14489-SA



F40358

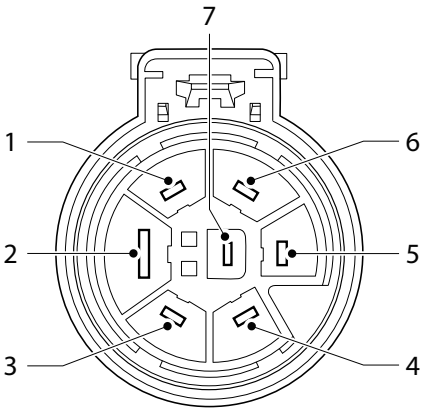
Component Terminal Number	Feature	Current (A)		Voltage (V)	
	Signal Name	Min	Max	Min	Max
KU5T-14489-XA					
1	Left Turn Lamp/Stop Lamp	0.03		-	-
2	Not Used	-	-	-	-
3	Switch -Trailer Backing Assist Enable	0.01	0.01	-	-
4	Switch - Trailer Backing Assist -	-0.007	0	-	-
5	Switch - Trailer Backing Assist +	0.002	0.002	-	-
6	CAN High Speed 3 High	0.05	0.075	-	-
7	CAN High Speed 3 Low	0.025	0.038	-	-
8	Switch Trailer Braking Assist Signal	0.001	0.01	-	-
9	Not used	-	-	-	-
10	LIN BUS (RL3T-19J294-B* only)**	-	0.01	-	-
11	Power Feed	0.1	20	8	16
12	Relay - Trailer Tow Battery Charging	0	20	8	16
13	Power Feed (RL3T-19J294-B* only)**	1.3	24	9	16
14	Brakes (RL3T-19J294-B* only)**	0	24	-	-
KU5T-14489-SA					
1	Not Used	-	-	-	-
2	Not Used	-	-	-	-
3	Not Used	-	-	-	-
4	Not Used	-	-	-	-
5	Not Used	-	-	-	-
6	Not Used	-	-	-	-
7	Trailer Tow Connect Signal	-	0.013	8	16
8	Not Used	-	-	-	-
9	Not Used	-	-	-	-
10	Not Used	-	-	-	-
11	Trailer Tow Turn Signal Left	2	4.5	8	16
12	Ground - Cowl Side/Pillar A Left	0.03	-12	0	-1
13	Trailer Tow Turn Signal Right	2	4.5	8	16
14	Power Feed	4	10	8	16

Trailer Tow Module Parts: RL3T-19J294-F (Low end without Integrated Trailer Brake - FDDAA) / RL3T-19J294-B*(High end with Integrated Trailer Brake -FDDAD)

**KU5T-14489-XA connector pins: 10, 13 and 14 are not used for RL3T-19J294-F*

4.2.19 Trailer Tow Connectivity

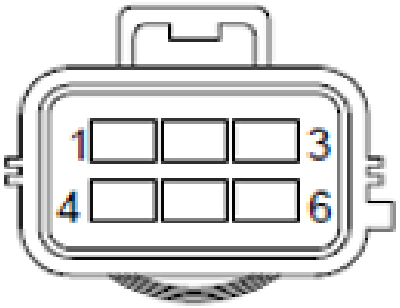
Trailer Tow 7 Pin Socket



E195995

7 Pin Trailer Tow Connector	
Pin 1	Turn/Stop Lamp Left
Pin 2	Power Ground - To Chassis Point Off 13B576
Pin 3	Trailer Tow Brakes
Pin 4	Turn/Stop Lamp Right
Pin 5	Power Ignition ON
Pin 6	Park Lamps
Pin 7	Trailer Tow Back-Up Lamps

Trailer Tow Interface Connector In-line to 13B576



E185973 rev1

In-line to 13B576 (on harness 14406)	
Pin 1	Turn/Stop Lamp Left
Pin 2	Turn/Stop Lamp Right
Pin 3	Park Lamps
Pin 4	Trailer Tow Back-Up Lamps
Pin 5	Power Ignition ON
Pin 6	Trailer Tow Brakes

Trailer Position and Back-Up Lamps are by relay (not BCM). Trailer Park Position relay R18 and Back-Up lamps R9 (in AJB).

Reverse Signal for aftermarket equipment, such as backup alarms, may be obtained at Pin 4 on the Trailer Tow 14406 in-line connector. See figure E185973 rev1. This circuit is fuse protected to 10 amps.

4.3 Communications Network

Electrical Architecture has been updated to MY26

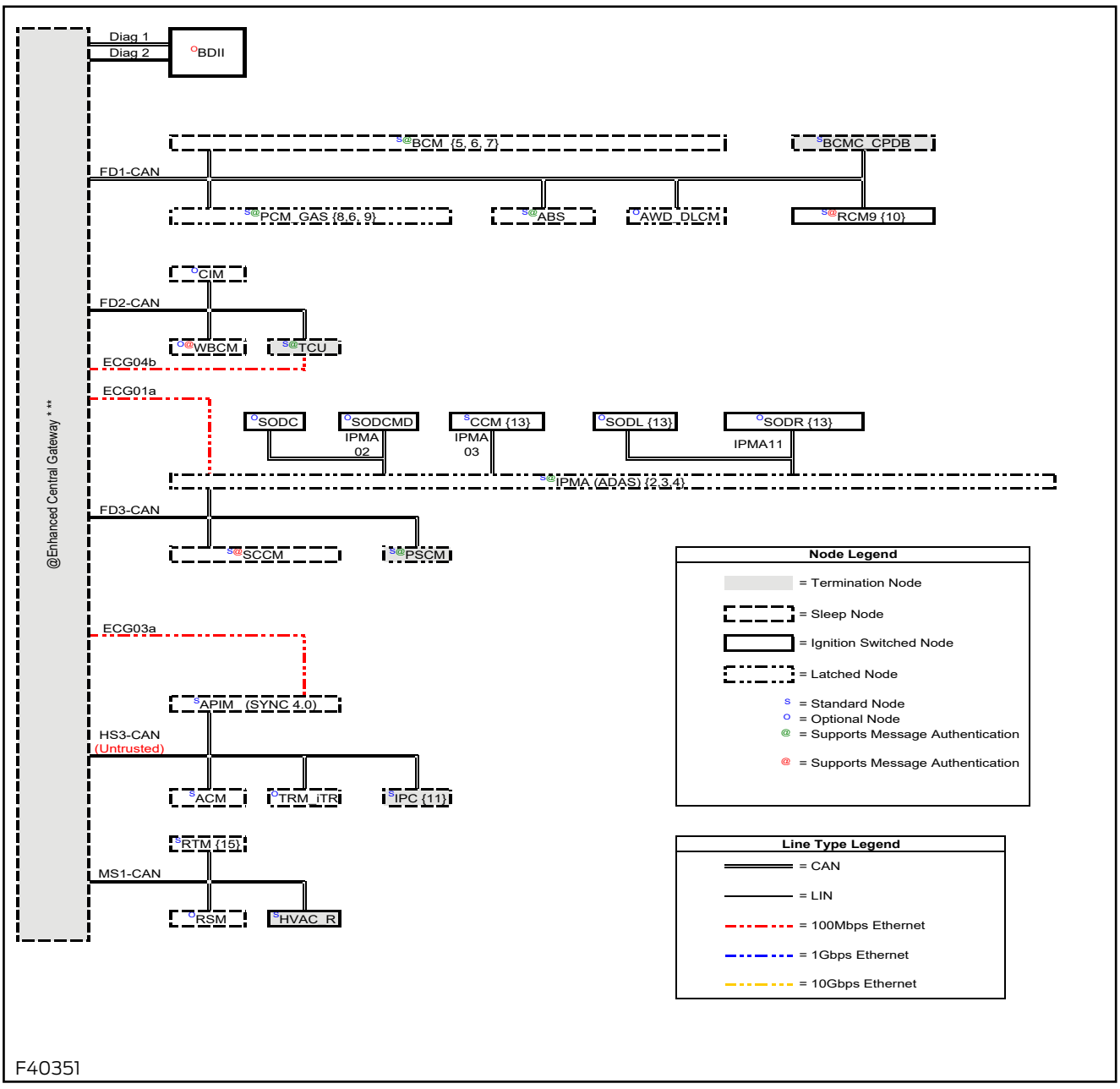
4.3.1 CAN-Bus System Description and Interface

WARNING: Do not tamper with, cut into or connect to any of the CAN-Bus interface wiring or connectors. The addition of unapproved CAN-Based modules could impact the safe operation of the vehicle.

Network diagram updated

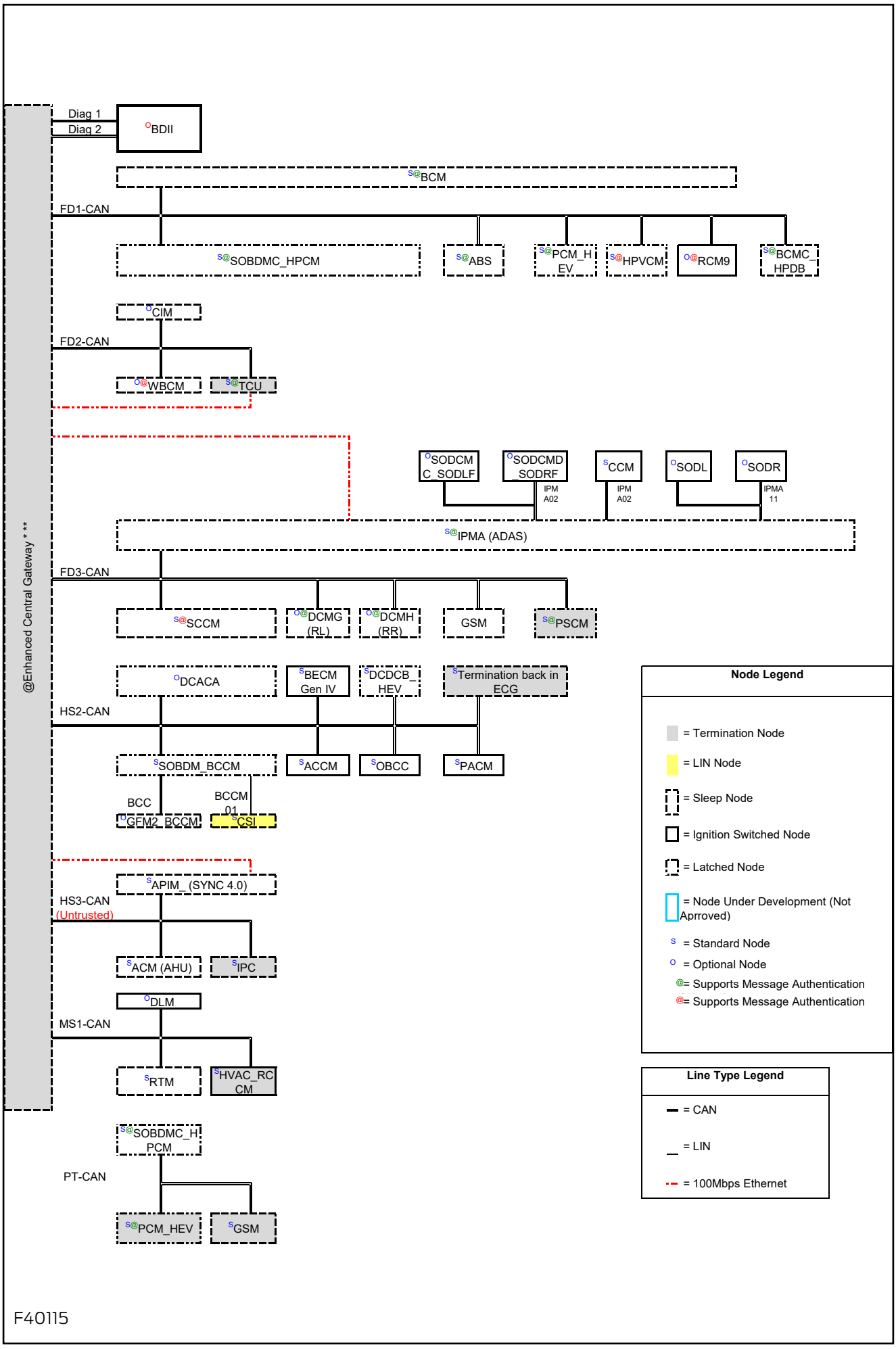
CAN, Controller Area Network uses propriety message sets to communicate between the devices shown, via Medium Speed (MS), High Speed (HS), Private and Public Buses. In addition, there is localized application of Local Interconnect Network (LIN) and ISO 9141 K-line serial links.

Transit CAN-Bus System, SYNC 4 (12" touch screen)



F40351

E-Transit CAN-Bus System - BEV



F40115

Communication Network System (F40351 and F40115 references)

Item	Description
FD1-CAN	FD1-CAN Fast data speed 1
FD2-CAN	FD2-CAN Fast data speed 2
FD3-CAN	FD3-CAN Fast data speed 3
HS3-CAN	HS3-CAN High speed 3
MS1-CAN	MS1-CAN Medium speed 1
PT-CAN	PT-CAN Private CAN gear shift module
ABS	Anti-Lock Brake System Control Module
ACCM	Air Conditioning Control Module
ACM	Audio Control Module
APIM	Auxiliary Protocol Interface Module
AWD_ DLCM	All Wheel Drive_Drive Line Control Module
BCM	Body Control Module
BCMC HPDB	CAN PDB Power Distribution Box
BECM	Battery Energy Control Module
CCM	Cruise Control Module (Adaptive Cruise)
CIM	Upfitter (Control) Interface Module
CSI	Charge Status Indicator
DCACA	DC to AC converter
DCMG RL	Door Control Module G Rear Left
DCMG RR	Door Control Module G Rear Right
DLM	Driver Lockout Module
ECG	Enhanced Central Gateway
ECM_ DIESEL	Engine Control Module_Diesel
GFM2 BCCM	Battery Charger Control Module
GSM	Gear Shift Module

Item	Description
HPVCM	Heat Pump Valve Control Module
HVAC -RCCM	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning (Remote Climate Control Module)
IPC	Instrument Panel Cluster
IPMA	Image Processing Module A (Lane Departure System Camera)
OBCC	Off Board Charge Controller
OBDII	On Board Diagnostics
PACM	Pedestrian Alert Control Module
PCM	Powertrain Control Module
PMS	Particulate Matter Sensor
PSCM	Power Steering Control Module
RBM	Running Board Module
RCM	Restraints Control Module
RTM	Radio Transceiver Module
SCCM	Steering Column Control Module
SOBD	Sec. OBD Control Module
SODCMC SODLF	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module left front
SODL	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module Left
SODR	Side Obstacle Detection Control Module Right
TCM	Transmission Control Module
TCU	Telematics Control Unit
TRM	Trailer Module (Trailer Tow)
WBCM	Wireless Belt Minder

4.3.2 Body Control Module (BCM)

WARNINGS:

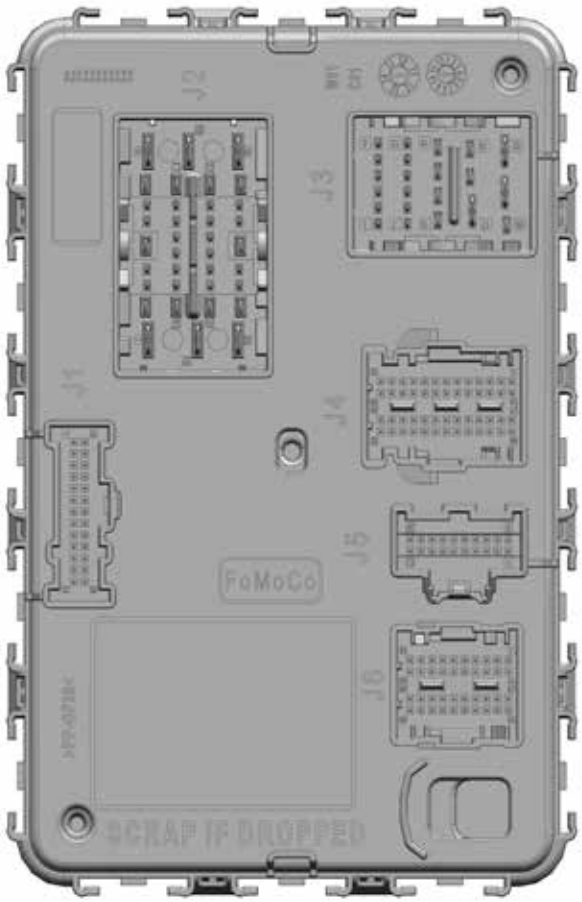
Unapproved and/or incorrect connection to any of the mating wiring can cause either of the associated systems to shut down (overload protection), or permanent damage to the BCM itself.

Vehicle BCM configuration must NOT be modified once the vehicle has left the Ford production plant except for any changes that may be carried out using dealership integrated diagnostic systems equipment.

BCM is the prime control module in the vehicle's electrical architecture. It controls the management of most of the vehicle's lighting, locking and security systems.

Repeated overloading of circuits can result in output lock-out requiring dealer reset. Repeated dealer resets can result in permanent loss of a function.

BCM - as viewed in-car position



F40094

BCM Output Information

Function	Component	Load Type	Max. Load	Overload Condition
Low Beam Left	High Side PWM or DC for HID Relay	Bulb/HID (via Relay)	55W	Output Shutdown (1)
Low Beam Right	High Side PWM or DC for HID Relay	Bulb/HID (via Relay)	55W	Output Shutdown (1)
High Beam Left	High Side PWM or DC for HID Main Beam Shutter	Bulb/ HID Shutter	55W	Output Shutdown
High Beam Right	High Side PWM or DC for HID Main Beam Shutter	Bulb/ HID Shutter	55W	Output Shutdown
Daytime Running Light Left	High Side PWM (Configurable for Smart LED DRL/ Position Light)	Bulb/Smart LED	30W	Output Shutdown
Daytime Running Light Right	High Side PWM (Configurable for Smart LED DRL/ Position Light)	Bulb/Smart LED	30W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Left Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	10W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Left Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	6W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Right Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	10W	Output Shutdown
Position Light Right Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	6W	Output Shutdown
Front Fog Light Left	High Side PWM	Bulb	35W	Output Shutdown
Front Fog Light Right	High Side PWM	Bulb	35W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Left Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Left Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Right Front	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Turn Indicators Right Rear	High Side PWM	Bulb	27W	Output Shutdown
Number Plate (& Marker Lights)	High Side PWM	Bulb/LED	25W	Output Shutdown
Reversing Lights	High Side DC	Bulb + Micro Relay	42W + 250mA	Output Shutdown
Stop Light Left	High Side PWM	Bulb	2 x 21W	Output Shutdown
Stop Light Right	High Side PWM	Bulb	2 x 21W	Output Shutdown
Centre High Mounted Stop Light	High Side PWM	LED	1 x 16W or LED string	Output Shutdown
Switch Illumination	High Side PWM	LED	1.5A at 16V	Output Shutdown
Battery Saver Control	High Side Driver	Bulb	75W	Output Shutdown
Front Cabin Lights Courtesy	High Side PWM	Bulb or LED	65W	Output Shutdown
Rear Cabin Lights Courtesy	High Side PWM	Bulb or LED	65W	Output Shutdown
Lock/Double Lock Outputs	Bi-directional Driver	Latch Motor (x 5 max)	6A per latch, 110ms Pulsed	Output Shutdown
Unlock Outputs	Bi-directional Driver	Latch Motor (x 5 max)	6A per latch, 110ms Pulsed	Output Shutdown

PWM = Pulse Width Modulation/DRL = Daytime Running Lights/HID = High Intensity Discharge

Repeated overloading of circuits can result in output lock-out requiring dealer reset. Repeated dealer resets can result in permanent loss of a function.

(1) BCM does NOT support HID directly Driven. HID MUST use relays.

4.4 LV Charging System (12V)

WARNING: Do not cut into the alternator wires.

NOTE: Alternator systems use Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC). Please refer to this section.

NOTE: The alternator is Local Internet Network (LIN) controlled. It does not have a conventional B+ (engine start) signal line.

4.4.1 General Information

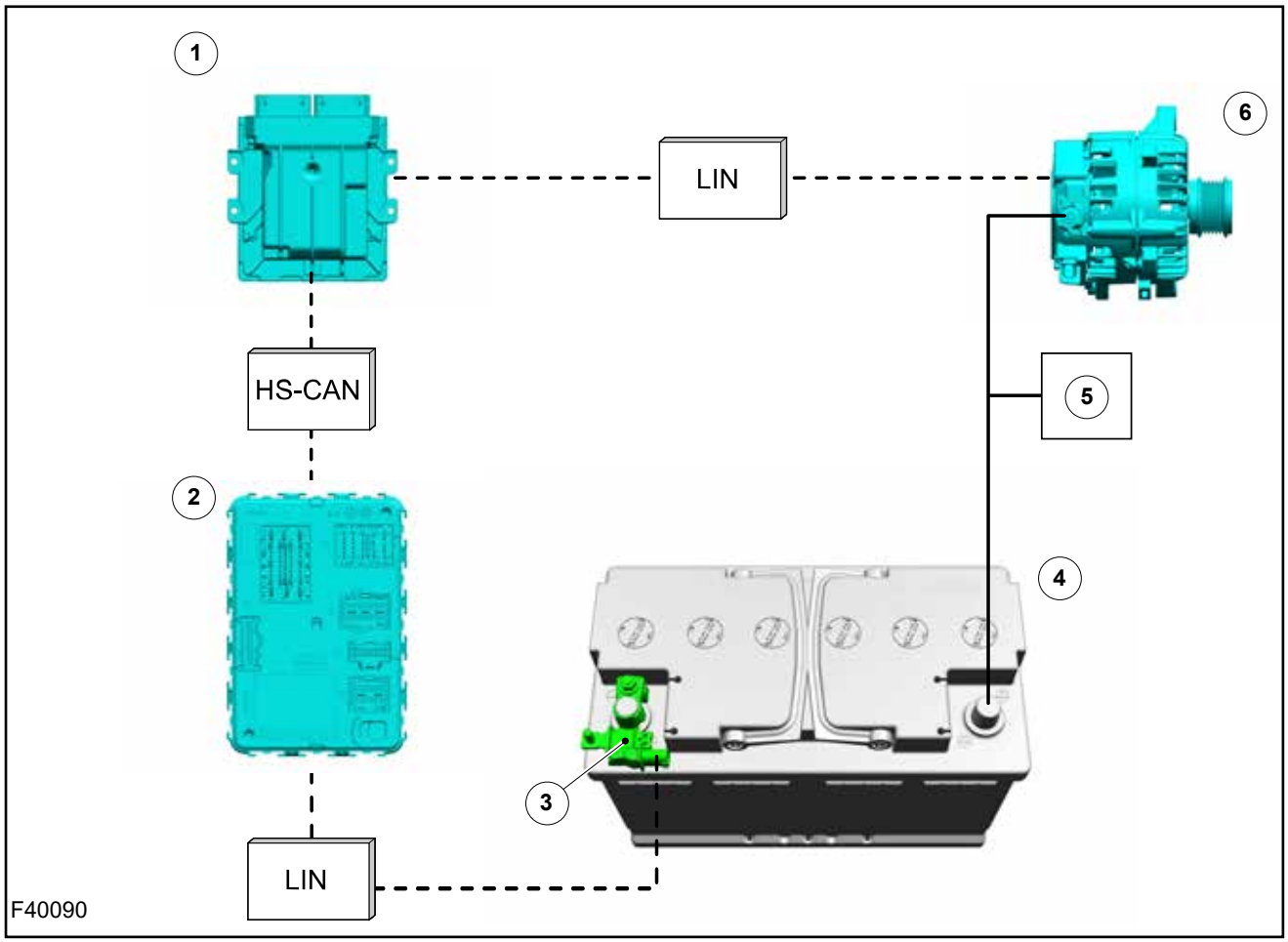
Battery capacity, technology and charge available from the alternator must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavorable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

Additional connection points are provided specifically for customer use, and are located on the outside of the driver's seat pedestal. A 60A fused connection is provided as standard on single battery vehicles. An additional 175A switched connection is provided for twin battery vehicles. Other options are possible for higher current applications.

Refer to 4.5 Battery Systems.

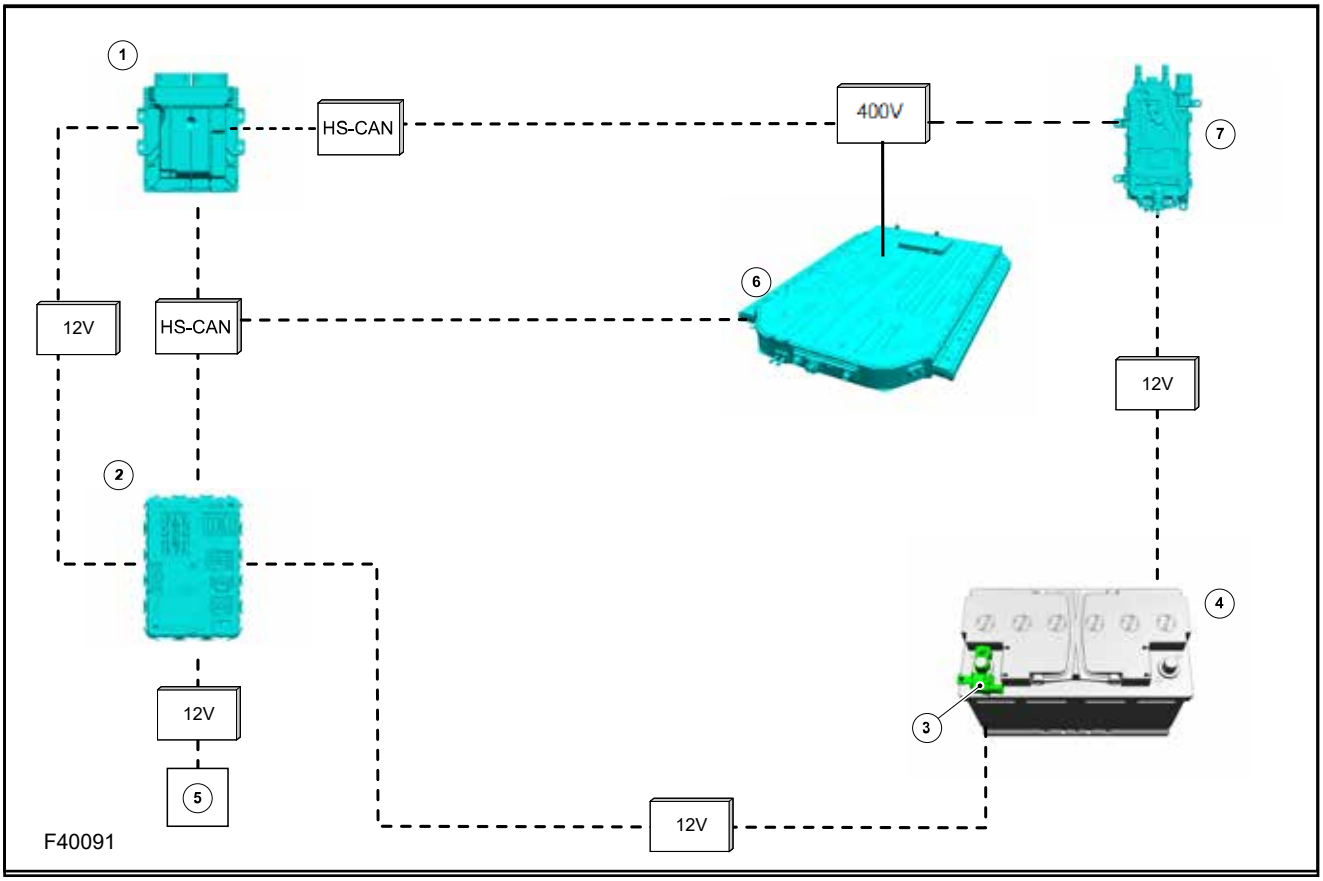
4.4.2 LV Charging System Layout

Alternator-Based LV Charging System Diagram



Item	Description
1	Power Control Module (PCM) or Engine Control Module (ECM)
2	Body Control Module (BCM)
3	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)
4	Battery — Twin batteries are available as an upgrade or driven by specific features
5	Electrical Consumers
6	Alternator

BEV System Diagram



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Power Control Module (PCM) or Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Electrical Consumers
2	Body Control Module (BCM)	6	High Voltage Battery
3	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)	7	DC-DC Converter
4	Battery		

Summary of the Available Charging Modes

Charge Mode		Approximate Charging Voltages (Measured at Jump-Start post)
	Float mode/ Key on / On-plug charging	Minimum 12.2 - Maximum 14.9
SRC	Smart Regenerative Charging - normal charge mode.	Minimum 12.2 - Maximum 14.9
CC	Conventional Charging - applies a strong charging voltage until the battery is full and maintains alternator voltage above 13.5V unless battery temperature >40ºC. The actual voltage at the battery will vary depending on the alternator load.	Minimum 13.5 - Maximum 14.9

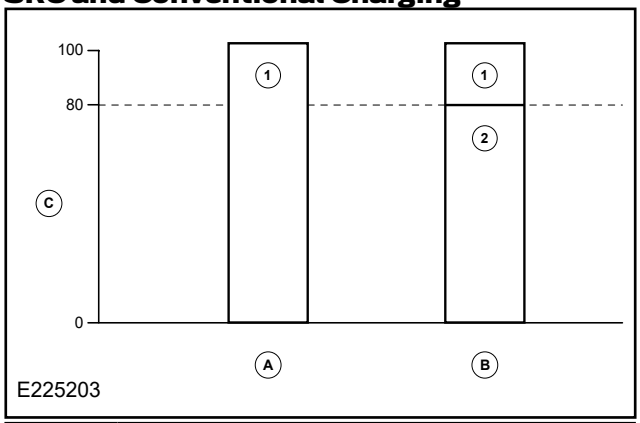
Voltages in the above table are approximate as the charging system is dynamic and can vary the voltage at any time. There is also a refresh mode that is activated periodically if the vehicle stands for more than 30 days. This may take the voltage to 15.2V.

4.4.3 Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)

Smart Regenerative Charging varies alternator output using information from the Battery Monitoring Sensor to reduce fuel consumption. Alternator output can be increased during deceleration to charge the battery without the use of additional fuel. Alternator output can also be decreased to reduce the load on the engine and therefore fuel used. During this condition, the battery supports the electrical loads. This function can be turned off by using Third Party High Power mode as detailed later in this section.

In comparison, Conventional Charging aims to charge the battery at a constant level which varies with battery temperature.

SRC and Conventional Charging



Item	Description
A	Conventional Charging
B	Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC)
C	Battery Charge Level (%)
1	Minimum 13.5V at battery when charging
2	Minimum 12.2V at battery when charging

4.4.4 SRC Override

SRC can be interrupted temporarily by Third Party High Power mode.

4.4.5 Third Party High Power Mode

WARNINGS:

Third Party High Power mode is a single method that has various effects. Do not allow Third Party High Power mode to be active in incorrect conditions, as this may lead to unintended consequences. When implementing automated control of Third Party High Power mode, be sure to consider the full range of effects.

Third Party High Power mode feature must not be grounded permanently. This will invalidate the emission and homologation of the vehicle. Permanently disabling the vehicle's fuel save features will require rehomologation as part of the approval process by the upfitter.

When fitting automated systems to control Third Party High Power mode, be sure to record details within the owner's vehicle information. Advise subsequent owners of modifications relating to application of Third Party High Power mode. Subsequent owners of equipped vehicles are to be informed of applications of Third Party High Power mode.

Third Party High Power mode can inhibit engine shutdown (AEIS) which is a safety procedure designed to protect against carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning. Do not operate the feature on a vehicle in a confined space. Do not install the feature on a vehicle that may be left running in a confined space. Do not allow carbon monoxide to accumulate.

CAUTION: Third Party High Power mode is only to be used where required for third party equipment functionality. When equipment is off and in a normal drive cycle. All fuel and emission save features must be active.

NOTE: When a vehicle is decommissioned for resale, Third Party High Power mode inhibit needs to be removed from the vehicle.

Introduction

Third Party High Power mode has only one input that can affect the following features:

- SRC inhibit.
- AEIS inhibit (feature restricted in some markets).
- At engine off, inhibit of the timer of the Standard Battery Guard (SBG).

An example of when not to switch to third party mode is a normal drive cycle when no extra loads are active. Solutions should only be used for heavy electrical loads or mechanical power from the Front End Accessory Drive (FEAD), mainly when stationary.

Third Party High Power mode is subject to configuration and may be subject to restriction.

AEIS Inhibit

This may be required to keep the engine running/ vehicle-ready to drive when the vehicle is used for power generation, mechanical or electrical, in a stationary application. Normal AEIS functionality is where the engine/electric motor will automatically shut down after 30 minutes if no driver input is detected.

SRC Inhibit (Conventional Charging)

When SRC is inhibited, such as by Third Party High Power mode, the system is then using Conventional Charging.

This may be required for converters requiring voltage in the range of 13.5V to 14.9V. Such applications include boost or supplemental battery charging, compensation for voltage drop or high ampere electrical loads whilst the engine is running.

For additional information, refer to 4.6 Battery Protection Load-shedding.

Timer of Standard Battery Guard at Engine Off

This may be required to prevent the SBG operating too soon when the engine is off.

Installation/Access

Third Party High Power mode is activated by the grounding of a particular electrical circuit to a 'non-permanent' switching strategy.

Third Party High Power mode can be accessed at various vehicle connectors:

- As a kit to install the standard 12-way Vehicle Interface Connector in the driver's seat pedestal.
- Interface Connector pin 3 available on all Non-Camper variants.
- Pre-installed as part of the High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector (JZGAE) pin 24.

A mating 43 way connector is available as a kit (KTSK4T-14A411-D*) from your local Ford dealer. For information on High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector , please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

For further information, refer to the following sections:

- 4.6 Battery Protection
- 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections

4.4.6 Test Functionality

NOTE: There will be a delay between setting the Third Party High Power mode and the effect occurring (up to a 5 second delay).

NOTE: If the 12V SOC is already too low, the circuit will open before the timer to protect the engine start.

Test Functionality: SRC Inhibit, Charging Mode Control

1. Ensure batteries have good charge. When charging, use the Jump Start point and engine bay ground point. Refer to the charging instructions in the Owner's Manual.
2. Measure voltage between Jump Start point and engine bay ground point with engine running/ vehicle ready to drive and SRC inhibit input circuit open. Refer to the Roadside Emergencies section of the Owner's Manual.
3. With the engine running/vehicle ready to drive, set to ground the circuit for Third Party High Power mode and measure battery voltage. The voltage should be in the ranges shown in the table 'Summary of the Available Charging Modes'. The voltage may depend on many factors including total electrical load, which loads are active, battery condition and others. The rate of charge between modes varies depending on which loads are active.
4. Open the switch again and check voltage level returns to the original level measured in Step 2. SRC is active.

Test Functionality: AEIS Inhibit, Idle Shutdown Control (where fitted)

1. Check that AEIS is fitted and operational.
2. Set Third Party High Power mode.
3. Check that the engine continues to run whilst the inhibit is set.
4. Check that normal AEIS behavior resumes when the inhibit is not set, for example the engine shuts down after 30 minutes.

Test Functionality: Inhibit of Timer for Engine Off Load-Shedding

1. Establish the preset timer of a SBG circuit e.g.
   - CCP2
   - other switched ground circuits fed from the feature
2. Set Third Party High Power mode.
3. Check that the circuit remains on after the timer period.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

4.4.7 Charge Balance Guidelines

When fitting medium to high third party electrical loads, including extra batteries, a charge balance test should be performed. This includes all relevant Ford and third party loads active at the same time where the system voltage should not go below 13V. This will ensure that the alternator is not damaged, extra batteries are charged and correct system functionality is maintained. SRC override is recommended to ensure the alternator is in full power mode. Increased performance can be achieved by elevating the idle, utilizing the Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC).

4.4.8 Circuit Diagrams

Full vehicle wiring and circuit diagrams are in the Ford Workshop Manual.

For more information, refer to the following sections:

- 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections
- 4.23 Fuses and Relays.

4.4.9 Alternator Characteristics

NOTE: These alternator curves do not show spare output capacity as this would be dependent on original vehicle features and options.

NOTE: If the engine is running for long periods, assume the hotter temperatures apply.

The alternator performance curves show the Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC) and the factory set engine RPM values for mode 1. This data can be used for calculating charge balance values for the finished third party system.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

Allow for the Ford system to require approximately 20A to run the engine. Any further Ford systems active, such as blowers and lights, will further reduce available Ampere for third party systems. It is also recommended to utilize the SRC override feature (Third Party High Power mode) to maximize alternator output. An overloaded alternator will exhibit voltage lowering below 12.8V and could lead to damage, so must be avoided.

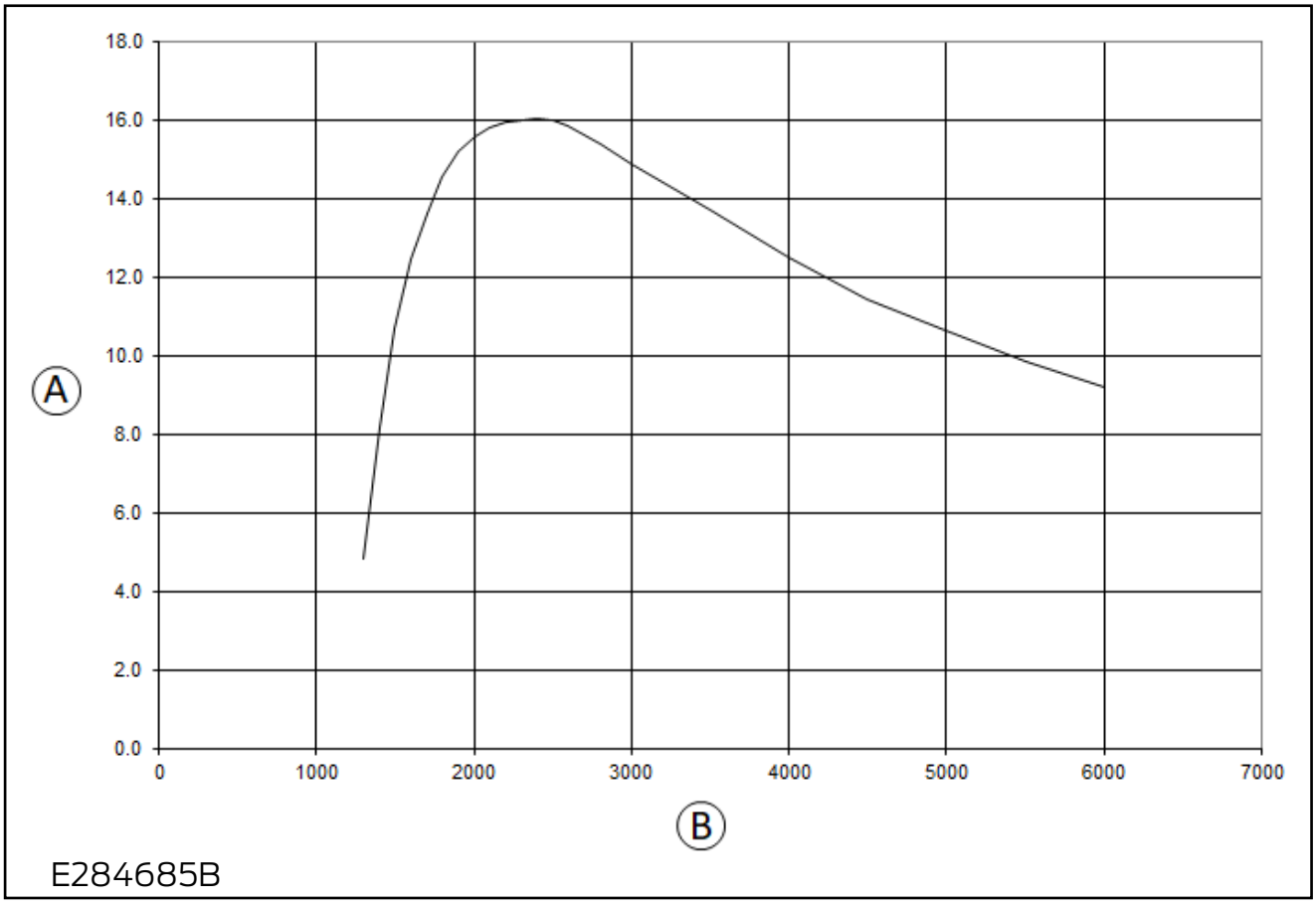
Diagram E284685B shows the torque in Nm which is required to drive the alternator at full output. The vertical axis (A) shows the torque (Nm) and the horizontal axis (B) shows the alternator's revolutions per minute (RPM).

NOTE: For equivalent engine revs per minute (RPM), the alternators revolutions, axis (B) should be divided by the following factor: 2.7 for Gasoline Engines.

Diagram E1183977 Rev1 shows the alternator output performance at five different temperatures in accordance with Ford specification. The vertical axis (A) shows output current (Amps) and the horizontal axis (B) shows Alternator speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

NOTE: Dual alternator output and torque curves should be considered to be double that of the single alternator.

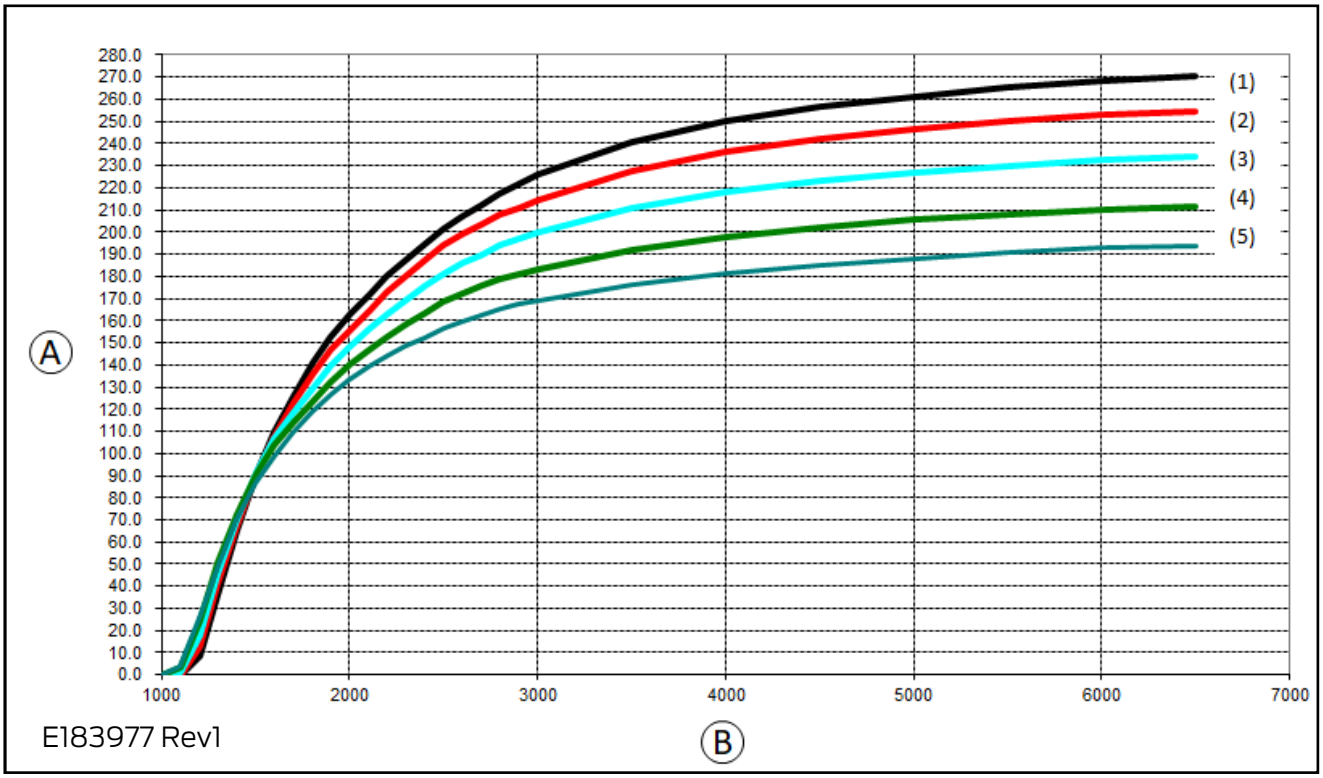
Torque Curve of Alternator: Gasoline Engines



E284685B

Item	Description
A	Torque (Nm)
B	Revolutions Per Minute (RPM)

Output Performance of Alternator - Gasoline 250A Heavy Duty



Item	Description
A	Output Current (Amps)
B	Alternator Speed (RPM)
1	Temperature 32°F (0°C) — Voltage 14.1V
2	Temperature 73.4°F (23°C) — Voltage 13.9V
3	Temperature 89.6°F (60°C) — Voltage 13.5V
4	Temperature 199.4°F (93°C) — Voltage 13.1V
5	Temperature 240.8°F (116°C) — Voltage 12.9V

4.5 Battery Systems - Section title updated

Warning updated

WARNING: For electrical Power Take Off (PTO) that requires deep discharge and cycling from third party systems, High Performance Deep Cycle AGM batteries (HTAAE) must be ordered on the base vehicle. For more information, refer to 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations' table later in the section. If option HTAAE is not on the base vehicle they can be fitted by your local Ford Dealer. See table in Single and Twin Batteries Section.

CAUTION: Some batteries will require specific charging profile. Therefore you must use a suitable battery charger (e.g. DC-DC charger) for your selected battery. Please consult your battery supplier.

NOTE: If there is an isolation relay, check settings to ensure batteries are connected to the charging circuit.

NOTE: The battery capacity, technology and charge available from the charging system must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavorable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

NOTE: Auxiliary customer electrical loads exceeding 60A must be regulated by the Standard Battery Guard (SBG) and load-shedding system. For loads greater than 175A, see 'Third Party +12V PTO for loads exceeding 175A' section in this BEMM.

NOTE: Do not make any additional connections to the Power Distribution Box (PDB) terminals as over-torquing could cause damage to the PDB. Any electrical loads should be taken from the CCP.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

4.5.1 Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations

WARNING: If a third party battery guard is fitted, it must be connected to the load-shedding signal so that EPAS is protected in the event of an overload at engine run.

Caution updated

CAUTION: When evaluating the electrical system's performance, it is essential to consider both engine run loads and the impact of start-stop duty cycle events on power management and overall efficiency.

NOTE: Use Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries for deep cycle applications, i.e. charge and discharge on a regular basis.

NOTE: When considering battery discharge, the Vehicle Modifier needs to consider the current drawn when the added system is in operation, plus any continuous key-off loads even when not in use. For example, an inverter fitted will consume power even with no load connected.

NOTE: Where possible, engine run operation of electrical equipment reduces battery discharge; both Vehicle Start and Auxiliary Batteries are utilized in conjunction with the charging system.

NOTE: User training and appropriate battery maintenance on a regular basis will assist in ensuring correct battery operation.

The section is to serve to assist with fitting the appropriately sized charging system.

Connectivity Usage	Recommended Specification (Feature code shown in brackets)
Additional fused relay outputs.	Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE)- option includes CCP2.
Additional switches.	Spare Accessory Switches - 4 (JZJAC) Note: Includes Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE)

Table content updated

Engine / E-Drive State	Power Usage	Recommended Specification
Engine Off / DCDC Off	**LOW CONTINUOUS KEY OFF LOAD (KOL):** Up to 30mA, for example: telematics device.	• Donor Vehicle Battery(s) • Vehicle Interface Connector
	HIGH CONTINUOUS KOL: Up to 100mA, for example: Trackers with GPS, Control Gear, medium current peripheral chargers	AGM batteries totaling no less than 110Ah
	INTERMITTENT HIGH KOL: Up to 240A, for example: Cranes, Tippers, Tail Lifts, 230V Inverters, Ambulances, Utility	• Loads up to 175A: CCP2 • Loads greater than 175A up to 240A: Direct connection to battery with a battery guard. For further information see 4.5.6 Battery Configurations, Additional Loads, Start-Stop and SRC, in this section. Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection for Load-Shedding. **NOTE:** Ensure battery state of charge is monitored.
Engine On / DCDC On	**MOTIVE LOW CONTINUOUS POWER TAKE OFF (PTO):** No more than additional 60A, for example: Maintenance Van with water heater and additional lighting but no further systems.	Donor Vehicle Charging
	MOTIVE HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO: No more than additional 120A. This load may need to be shed in certain conditions. **STATIC HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO:** No more than 240A. This load may need to be shed in certain conditions. For example, Chiller, Refrigeration, Ambulance, High-Load Maintanence Vehicle, Utility Emergency Response	Loading over 60A must be connected to a controlled load-shedding connection. Use Standard Battery Guard [CCP2 / Load-Shed signal controlling 3rd-party relay]. If required, use a Split-Charge system with backup batteries. Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection for load-shedding. For sustained high currents, particularly with vehicle at idle or low speed engine, use Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC) to enhance 12V charging if required. For voltage support, consider using Third Party High Power Mode. DO NOT ALLOW BATTERY DISCHARGE AND DO NOT ALLOW SYSTEM TO DROP BELOW 13V.
	MECHANICAL PTO: Applications which require elevated engine idle speeds, for example: Mobile Tire Fitter Van, Welder's Vehicle and Mechanical PTO from engine.	Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC)
	For applications where the Vehicle Modifier Load requirement exceeds HIGH CONTINUOUS PTO, for example: total Ford and Vehicle Modifier loads exceed the highest available Ford alternator rating.	Supplemental batteries and supplemental energy source subject to availability and charge balance assessment.

4.5.2 Guidelines When Converting Vehicles

Responsibilities and Considerations

WARNING: The fitting of voltage boosters or other devices to enhance alternator output is not permitted. The fitting of such devices will not only invalidate vehicle warranty, but could damage either or both, the alternator and Engine Management System/Power Control Module, and possibly affect vehicle legal compliance. Check local legislation.

Operator requirements for additional and specialized electrical equipment vary. The Vehicle Modifier must therefore consider the following points when designing the installation:

- Maintain legality and regulatory conformity of the base vehicle.
- The driveability and serviceability of the base vehicle.
- The effect of regulations governing the proposed conversion including national legislation in the country of sale.
- The method of integrating the circuit into the base vehicle.
- The materials and installation must meet the quality standards described in this section.

Normal Operating Voltage

The Transit electrical system is charged by one or two alternators. The vehicle electronics run on a 12V supply with a negative ground return. The factory fit equipment is designed for normal operations to be fully operational in the range 9-14V.

Voltage Check and Charging Procedure

WARNING: Do not connect to any ground or +12V potential points other than that specified in the Owner's Manual. There is a dedicated charge point under the hood. Failure to comply may lead to high current paths that may damage peripherals and electronic modules, especially in a Jump Start condition.

All voltages are to be measured with an accuracy of ±5% of values published, using calibrated meters. Measure the voltage by using the CCP1 or the battery plus terminal for positive connection and battery ground or battery minus terminal for negative connection.

1. Cold batteries will not readily accept a charge. Therefore, batteries should be allowed to warm up to at least 41ºF (5ºC) before charging. This may require four to eight hours at room temperature depending on the initial temperature and battery size.
2. A battery which has been completely discharged may be slow to accept a charge initially, and in some cases may not accept a charge at the normal charger setting. When batteries are in this condition, charging can be started by use of the dead battery switch or boost charge on chargers that have this facility.
3. To determine whether a battery is accepting a charge, follow the manufacturer's instructions for the charger, in order to use the discharged battery/boost charge mode.

Surface Charge Dissipation

Prior to carrying out manual voltage checks, it is necessary to establish that the battery does not have any damage, and the battery voltage is stable and free from surface charge which occurs after engine run.

To ensure surface charge is not present, measure the battery voltage after the vehicle has been standing with the ignition off and no loads active for a prolonged period of 24 hours. If this is not possible, an estimate can be made using the following method:

1. To dissipate whatever surface charge is present in the battery turn on the headlamps (main beam) for 5 seconds or turn on the parking lamps for 15 seconds if the head lamps will not turn on with the key in the off position.
2. Turn off the lights and allow the key off loads to reach their steady value. This typically takes 10-15 minutes.

Sensitivity and Voltage Tolerance

The Transit utilizes multiplexed vehicle electronics. It is recommended that the appropriate Ford proprietary accessory systems are used. Inappropriate or incorrect connection of additional equipment could cause mis-operation or damage to the vehicle, and so invalidate any warranty.

Stored and Delayed Vehicles

Vehicles held at the Vehicle Modifier premises and/or not in use for longer than 7 days, should have the battery's negative cable disconnected. Before shipping to the customer, the battery negative cable must be reconnected, and the voltage rechecked. A complete recharge is required for battery voltage below 12.3V for AGM or for no-crank vehicles by using an appropriate charger.

For additional information, refer to 1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage.

Transport Mode

After a new vehicle is built, some modules are set in "Transport Mode" which disables or alters various systems to reduce battery drain. The vehicle message center displays "Transport Mode Contact Dealer" while in this state. The vehicle will automatically progress to normal operation after it has been driven 125 miles (201km), or it can be manually advanced by the following procedure:

1. Start with a fully charged 12V battery and ignition in the OFF position.
2. Place the ignition in the ON position.
3. Press and release the brake pedal 5 times.
4. Press and release the hazard switch 2 times.

Note: Step 3 and 4 must be carried out within 10 seconds. The vehicle message center indicates "Normal Mode" when the process has been successfully completed. Once in Normal Mode, Transport Mode cannot be restored.

NOTE: To change from transport mode to normal mode '**temporarily**', keep the ignition at run, turn on and off hazard switch twice in 10 seconds.
The maximum duration of this temporary pause mode is 120 minutes.

NOTE: Vehicles should remain in 'Transport Mode' (where possible) during storage and prior to handover to customer.

The SBG, CCP2 and third party load-shedding system is 'always off' during Transport mode.

Power Disconnection

WARNING: Disconnection is required for welding work and work with airbags. Disconnect all the batteries, including ground and insulate the negative battery terminal(s).

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of 15 minutes must be maintained to ensure safety systems are fully deactivated.

Following battery disconnection, there is no need to reprogram the vehicle. It retains its normal power management settings and configurations. However, the central locking latches may cycle if one of these was opened manually in the intervening period. With regard to the radio, all of the settings are retained.

There is no longer a need to reprogram the electronic security code, as it is tied into the VIN of the factory fit Transit system. The clock initializes to 12:00 and will need to be reset to the correct time in accordance with the customer handbook procedure.

Ground Connections

NOTE: If there is a battery guard or an isolation relay, check settings to ensure batteries are connected to the charging circuit.

High electrical loads should also be grounded directly to the vehicle body and not the negative battery terminal. Connecting to the negative battery terminal will bypass the BMS and affect the correct assessment of the battery state of charge. Refer to BMS section in this manual.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

If separate charging systems are added, the ground side of the charger must also be connected to the body.

LV Battery Cable Fixing Torque

Battery cables should be fixed to the terminal post with a torque of 5.9 ft lb (8.0Nm) ± 0.89 ft lb (1.2Nm) for positive or negative battery post connection with/ without BMS. For additional information, see BMS later in this section.

LV Battery Safety

WARNINGS:

Take necessary safety precautions when handling batteries, for example: protective clothing, eye and hand protection.

Ensure batteries are charged in a designated charging area that is correctly ventilated.

Ensure that the battery box is correctly sealed including any additional cables routing in and out of the box. After conversion, always check that the drain tubes have not been dislodged.

Warning updated

When a battery guard is fitted and is monitoring a supply from twin AGM battery, it is recommended not being below 11.8V measured at the battery terminals at open circuit voltage.

LV Battery Type and Capacity

NOTE: If a Vehicle Modifier intends to add systems or accessories that will add load at key off or engine run, then twin batteries should be specified, in particular, AGM battery type. There are also alternator upgrades and other options that are needed for PTO requirements. Refer to the table 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations' in this section of the BEMM for your vehicle.

The base vehicle is equipped with either a single or twin battery system.

The vehicle has AGM battery as factory fit. Higher capacity batteries are available as standard production options and Special Vehicle Options offer AGM technology for heavy PTO and deep cycling applications. Before installing additional electrical equipment, check that the battery capacity, technology type, harness load capability and charging system output are suitable for the extra load.

Refer to 4.5.1 Power Connectivity and Usage Recommendations Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations table. The battery capacity, technology and charge available from the charging system must be adequate to ensure engine cranking in unfavorable climatic conditions, even after fitment of additional electrical equipment.

LV Battery Covers

WARNING: Ensure that the battery box lid, on vehicles fitted with H6 batteries or the battery cover and battery positive terminal

cover, be replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. If the battery lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process. See figure E278335 in the BMS later in this section of the BEMM.

LV Battery Drain Prevention

As part of the Vehicle Modifier process and to maximize battery life and prevent premature failure of the Ford batteries, protect and prevent battery discharge during any conversion or whilst the vehicle is in storage. This may include leaving the vehicle in Transport mode as long as possible, reducing the amount of crank cycling around the facility, door ajar events and duration. It is recommended to check voltage when receiving and before shipping. Recharge with an appropriate proprietary battery charger if the vehicle battery voltage is below 12.3V for AGM. Measure connected to the vehicle at ignition off and no loads active including interior or exterior lights in Off status.

LV Battery Rest Period

After reconnecting, the BMS requires at least 4 hours quiescent period to recalibrate to the correct battery state of charge, see also BMS information later in this section.

Usage of Electrical Loads During Conversion

If electric loads are used during conversion, for example multiple crank cycles or door ajar, check the battery voltage more frequently than every 7 days and recharge the battery if necessary.

For additional information, refer to 1.9 Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage.

Engine Off Loads

All loads that exceed 100mA continuous key off load require an isolation switch or disconnected relay. In general, all loads should have some form of isolation. A supplemental battery may be required to power systems, such as GPS vehicle tracking systems, that pull high key off loads continuously. This is to protect from discharging batteries at ignition off and interfering with the BMS correlation of battery state of charge. This supply should also have a dedicated protection fuse of the correct value.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

Jump Start-ICE

Do not Jump Start the vehicle directly from the battery. Use designated Jump Start points. Refer to the Owner's Manual. The wiper motor bracket must not be used as a ground as it is isolated from the body.

Customer Connection Points (CCP) and Other PTO Locations

Any peripherals added to the power supply must be either connected in one of the following ways:

- Up to 60A - across CCP1 and Camper 60A supply.
- Up to 175A - CCP2 with twin-batteries.
- Up to local fuse - Auxiliary Fuse Panel JZGAE).
- Up to alternator limit - direct from battery, when controlled using load-shed signal and Third party switch.

For loads greater than 175A (CCP2), up to 240A can be connected from the battery cable for short term use, less than 2 minutes.

Refer to 4.5 Battery Systems.

Auxiliary Electrical Systems

NOTE: When auxiliary electrical systems are to be added to the vehicle, it is mandatory that the additional circuit design includes the necessary fuses. The Auxiliary Fuse Panel is recommended.

When auxiliary electrical systems are added to the vehicle, it is recommended that the additional circuits are designed to be used with the Auxiliary Fuse Panel to maintain the integrity of the electrical system

Refer to 4.23 Fuses and Relays.

The materials and installation must meet the quality standards described in this section. Any additional equipment or components must be designed such that they have no adverse Electro Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) effect on the vehicle.

Third Party High Power Mode

Third Party High Power mode is a Ford function that is available to assist with third party electrical and mechanical PTO. This will allow power for longer at engine off and help sustain a higher voltage during engine run. This mode includes SRC Inhibit and engine off load-shedding timer override.

Cable Routing

Take special care with the routing of existing electrical harnesses within the vehicle, to avoid damage when fitting additional equipment. Also, see section concerning installation of equipment containing an electric motor.

Fitting Equipment Containing Inductive Loads

WARNING: When inductive loads, such as electric motors, are to be fitted consideration of inrush current is required.

CAUTION: The following must be observed:

- **All inductive loads must be driven via relays with contacts rated at least 3 times the maximum rated current of the motor.**
- **All inductive loads supply circuits must be individually fused with the proper fuse rating for the motor.**
- **All power wiring must be rated for at least 3 times the rating of the motor and installed as far away as possible from any existing vehicle wiring.**
- **All inductive loads fitted should be fully suppressed to European or applicable local legislation relating to EMC to ensure electrical interference does not affect the vehicle systems.**
- **Add EMC emissions statement to CE approval.**

Airbags

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of up to 15 minutes must be maintained. Work on airbag systems may only be performed by persons who have a relevant certificate of competence.

Pay attention to the following points:

- Disconnect all the batteries, including ground and insulate the negative battery terminal(s).
- Disconnect the electrical connector at the airbag control module.

Welding and Cutting

Increased use of comfort and safety electronics in modern motor vehicles also requires the greatest attention to be paid during body work. Over voltages produced during welding and in alignment work during body shell rectification may cause electronic systems to be damaged. In particular, the safety instructions for performing welding/cutting work on vehicles with airbag systems must be adhered to.

For additional information on welding, refer to 5.1 Body.

Pay attention to the following points:

- Disconnect the alternator multi-plug prior to using welding or cutting equipment.
- If welding or cutting is to be performed directly near a control module, it must be removed beforehand.
- Never connect the negative cable of the welder near an airbag or a control module.
- Connect the negative cable of the welder close to the location of the weld.

4.5.3 Battery Options

NOTE: If wrong batteries or incorrect configuration, SRC may not function correctly.

Any additional or different batteries must be checked for correct functionality on SRC vehicles.

For additional information, refer to

- 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls - ICE SRC
- 4.4 LV Charging System (12V)

Battery Type and Usage

Battery Part Number	Type	Quantity	Size
Single Battery - Deep Cycle AGM Battery Configuration B			
USZ1T-10655-AA	760 CCA (70Ah @ 20 hour rate) Absorbent Glass Mat Battery	1	H6
Twin Batteries - High Performance Deep Cycle AGM Battery Configuration C			
USZ1T-10655-AA	760 CCA (70Ah @ 20 hour rate) Absorbent Glass Mat Battery	2	H6

4.5.4 Battery Rules

NOTE: When modifying the battery pack it is recommended to also update the vehicle configuration.

NOTE: Charge balance calculations are required when adding additional systems, taking into account charging system capacity and battery capacity.

- Batteries in parallel must be of the same type and capacity and listed in the Ford battery table.
- Third party batteries and loads are to be isolated from the standard Ford system at key off or by a Ford or third party battery guard system.
- For external charging of batteries, ensure that the maximum voltage of 15.2V is not exceeded.
- Normal proprietary charging equipment should operate below this voltage.

Where twin batteries are required on vehicles with a single battery installation, associated wiring and hardware should be fitted and aligned to Ford architecture. The extra battery must be of the same technology and performance rating as the existing battery. Alternatively, battery systems can be upgraded to the High Performance Deep Cycle AGM batteries: twin (HTAAE) or single (HTAAB) system.

If the battery type on a vehicle is changed to other compatible derivatives (see battery configuration table), it is required to reconfigure the vehicle to the new battery types from the dealer.

For special conversions requiring a third party battery, a further disconnect strategy is required. This should be controlled via the engine run signal to a normally open relay. A schematic of this architecture can be found later in this section.

Refer to 4.4 LV Charging System (12V).

The load a battery could add to the vehicle when requiring a charge may exceed 60A. If third party loads are also connected, a relay or contactor, controlled by the load-shedding signal, must be used to isolate.

Important Factors for Battery Choice:

- Battery specification capability in ampere hours for continuously loading until empty. For example, an 80Ah fully charged battery can supply 4A over a 20 hour period at 68ºF (20ºC) until it is fully discharged . In order to preserve battery health, it is not recommended to let its capacity drop below 50%

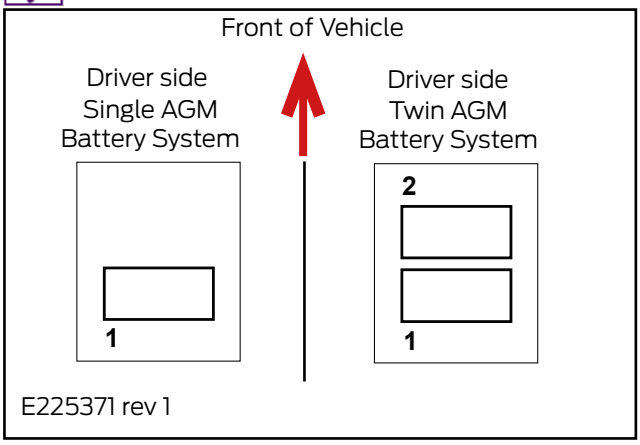
The Cold Crank Ampere (CCA) rating is the maximum rating for cold start requirements.

For deep cycling and micro cycling requirements (engine off loads) the deep cycle battery system is recommended. For high power (twin system) requirements at engine off use, use twin AGM.

Extra batteries added to the power supply should be connected as shown at the end of this section.

4.5.5 Battery Configurations

Illustration updated



Item	Description
1	Main Battery
2	Auxiliary Battery

Additional Loads and SRC

NOTE: The following battery configurations are NOT compatible with SRC.

SRC will operate within specification only if a correct battery configuration is installed in the vehicle. SRC system functionality cannot be guaranteed with the following configurations.

- Mixed sizes.
- Battery types other than those listed in the Battery Type and Usage table.
- Extra batteries than factory fit - for example: 3 or more, if not isolated from existing power supply at key off.
- If twin Ford battery configured, only fitting single Ford battery.
- If single Ford battery configured, fitting twin Ford battery.

It will not be possible to decommission the SRC feature due to homologation, vehicle tax and excise requirements.

If the battery type on a vehicle with SRC is changed to other compatible derivatives (see battery configuration table) it is required to reconfigure the vehicle to the new battery types at your local Ford dealer.

The feature content of the vehicle must still remain an SRC vehicle to be in line with the homologation, vehicle tax and excise requirements.

4.5.6 Convertor Fit Additional Third Party Batteries

WARNING: For any third party power connections needing greater than 60A when CCP2 is not used, all connections must be controlled via either the load-shedding signal. There must not be any exceptions to this conversion strategy, as the signal is to protect the Ford power supply from overload and voltage drop that can affect critical systems. It is not recommended to use the 60A CCP1, Camper, High Specification Interface Connector feed to supply a third party battery.

NOTE: It is the Vehicle Modifier's responsibility to ensure the power supply on the vehicle is adequate to supply both Ford and third party systems, especially if they can be active at the same time. System voltage at engine run must not fall below 13.0V whilst the vehicle is in motion and if Third Party High Power mode is active.

The assumption is that greater than 60A would be required for camper vehicles and any other conversions requiring an additional battery. Therefore, isolation should be provided by either the 175A Customer Connection Point (CCP2) or a third party relay or contactor controlled by the load-shedding signal. In all systems, there is engine off power protection, providing enough remaining energy for a future engine start. Suitable capacity in the wiring, fuses and energy sources must be calculated. The extra battery, when discharged, becomes a load that can be up to 100A, so adds to the energy requirement from the charging sources, along with the third party loads.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

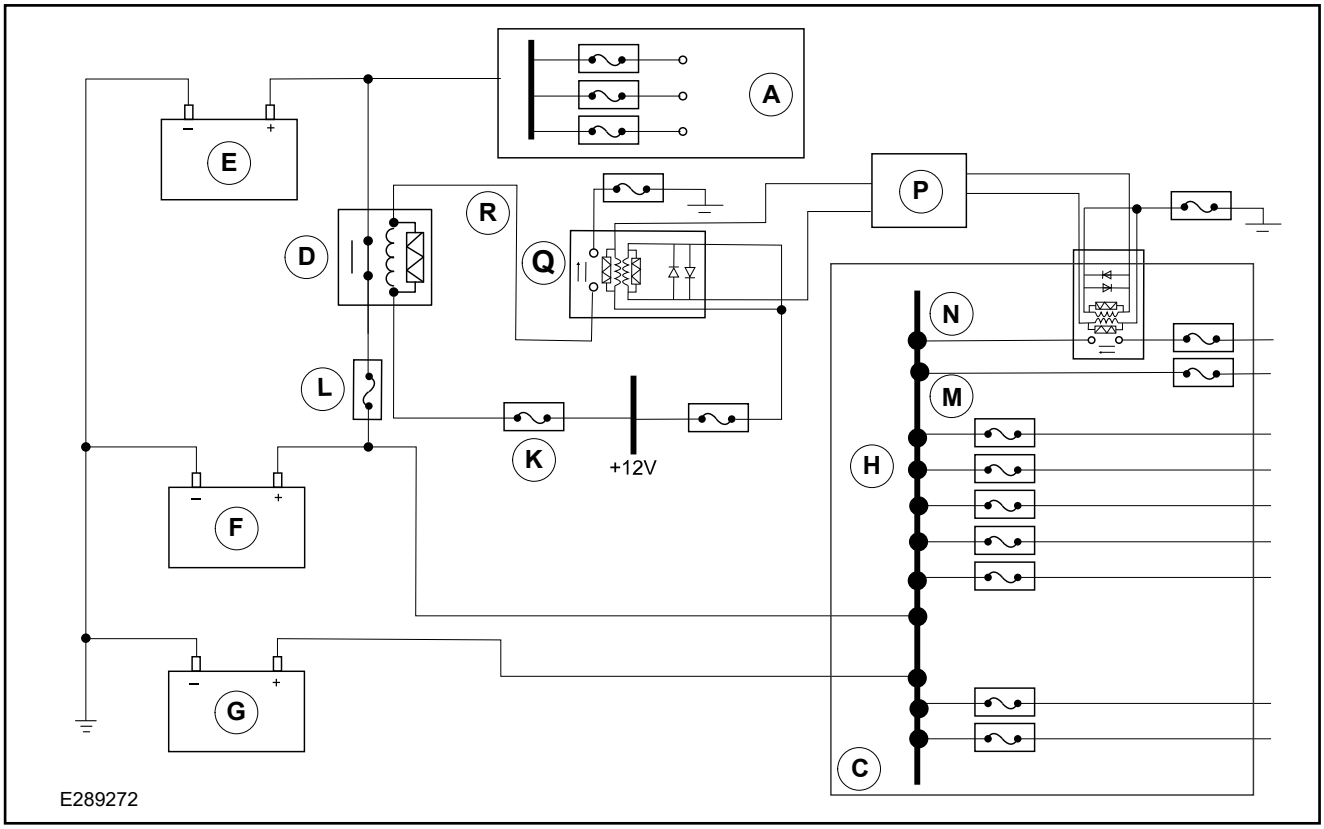
If additional batteries are added, these should be connected via a disconnect mechanism such as CCP2 or another battery guard controlled by the load-shedding signal. If the third party battery and added system requirements exceed 175A (CCP2) of current, connection to the battery positive 6mm stud is permissible only when integrated with the load-shedding signal. Refer to the 'Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A' in this section. For example of convertor fit third party battery installation to existing Ford power supply architecture. See figure E289272 in this section.

If supplemental chargers are to be used, they must be connected directly to the third party battery.

The charge can also be applied to the Ford fit batteries, all relays/switches connected, but only for an emergency charge.

Refer to 4.4 LV Charging System (12V) System Operation.

Convertor Fit Third Party Battery Installation



Example of installation to existing Ford Power Supply Architecture

Item	Description
A	Convertor Fit — Loads
C	Pre Fuse Box — Driver's Seat Pedestal
D	Convertor Fit — Normally open latched third party Battery Control Relay
E	Convertor Fit — third party Battery
F	Ford Fit — Auxiliary Battery[1]
G	Ford Fit — Vehicle Start Battery
H	Ford Fit — Loads (from Auxiliary Battery)
K	Convertor Fit — +12V Fused KL30 Supply
L	Convertor Fit Power Supply Fuse (For loads between 175-240A)
M	CCP1 - 60A standard
N	CCP2 - 175A relay and Mega fuse (with any Fuse Box option including JZGAE/Twin Batteries)
P	BCM
Q	Ford fit SBG and load-shedding control relay
R	Ford fit signal/grid, 10A switched ground, controlled by SBG and load-shedding control relay

[1] Must be ordered as an extra option

Convertor fit power supply fuse may not be required if CCPs are the correct value.

4.5.7 Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A

WARNINGS:

DO NOT connect the same load to both CCP1 and CCP2. The system is not designed to work together as the fuses have different values.

Ensure that the battery box lid/cover are replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. See figure E278335 Rev1 in the BMS later in this section of the BEMM. If the battery lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process after a conversion.

Third party +12V PTO connectivity should be made to the CCP, where possible. In the event a current requirement greater than 175A but less than 250A peak loading (maximum fuse value third party installed), connecting to the rear battery +12V clamp 6mm stud is permitted in conjunction with a disconnect relay controlled by the load-shedding signal. A twin battery system is recommended for this application.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

The following fusing principles must apply:

- For a long duration (greater than one hour continuous), the fuse must be no higher rating than the alternator fitted to the vehicle.
- For short term loads such as one minute peak loads, a 250A fused cable can be installed. Conversion examples: Crane, Tipper, Tail-Lift.

This is only allowed if testing by the Vehicle Modifier confirms that there are no issues (documentation must be held to confirm the tests) and the following criteria is met:

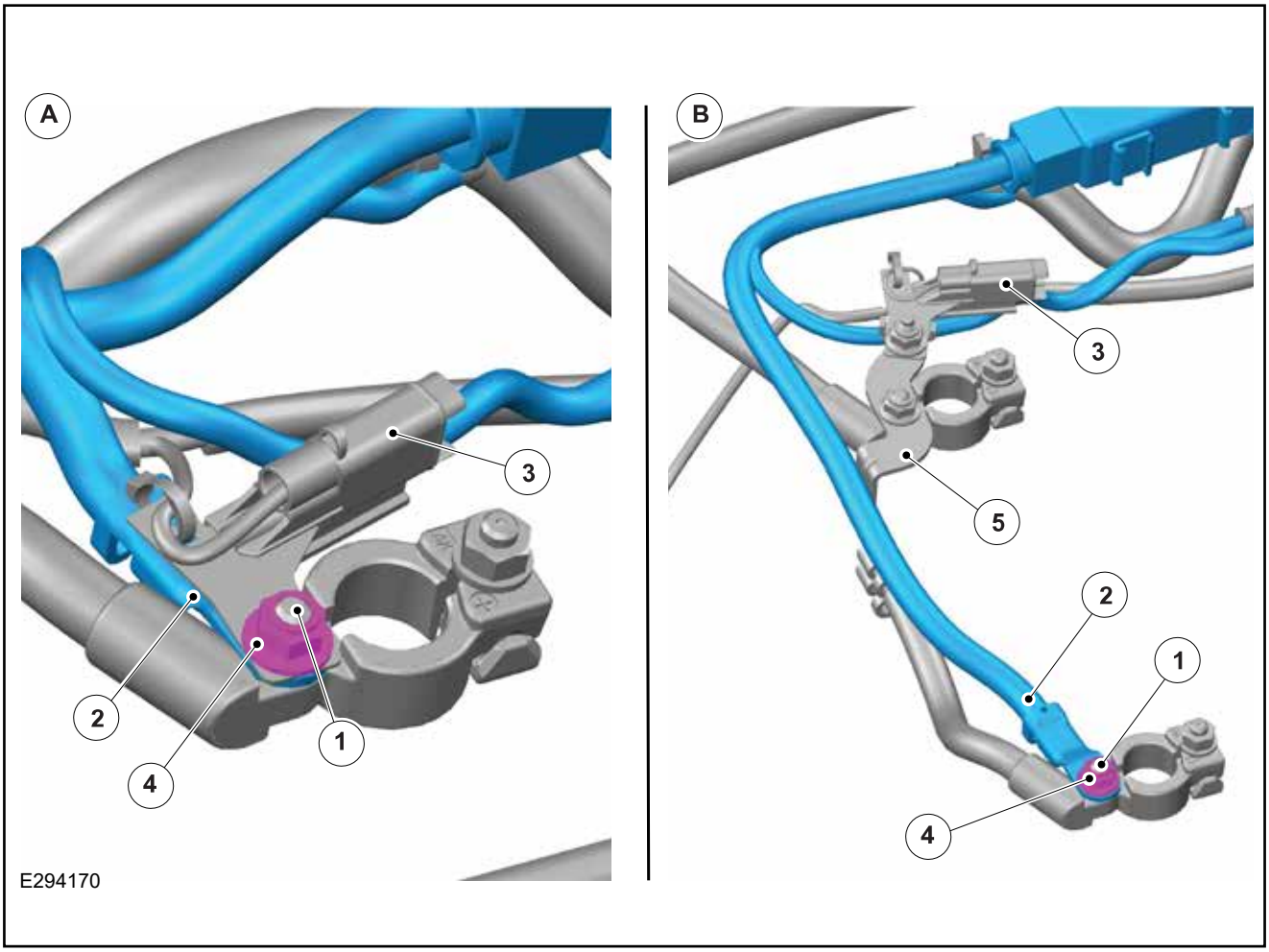
- No movement before full tightening of the nut (no risk of rotation). The third party eyelet must be a tight fit within the battery clamp slot and have a maximum Cross Sectional Area (CSA) for current flow.
- The cable CSA must be oversized.

Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides.

Wiring Specifications table. For example: 245A has 70mm² CSA cable

- The third party positive conductor is mounted directly to the battery clamp with the supply for the BMS last. See figure E278335 Rev1.
- No deformation to the Ford BMS can occur. The conductor terminal/eyelet may need to be inverted. See item 4 in figure E278335 Rev1.
- Only one termination (third party conductor) can be added to the 6mm stud in addition to the BMS.
- The Ford 6mm self-locking nut is to be re-used and torqued to 5.9 ft lb (8.0Nm) ± 0.89 ft lb (1.2Nm). Separate locking washers are prohibited.
- A Mega inline fuse must be fitted as close to the 6mm stud as possible. Not to exceed 250A for short duration applications such as on Tippers, Cranes or Tail Lifts.
- For long duration continuous power applications such as High Power Inverter, the Mega fuse must not exceed the rating of the alternator fitted to the vehicle. The alternator saturation voltage must be above 13.0V when testing full load. AGM battery twin system (HFQ) must be fitted to the derivative. See 'Single and Twin Battery System' and 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table in this section of the BEMM.
- A higher ampere alternator must be fitted if long duration (greater than one hour) high loads are required. See 'Single and Twin Battery System' and 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table in this section of the BEMM.
- The Third Party High Power mode feature must be used for Engine Run applications. Refer to 4.4 LV Charging System (12V).
- Efficient isolation of third party equipment, when not required, to minimize battery discharge/deep cycling. The load-shedding signal control offers this.
- Testing for end customer usage, including duty cycle, at a range of temperatures and drive cycles, worst case.
- Testing of the Vehicle Modifier's system must confirm no heating of Ford or third party cables or any junctions utilized unless thermal protection is incorporated.
- Testing of Vehicle Modifier's +12V conductor must demonstrate no loosening possible to Ford battery cable clamp.
- No detriment to Ford systems from voltage drop/inrush current by third party system (functionality or warnings).
- If engine off can still operate the third party system, then testing also required in this vehicle state.
- A charge balance must also be performed to confirm system has correct battery and alternator ratings.
- If idle loading can saturate the alternator (fully load and go below 13.0V) then Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC) system must be utilized to increase alternator output at idle.
- The return ground cable is recommended, routed in parallel to +12V supply for EMC compliance.
- When in Engine Run, systems that are not required should be turned off to help the alternator supply the main load of the third party system. This information should be passed on to the end user by the Vehicle Modifier.
- The BEMM is adhered to in all relevant areas. This document allows connectivity to Ford battery clamp if the above criteria is met.

Third Party +12V PTO Assembly



Item	Description
A	Single Battery Assembly
B	Twin Battery Assembly
1	+12V Battery Clamp 6mm Stud
2	Third Party Eyelet and Cable - Must be a tight fit to the battery clamp
3	BMS Fuse
4	Self-Locking Crimp Hexagonal Nut - Re-use and torque to 5.9 ft lb ± 0.89 ft lb
5	Twin Battery positive link cable with 6mm stud - LK4T-14300-D*

4.5.8 Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS)

WARNING: Ensure that the battery box lid/ covers are replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. See figure E278335 Rev1. If the battery box lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of a quality control process.

CAUTION: Do not permanently remove jumper cable from BMS.

NOTE: If the key off load only drops to the expected lower value after 30 minutes, it is probably because a feature is still active, controlled by the battery saver timer. This could be because any door is ajar or an interior lamp is switched on. Peripherals plugged into the power sockets will continue to drain power until the battery reaches a low level of charge.

The BMS continuously monitors the condition of the main battery (or twin batteries). To do this, it is bolted directly to the negative terminal of the battery. It is recommended that this is not removed. However, if removal is required, please refer to the Ford workshop manual, Ford dealer or customer services.

The BMS re-calibrates itself at regular intervals. This occurs during a rest period at key off, when the battery closed-circuit current is less than 100mA. The rest period must last for at least 4 hours.

It is recommended that the total Ampere consumption, in sleep mode, does not exceed 100mA. This is because BMS will not be able to accurately correlate the battery state of charge. Note there is approximately 15mA of key off load from existing

Ford fit systems, so the additional maximum is 85mA of convertor fit system. Any third party installations should ideally be activated via ignition or engine run. However, a sleep mode of 100mA is still high and will lead to deep discharge. Regardless of battery system, long periods of discharge may necessitate long periods of recharge. See 'Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendation' table at the end of this section.

After the Vehicle Modifier's system is installed, it is recommended to measure total key off load to battery with either a current shunt or with a clamp on ammeter calibrated and sensitive to milliampere's (mA). Perform this test after 10 minutes of key off with all doors shut so that the vehicle remains in sleep mode.

4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems

WARNING: Ensure that the battery box lid/ covers are replaced after any conversions to the battery positive terminal. If the battery lid/cover is missing or damaged, a replacement part must be ordered and fitted. It is recommended to check fitment as part of the quality control process.

Battery Cables and Components

A vehicle ordered with a single battery can be modified to twin batteries.

Wiring of Batteries in Parallel for High Current Applications

Review whether an upgrade to a single AGM Battery would be sufficient or alternatively, if a higher current is required, an additional battery can be added as shown in the proposed interface schematic. In this case the load-shedding signal is used to control relay 'D'. See figure E289272 'Convertor Fit Third Party Battery Installation' diagram to allow the third party battery to be charged when the engine is running.

Also, refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

Single to Twin Battery Conversion

Any additional or different batteries must be checked for correct functionality on and SRC vehicle, please refer to Battery Configuration, Additional Loads and Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC).

For additional information, refer to:

- 4.4 LV Charging System (12V)
- 4.10 Electronic Engine Controls - ICE.

If a requirement exists, it may be viable to order vehicles installed with a single battery, a battery disconnect relay and a kit of harnesses to be fitted by the installer. See following table for battery cables and components.

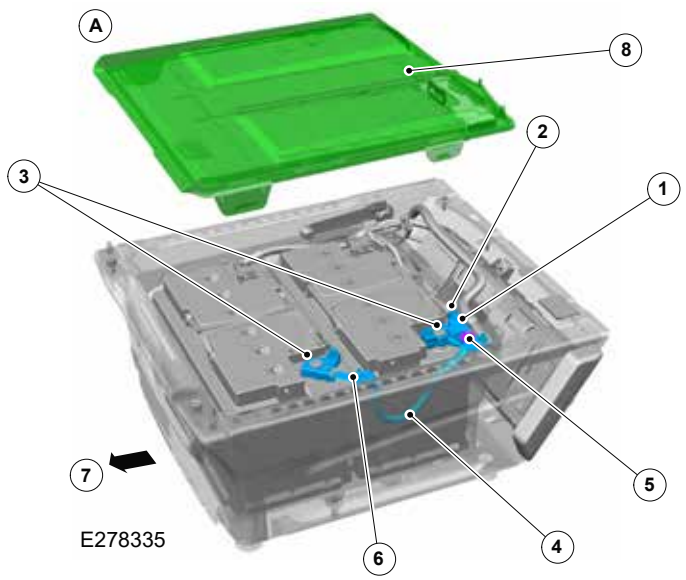
Battery Cables and Components

Vehicles ordered with a single H6 AGM battery can be converted to twin H6 AGM batteries. If using two batteries, both must be of the same type. The part numbers for the conversion are shown later in this section.

When changing the battery capacity or technology, the vehicle configuration must be updated after the new batteries have been installed. The vehicle needs to be connected to the Dealer Service Tool to reprogram the new batteries. Contact your National Sales Company representative or local Ford dealer with your vehicle VIN.

Failure to set the correct battery configuration may lead to incorrect SRC/SC functionality.

Battery Box Lid/Covers



Item	Description
A	Vehicles with H6 Batteries
1	Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS) KK3T-10C652-A*
2	Plug-in connection — Local Interconnect Network (LIN) and Battery Positive +12V (B+) Feed
3	Connection to Negative Terminal of Main Battery Post — See 'Battery Cable Fixing Torque'
4	Jumper Cable (SK4T-14301-AB*) only with twin batteries
5	1x M8 nuts. Do not loosen or remove
6	1x M6 nut. Do not loosen or remove
7	Front of vehicle direction
8	Battery Box Lid

Part numbers updated

Generic items when converting from Single AGM to Twin AGM Batteries

Part Number	Description	Quantity
SK4T-14301-AB*	Twin Battery Ground Jumper Cable with auxiliary ground stud	1
SK4T-14300-CD*	Twin Battery Positive Jumper Cable (no auxiliary positive stud)	1

4.5.10 Additional Loads and Charging Systems

NOTE: Do not make any additional connections to the Power Distribution Box (PDB) terminals, as over-torquing could cause damage to the PDB. Any electrical loads should be taken from the CCP. For applications that require a permanent installation to gain power for jump start requirements for example recovery vehicle conversion, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

4.6 Battery Protection

NOTE: If a third party battery guard is fitted, it must be connected to the load-shedding signal so that EPAS is protected in the event of an overload at engine run.

NOTE: For further information please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

4.6.1 Interior Lights and 12V Sockets

12V sockets and interior lighting are both controlled by timers and SOC control. Both reset at vehicle wake for example, door opening. These will switch off earlier if battery is low.

- 12V sockets - 30 minutes from key off
- Interior lighting - 10 minutes from key off (there are some options where the interior lighting has been extended to 30 minutes)

4.6.2 Standard Battery Guard (SBG) and Load-Shedding

WARNINGS:

When connecting a third party load, these installation instructions must be followed to avoid low system voltage during normal driving operation.

The load-shedding system must not be disabled or interfered with.

Vehicles with Single or Twin batteries must always fit battery guards if engine off power is required.

If a third party battery guard is fitted, it must be connected to the load-shedding signal so that EPAS is protected in the event of an overload at engine run.

NOTE: It is recommended to maintain the vehicle battery to a good level of charge to avoid load-shedding events.

Load-shedding is a system protection feature to stop excessive voltage drops at engine on. At engine off, this system helps stop excessive battery drain which could lead to a failed start. To protect the system from sudden voltage drops, it will, on rare occasions of extreme conditions, be necessary to disconnect high-current third party electrical loads. All third party electrical loads totaling over 60A must be connected under one or other method of load-shedding control. At engine-off, it helps prevent excessive battery discharge with an SBG.

To avoid the risk of there being load-shedding during engine run in a **stationary** electrical Power Take Off (PTO) requirement, two systems are recommended to be utilized:

1. **Third Party High Power Mode override feature**
   This will help maintain the highest voltage by forcing the charging system into conventional charge mode.
2. **Stationary Engine Idle Control (SEIC) feature**
   This can help increase current output of the charging system by increasing the engine idle. Charge balance system testing is expected of the third party system with any Ford system loads to ensure that the voltage does not go lower than 13.0V at engine run. If 11.0V is measured, this is the cut off point for load-shedding but here there would be serious problems with the system design of supply and demand.

4.6.3 Power Connections

This section explains where to connect third party electrical power connections, based on the power that will be drawn.

Ground connections are not controlled.
Refer to 4.22 Grounding.

Connections without SBG and Load Shedding

NOTE: Suitable for up to 60A total.

A total limit of 60A applies to all non-sheddable third party electrical loads added to the vehicle, across all locations including the following:

- Customer Connection Point 1 (CCP1)
- Camper connection (C Connector)
- The Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE)

Refer to 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections.

All higher current third party loads are to be regulated using Ford controlled load-shedding.

Optionally, third party loads below 60A can also be connected to the load-shedding control system to make use of the protection from battery drain that this may provide.

It is required to connect loads with over 100mA continuous drain to the load-shedding system.

Connections using SBG and Load Shedding

This provides some protection of the battery for parked vehicles, and some protection of system voltages when the vehicle is running.

Regulation by load-shedding is required where total added electrical load is over 60A. Regulation by load-shedding is also optional for connections totaling less than 60A.

Load-shedding for third party systems is to be installed using one of the following 2 methods:

1. **Using the provided third party isolation signal directly.**

- This is a switched ground system.
- The control wire can supply relay coil currents up to 10A total, for connected third party control relays.
- The control signal is routed to the following locations:
  - 12-way standard interface connector in the driver's seat pedestal (pin 4).
  - The Auxiliary Fuse Panel, cloned, 12-way standard interface connector (JZGAE) (pin4).
- The control signal is to be used with a third party relay when Customer Connection Point 2 (CCP2) cannot be utilized. This control is also recommended when connecting leisure batteries.
- Camper 6-way (pin 1).

2. Using Customer Connection Point 2

CCP2 is a high current load-shedding connection point to provide robust power availability whilst maintaining vehicle operation.

- Loads up to 175A may use CCP2.
- CCP2 is provided in any of the below options:
  - Twin battery/heavy-duty battery pack.
  - Aux Fuse Panel (JZGAE).
  - Refrigeration [FV].
  - Camper Donor vehicles.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality

WARNINGS:

Changing configurations may invalidate the vehicle warranty.

Using Third Party High Power mode may invalidate the vehicle warranty.

Ensure the Third Party High Power mode feature does not inadvertently remain active when the battery is being charged by the vehicle.

Use of the Third Party High Power mode feature to override the connection timeout will allow more energy to be discharged from the vehicle battery. Excessive energies cycled through the battery may invalidate battery warranty.

When designing automation of the Third Party High Power mode, avoid unintended consequences. If activated when the engine is running, use of Third Party High Power mode can also prevent AEIS, where applicable. Use of Third Party High Power mode can disable this safety feature and leave the engine running/vehicle ready to drive. Engines that run in confined spaces cause CO accumulation which can lead to CO poisoning and death. CO can seep into adjacent confined spaces. The AEIS inhibit can be configured off at a Ford dealer.

Standard Battery Guard - Vehicle -Off

Standard Battery Guard (SBG) operates when the vehicle is off. The purpose of the SBG is to protect the vehicle battery from being drained.

It disconnects the controlled third party circuits when the battery is low or after timeout has occurred. Timeout is up to 30 minutes for single-battery vehicles and up to 75mins for vehicles with twin AGM batteries. Twin AGM batteries have a lower SOC threshold and can offer for longer duration.
Refer to 4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems.

Normally the SBG is configured to reconnect at vehicle unlock. The circuits are then connected before the 'key crank'.

Camper vehicles do not reconnect at 'unlock'. Instead reconnection is delayed to about 3s after 'ignition on' to allow the vehicle to be cranked first. This is intended for vehicles with Gel batteries. With this configuration, the third party load-shedding circuits are disconnected as soon as both the key is out and the driver door is opened. Other non-Camper vehicles can be configured the same, by a Ford dealer.

The Third Party High Power Mode inhibits the timer, so the SBG monitors for low SOC only. The user must ensure the Third Party High Power Mode is not used during normal drive cycles except where required for third party equipment.
Refer to 4.4 LV Charging System (12V).

The SBG does not offer warning if an external charger is connected to the vehicle. It will not automatically connect all batteries if an external charger is applied.

Load Shedding - Vehicle -On

In rare situations of very high electrical demand, it is necessary that the system can act to prevent the voltage from becoming too low. Essential loads, including some 3rd-party loads, will never be shed. Loads totaling over 60A must be connected to the Load-Shedding function.

The ability to do Vehicle-On load-shedding is required in order to be able to prevent too low voltage during driving.

Short Term Disconnection - Contributing Factors

- Extreme environmental conditions
- High system electrical load at or already exceeding power supply capacity – including third party loads
- During short term high transient loads, such as inrush currents

If the system voltage drops very low, disconnection of the controlled third party loads may occur. This will be for a minimum of 4 seconds.

If load-shedding occurred, third party equipment may be reset and may re-initialize.

For Battery configuration, refer to 4.5.9 Single and Twin Battery Systems.

Driver Notification

Driver Notification Instrument Cluster Notification is provided to alert the driver that third party connections have been reset, and that this may indicate an overload condition has occurred.

A customer information message is displayed briefly on the Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC). The message is “Electrical Power Saver Active Features Turned Off”.

Where the warning occurs frequently, it is recommended to review the Power Supply requirements, and additional generating equipment may be required.

No message is given when power is restored. If CCP2 is fitted an audible click may be heard from the driver’s seat area.

Longer Term Disconnection

If the 12V SOC is very low when load-shedding occurred, the load-shedding will remain active until the 12V SOC has been raised significantly. This will take longer in cold conditions or with old batteries. This condition inhibits activation of Auto-Park-Assist.

4.7 Climate Control System

WARNING: Information provided in this section is for Vehicle Modifier's reference only. Any unauthorized modifications to the climate control system will result in malfunction of the system.

Do not use propylene glycol based coolant.

NOTE: The Transit Climate Control system utilizes shared components from other vehicles, which may have higher feature levels and systems. Therefore, in addition to pins that are not used generally, there are others that are not available and could impede function or cause damage if connected for external use.

- Never secure hoses or tubes to the transmission fill or dip stick or to any fuel system or brake component
- Do not route heater or refrigerant lines near or directly over any exhaust system component, including the exhaust manifolds
- Avoid routing of hoses in the wheelhouse or stone kick-up arch. If routing is required in these areas, shield against stone pecking as appropriate
- Do not route hoses near sharp edges. Utilize guards to protect against cutting or chafing

4.7.1 Front Climate Control System

C1 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	Ground
2	V_REF Return
3	V_REF 5V
4	SRC defeat
5	Autohold switch input
6	Autohold Function Indicator Output
7	Heated Backlite (HBL) Relay
8	Front Left Temp Door Feed 'A'
9	Front Left Temp Door Feed 'B'
10	Front Left Temp Door Feedback
11	Front Blower Relay
12	Max Defrost Input
13	Max Defrost Indicator status
14	Not used
15	Air quality Sensor
16	Front Recirc Door Feedback
17	MS1-CAN H
18	MS1-CAN L
19	Evaporator Temp Sensor Input
20	Front Mode Door # 1 Feed 'A'
21	Front Mode Door # 1 Feed 'B'
22	Front Mode Door # 1 Feedback
23	Front Blower Controller PWM Command
24	Front Recirc Door Feed 'A'
25	Front Recirc Door Feed 'B'
26	V_BATT

C2 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	V_BATT Left Heated Seat Element Supply
2	V_BATT Right Heated Seat Element Supply
3	Rear A/C demand
4	Left-Front Discharge Sensor #1
5	Left-Front Discharge Sensor #2
6	PTC PWM output
7	PTC1 relay driver output
8	PTC2 relay driver output
9	PTC3 relay driver output
10	Right-Front Discharge Sensor #1
11	Right-Front Discharge Sensor #2
12	Heated Windshield #2 Relay driver
13	Front Right Temp Door Feed 'A'
14	Front right Temp Door Feed 'B'
15	Right Heated Seat NTC Sense
16	Left Heated Seat Element
17	Right Heated Seat Element
18	Front Right Temp Door Feedback
19	Humidity Sensor Digital input
20	UART Particle Matter Sensor
21	Left Sunload Sensor Signal
22	Right Sunload Sensor Signal
23	Start/Stop Switch input
24	Start/Stop Switch indication
25	Front In-car Temp Sensor #2
26	Front In-Car Temp Sensor #3
27	In-Car Aspirator Sensor #1 or Motor Ground
28	Heated Windshield #1 Relay Driver
29	Front In-Car Temp Sensor Input #1
30	Left Heated Seat NTC Sense

PTC= Positive Temperature Coefficient, NTC= Negative Temperature Coefficient

4.7.2 Rear Climate Control System-ICE

C2 Climate Control System Pin-Outs

Pin	Description
1	PWM 1 PWM Signal Blower #1
2	Temp_StepC Temp Door 3
3	Temp_StepA Temp Door 1
4	Mode_StepC Mode Door 3 (FWD only)
5	Mode_StepA Mode Door 1 (FWD only)
6	Spare
7	Spare
8	KL31 Ground
9	Mode_Door_Power Mode Door Power Supply (switch KL30) (FWD only)
10	KL15 Ignition Signal (Key)
11	KL30 Battery Power Supply
12	Spare
13	Spare
14	PWM2 PWM Signal Blower #2 (RWD only)/PWM Temp Rotary Position (V362 PHEV only)
15	Temp_StepD Temp Door 4
16	Temp_StepB Temp Door 2
17	Mode_stepD Mode Door 4 (FWD only)
18	Mode_StepB Mode Door 2 (FWD only)
19	Spare (Ground)
20	Spare
21	Spare
22	Valeo_Diag Supplier Diagnostic Line
23	Temp_Door_Power Temp Door Power Supply (Switch KL30)
24	KL58 Backlight Illumination Power Supply
25	Spare
26	Spare

PTC= Positive Temperature Coefficient, NTC= Negative Temperature Coefficient

PWM = Pulse Width Modulation

4.8 Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC)

WARNING: Do not tamper with, cut into or connect to any of the CAN-Bus interface wiring or connectors.

Most of the functions are managed over the CAN-Bus interface.

Instrument Cluster

Connector Pin (C1)	Description	Wire Color	
2	Fuel Level Sensor Return	Green/Blue	-
3	Ground	Black/Violet	-
4	Switch - Transmission Park Detect	Green	-
8	12V Power	Gray/Red	-
10	Fuel Level Sensor	Yellow/Violet	-
11	Switch - Low Level Washer Fluid	Gray	-
12	CAN Bus High Speed -High	Green/Blue	Twisted pair
13	CAN Bus High Speed -Low	White/Green	

Any pins not listed in the table above are not to be used.

4.9 Horn

A dual horn may be fitted to the vehicle in place of the single horn.

Any other aftermarket horn (for example an air horn) will need to be driven by a separate relay energized by the horn circuit.

4.10 Electronic Engine Controls - ICE

CAUTION: Do not make any additional connections to the electrical circuits associated with the engine management system.

NOTE: It is not necessary to disconnect or remove engine management modules

4.10.1 Automatic Engine Idle Shutdown (AEIS)

WARNING: AEIS (where fitted)is a safety system designed to automatically shut off the engine after 30 minutes of operation to mitigate the accumulation of vehicle emissions such as "toxic carbon monoxide (CO)" in enclosed areas. This measure is essential to safeguard against vehicle emissions poisoning, which can have fatal consequences.

Using the Third Party High Power mode may inhibit AEIS or disable this safety feature. Avoid using the Third Party High Power mode that inhibits AEIS in confined spaces.

4.10.2 Vehicle Maximum Speed Setting

The Vehicle Speed Maximum Setting can be changed via the IDS menu under the following tabs: Toolbox, Powertrain, Service, Functions, PCM. The IDS on screen menus will guide the dealer through the options and setup.

4.10.3 Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) - New Section

Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) is a powertrain control module (PCM) strategy that provides elevated engine speed to drive auxiliary commercial equipment such as hydraulic pumps, generators, air compressors; or maintain vehicle battery charge under extreme electrical demands.

SEIC is standard on Transit for use with FEAD mounted PTOs.

It is located in the engine compartment, wrapped in convulate, taped to harness behind coolant reservoir.

The final stage manufacturer or upfitter is required to supply the customer interface equipment.

For SEIC operation and further information, refer to latest Transit Body Builder Layout Book at https://www.fordpro.cbbasom/en-us/upfit/bbas.

4.11 Information and Entertainment System

4.11.1 Audio Head Unit (AHU) - Multimedia in Car Entertainment (ICE) Pack Summary

The Multimedia System you have, as a standard fit, will depend on the market region, body style and model of the vehicle.

NOTE: Depending on the vehicle upgrade you are planning it is important to order the right level parts that include new Instrument Panel Harness, Instrument Panel Bezel and Hood.

NOTE: Pre Equipment Pack does not have wiring between the roof-mounted AM/FM antenna and the co-axial cable that connects to the AHU. If planning to retrofit an AHU you will need to order the Pre Equipment Pack.

AHU/Multimedia ICE Packs

AHU/ICE Pack	Description
1	Radio with SYNC, with DAB (GCC Markets only)
2	Radio with SYNC, without SDARS/HD
3	Radio incl. Navigation with SYNC, with SDARS/HD

4.11.2 SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with SDARS

NOTE: There is a black co-axial cable for the fender-mounted AM/FM antenna that goes to the AHU.

NOTE: SYNC Radio is present only when SYNC Module is available.

NOTE: There is a blue co-axial cable for global navigation satellite system (GNSS) antenna that connects to the back of the SYNC Module.

SYNC Radio is connected to the instrument panel wiring harness via two 32 pin connectors.

SYNC Radio Main Connector J1

Pin	Description	Type	Pin	Description	Type
1	Battery	Input	17	Not Used	
2	Right Front Speaker -	Output	18	Not Used	
3	Right Front Speaker +	Output	19	CAN-High	Input/ Output
4	Ground	Ground	20	Not Used	
5	Left Rear Speaker -	Output	21	Not Used	
6	Left Rear Speaker +	Output	22	Not Used	
7	Left Front Speaker -	Output	23	Not Used	
8	Left Front Speaker +	Output	24	Center Speaker -	Output
9	Right Rear Speaker -	Output	25	DRDL_RX -	Input
10	Right Rear Speaker +	Output	26	Not Used	
11	Not Used		27	External CD In Left -	Input
12	Not Used		28	External CD In Right -	Input
13	Center Speaker +	Output	29	Not Used	
14	DRDL_RX +	Input	30	CAN-Low	Input/ Output
15	Not Used		31	Not Used	
16	Not Used		32	Not Used	

SYNC Radio Main Connector J2

Pin	Description	Type	Pin	Description	Type
1	Not Used		17	Not Used	
2	Not Used		18	DRDL_TX +	Input/ Output
3	Not Used		19	Alert In +	Input
4	Not Used		20	Stereo In Left +	Input
5	Not Used		21	Stereo In Right +	Input
6	Not Used		22	Not Used	
7	Not Used		23	Not Used	
8	Not Used		24	Not Used	
9	Not Used		25	Not Used	
10	Not Used		26	Not Used	
11	Not Used		27	Not Used	
12	Not Used		28	Not Used	
13	Not Used		29	DRDL_TX -	Input/ Output
14	Not Used		30	Alert In -	Input
15	Not Used		31	Stereo In Left -	Input
16	Not Used		32	Stereo In Right -	Input

4.11.3 Additional Rear Speakers

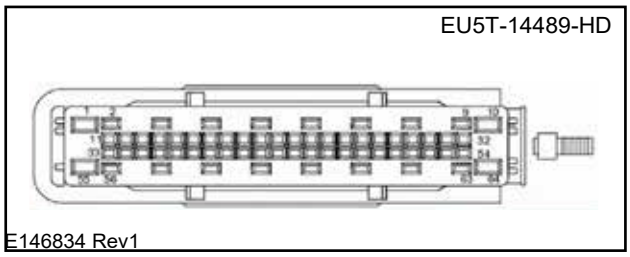
Rear speaker wiring is always present in the instrument panel harness 14401, but not necessarily in the harnesses 14A005 and 13A409/14A333 that then take the signals to the rear speaker locations.

When the rear speakers are not present at the body harness 14A005/IP harness 14401 in-line connector on low series variants the rear speakers may be spliced into the Audio Jumper Harness 14C007 at the rear of the Audio Head Unit, see next table for details.

Rear Speakers Spliced into the Audio Jumper Harness

Pin	Speaker	Wire Color
4	Right Rear (+)	Brown/White
9	Right Rear (-)	Brown/Blue
1	Left Rear (+)	White/Green
6	Left Rear (-)	Brown/Yellow

Rear Speakers In-line Connector (14A005/14401)



Item	Description
Pin 56	Rear Speaker Left + (White/Green)
Pin 57	Rear Speaker Left - (Brown/Yellow)
Pin 58	Rear Speaker Right + (Brown/White)
Pin 59	Rear Speaker Right - (Brown/Blue)

NOTE: For further details on Information and Entertainment System, parts and signals, please contact your National Sales Company representative, or local Ford dealer.

4.12 Exterior Lighting

WARNINGS:

Ensure that the modified vehicle complies with all relevant legal requirements.

Do not tamper with the base system (controlled by Body Control Module and multiplex architecture) and any feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.

Due to significant wiring and control/ configuration differences between headlamp types, it is not possible to retrofit Bi-Xenon HID (High Intensity Discharge) or LED DRL (Daylight Running Lights) headlamps to vehicles not originally built with them. If Bi-Xenon HID or LED DRL headlamps are required, then these must be specified at time of ordering for factory fitment.

4.12.1 Reversing Lamps

Reversing lamps are activated by a high side driver in the Body Control Module (BCM). Accessories that add additional load, such as back up sounders, connected to the reverse lamp circuit, should be connected by a relay. Connecting such loads directly to the reverse lamp circuit could damage the BCM.

The load on the reversing lamps should not exceed a total of 3A (42W), 250mA for a relay.

4.12.2 Lamps – Front Fog Lamps

National Regulations regarding inter-connection of front fog lamps with other lamps must be checked before designing the wiring circuit. The maximum permissible load with the standard system is:

- Front fog lamp - 2 x 35W (High side driver controlled).

4.12.3 Lighting Loads

The BCM exterior lighting outputs have shutdown protection in the event of an overload condition. If the overload condition is not addressed, the output will be shutdown permanently to protect the driver hardware. A dealer visit and/or BCM replacement may be required if overload condition is not removed.

For Lighting Loads see 'BCM Output Information' table. Refer to 4.3 Communications Network.

4.12.4 Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication

NOTE: If LED indicators are used on the rear of a Camper and Ford Cutaway conversion, the wattage needs to simulate the 21W expected by the bulb outage detection circuit. If LED indicators are supplemental to existing system, then the load resistor may not be required. When adding extra lamps, Vehicle Modifier must check they comply with the legal requirements and that functionality is maintained.

The standard system configuration each side:

- 1 x Front Indicator 27W + 5W Side Repeater - max total front turn load 40W each side.
- 1 x Rear Turn Indicator 27W - max load 40W.
- For chassis cabs the standard combined stop turn lamps can be replaced by separate stop and turn circuits with LED lamps.

4.12.5 Lamps for Wide Vehicles

Lamps - End Outline and Side Marker Lamps

The maximum permissible load with the standard system is:

- 6 x 0.5W - Side Marker
- 2 x 0.5W - End Outline Marker
- 2 x 4W - Roof Marker

Side Markers, End Outline Markers and Roof Markers are connected to the License Plate circuit.

When fitting additional Markers it is recommended to use LED lamps. Total Max load - 60W.

Parking Lights

Two side parking lights (including license plate and marker lights) are available when the headlamp switch is set to POS.

When fitting additional markers it is recommended to use LEDs.

Parking lamps may switch off if left on for so long that the battery level becomes too low.

4.12.6 Electrically Operated Door Mirrors

WARNING: Do not tamper with the base system (controlled by smart switches) and any feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.

NOTE: These options are not suitable for aftermarket or convertor fit.

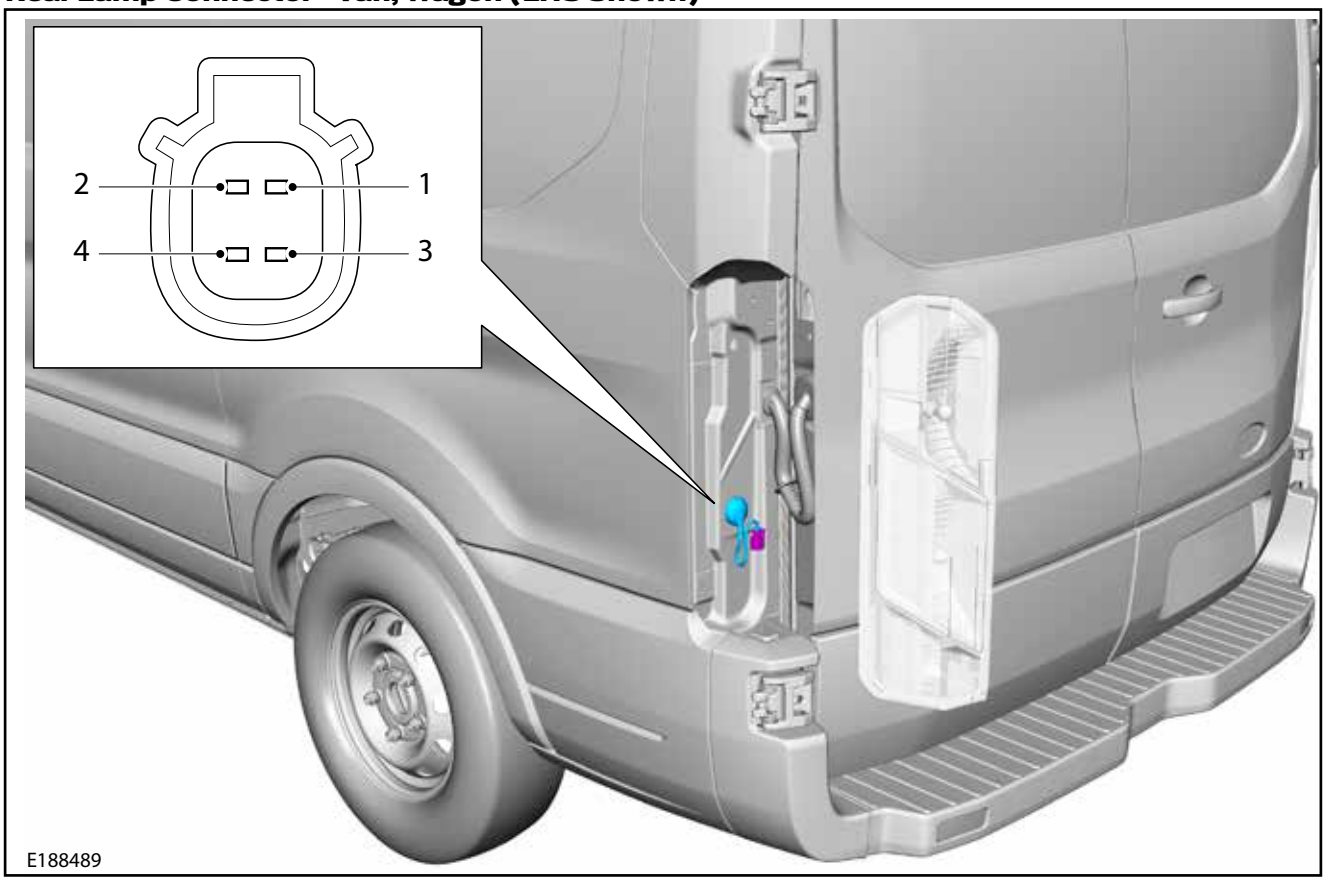
4.12.7 Power for Additional External Lamps

All power for additional exterior lamps must be taken through the Auxiliary Fuse Panel with a suitable switch and/or relay as required.

For additional information, refer to:

- 4.23 Fuses and Relays
- 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections

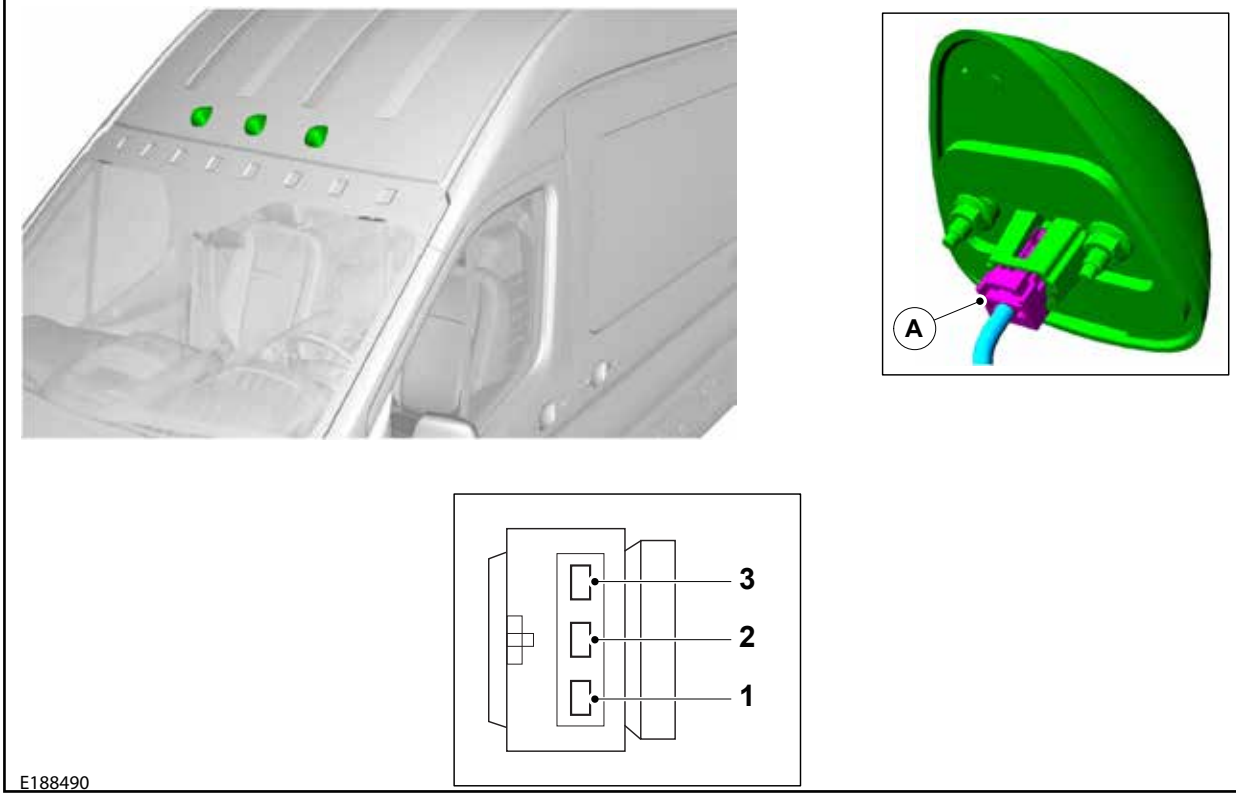
Rear Lamp Connector - Van, Wagon (LHS Shown)



Rear Lamp Connectors - Van, Bus, Crew Van (not CCAB or Cutaway)			
Lamp Assembly Tail Right		**Lamp Assembly Tail Left**	
Pin 1	Ground - Pillar D Right 2nd Point	Pin 1	Ground - Pillar D Left
Pin 2	Park Rear Right	Pin 2	Park Rear Left
Pin 3	Stop/Turn Right Outboard	Pin 3	Stop/Turn Left Outboard
Pin 4	Reverse Left or Common	Pin 4	Reverse Left or Common

SRW - Single Rear Wheel, DRW - Dual Rear Wheel

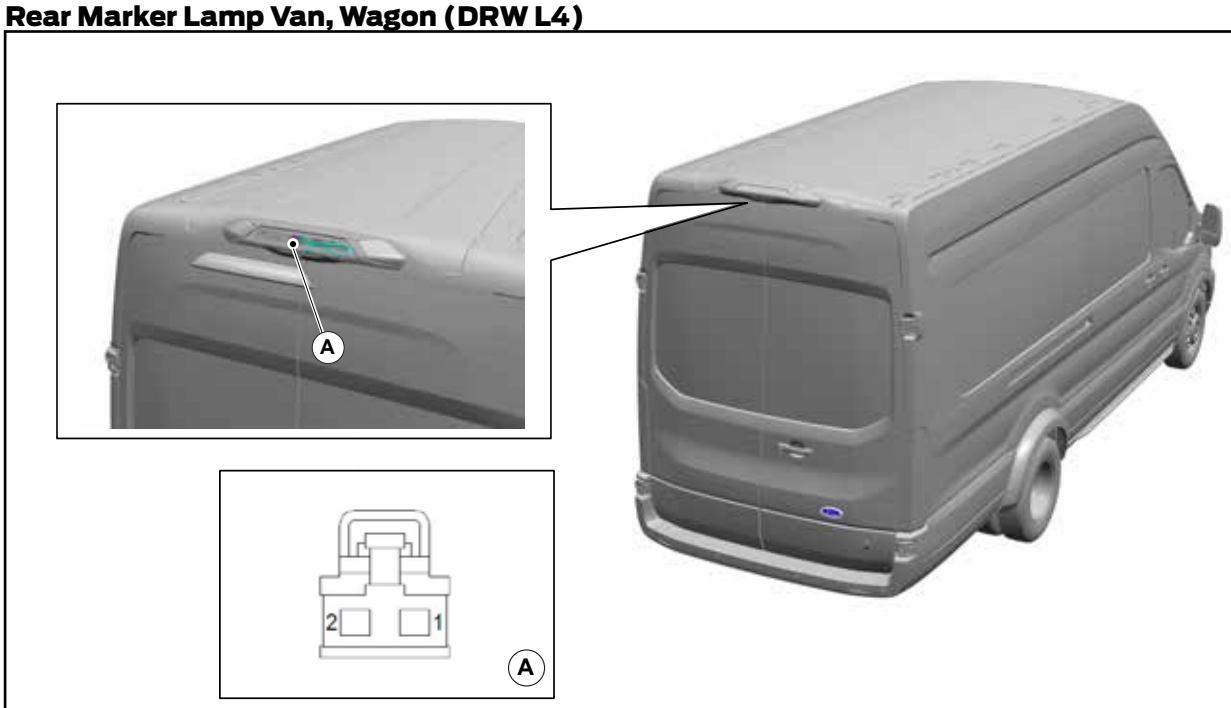
Rear Lamp Connector - Van, Wagon (LHS Shown)



Front Roof Marker Lamps Van, Wagon (DRW) Connector	
Pin 1	License Plate Lamps/Marker Lamps
Pin 2	-
Pin 3	Ground - Pillar D Right/Left

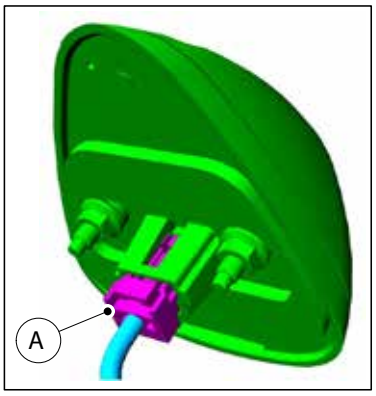
Illustration updated

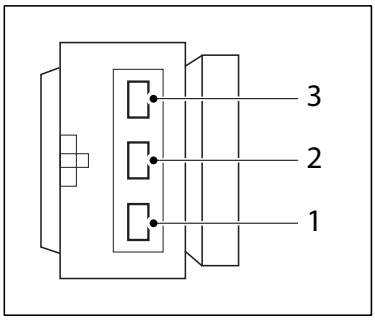
Rear Marker Lamp Van, Wagon (DRW L4)



Item	Description
A	Rear Roof Marker Lamp Connector

Front Roof Marker Lamps - Chassis Cab/Cutaway

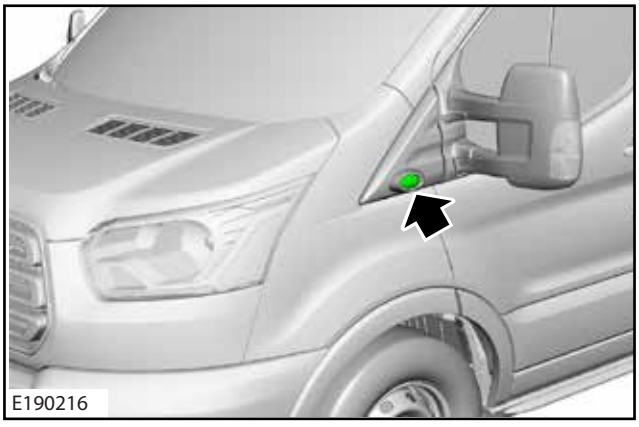




E188491

Front Roof Marker Lamps Van, Wagon Connector	
Pin 1	License Plate Lamps/Marker Lamps
Pin 2	-
Pin 3	Ground - Pillar D Right/Left

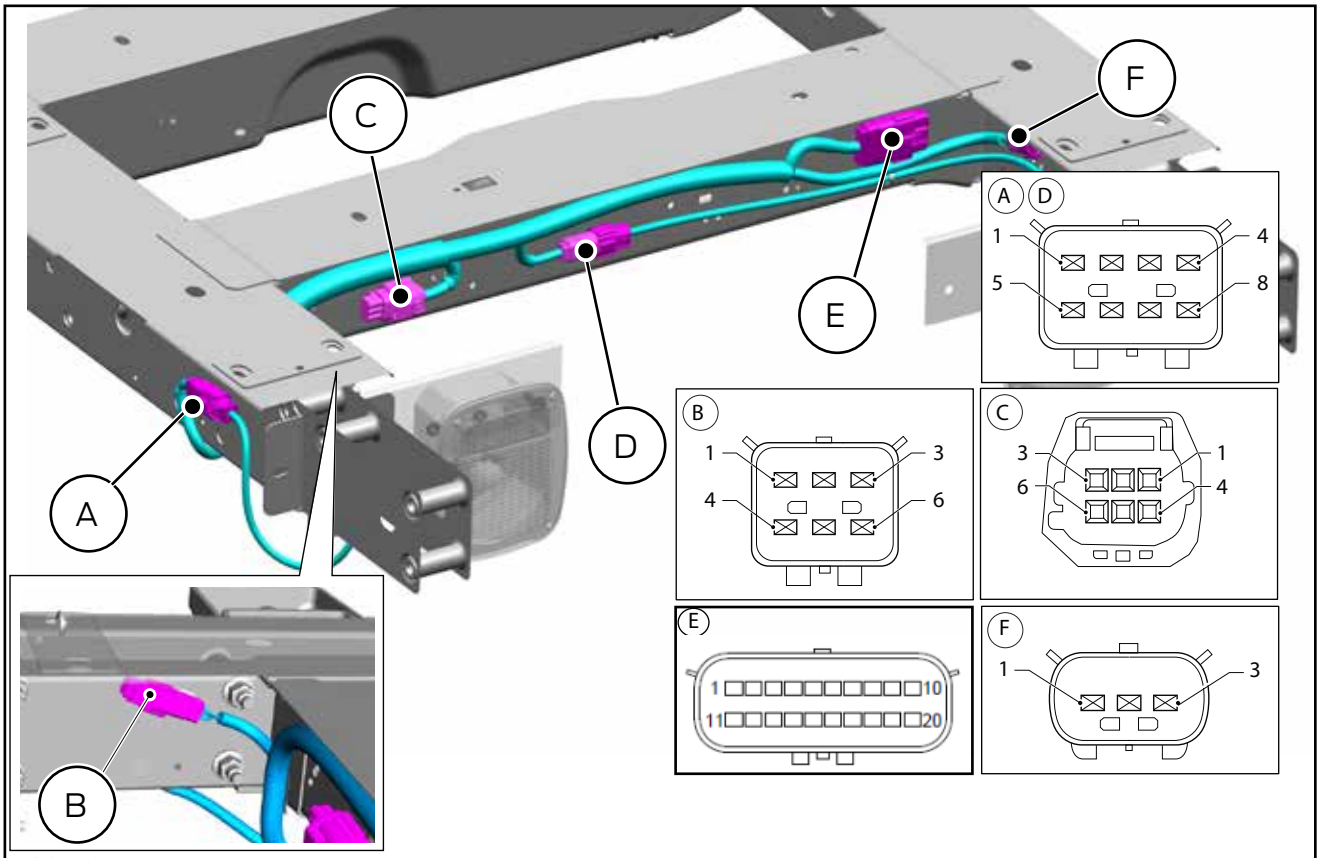
Side Clearance Lamp (on jumper harness) - DRW vehicles only



E190216

Illustration updated

Rear Lamps - Chassis Cab/Cutaway (LHS Shown)

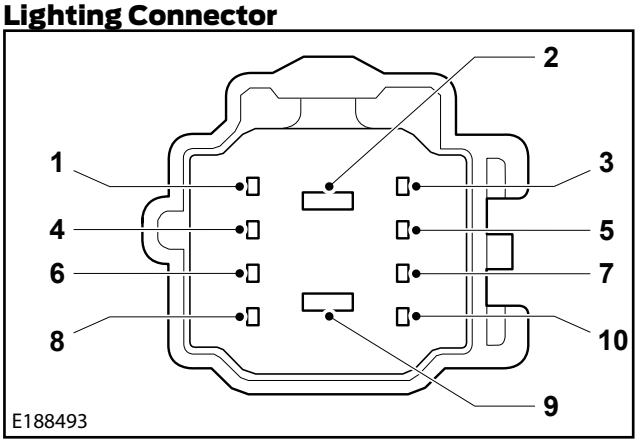


E296795 rev1

Rear Lamps - Chassis Cab / Cutaway (LHS shown)			
A	**Rear Lamp Connector - Left**	**D**	**Rear Lamp Connector - Right**
Pin 1	Stop/turn left outboard	Pin 1	Stop/turn right outboard
Pin 2	Stop	Pin 2	Stop
Pin 3	Position	Pin 3	Turn
Pin 5	Park lamp rear left	Pin 5	Park lamp rear right
Pin 6	Backup	Pin 6	Backup
Pin 7	-	Pin 8	Ground
Pin 8	Ground		
B	**License Plate Lamp Connector (5W7T-14A624-E*)**	**E**	**BLIS/Rear Park Aid Inline Connector (Available if DAT PACK 15 ordered)**
Pins 1+4	License plate lamp	**F**	**High Mount Stop Lamp Connector (7T4T-14A624-A*)**
Pin 2	-	Pin 1	Stop Lamp High Mount
Pins 3+6	Ground	Pin 2	-
C	**Trailer Tow Socket Connector**	Pin 3	Ground
Pin 1	Stop/turn lamp left		
Pin 2	Stop/turn lamp right		
Pin 3	Park lamps		
Pin 4	Backup lamps		
Pin 5	Power ignition on		
Pin 6	Brakes		

Additional Parking Marker/License Lamps at the Rear of the Vehicle

Lighting Connector



Item	Description
Pin 8	Parking Marker/License Lamps

The feed for position lamps can be taken from the right back door inline connector, at the rear right hand side of the vehicle on 13A409 harness, pin 8 (yellow/violet). See figure E188493 or, direct from the license plate feed connector, see figure E296795. The maximum load is 15W per side.

NOTE: Lighting connector shown in E188493 will require a local ground.

The position and parking functions operate independently.

Where applicable, when the position lamps are extinguished, the end-outline markers turn off simultaneously, in line with International Regulations No 48, which states the following:

The electrical connections must be such that the front and rear position lamps, the end-outline marker lamps (if they exist), the side-marker lamps (if they exist) and the rear license plate lamp can only be switched on and off simultaneously.

Connecting to Lighting Information

Additional Front Turn Lamps can be fitted using a relay - maximum total load 40W each side.

On Vans and Buses, combined Stop/Turn lamps are standard. Additional combined Stop/Turn lamps can be fitted up to a maximum load of 40W for each side.

On Chassis Cab/Cutaways, separate Turn Lamps can be connected. Maximum load is 40W for each side.

Additional lamps connected directly should be LEDs or should be powered by a relay.

4.13 Interior Lighting

Content updated

4.13.1 Additional Internal Lamps

CAUTION: No incremental loads can be added to lighting circuits. Any connections exceeding 300mA to the lighting circuit, use a suitable switch and/or relay as required.

Additional cabin interior lighting may be obtained by directly accessing the connector inside the dome lamp in the cabin.

For additional information on BCM, refer to 4.3 Communications Network.

Battery saver system provides power for the interior lighting for a limited time.

Power Supply for the Interior Lights.

BCM provides power to the interior lights by two courtesy outputs:

- Cabin light courtesy function - BCM pin C3-2 with
- maximum load of 5A.
- Cargo light courtesy function - BCM pin C3-12 with maximum load of 5A.

Each interior light circuit is grounded locally to the lamp. Lamps fitted to cabin or cargo circuit depend on vehicle type. To determine the lamps on the rear or cargo circuit:

- Set any lights with a switch to courtesy.
- Close all doors and allow lights to switch off.
- Open door or lift gate at rear of the vehicle.
- Any interior lights that switch on are in the rear cargo or rear zone. If all lights switch on then all lights are in the same zone.
- Some vehicle types may have no lamps on the rear circuit

If fluorescent lighting is required it must not be connected to existing interior cabin or cargo lighting as it is not compatible with the pulse width modulated (PWM) lighting circuit and may cause premature failure of the fluorescent lighting. If fluorescent lighting is required, it should be connected to the Auxiliary Fuse Panel.

4.13.2 Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Interior

Where higher wattage installations are required, these should be taken through the Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) and Auxiliary Fuse Panel with a suitable switch and/or relay as required.

For additional information, refer to 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections.

4.14 Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna

Content updated

NOTE: Reception testing or loss of performance due to poor conversion/re-installation are not the responsibility of Ford Motor Company.

Air deflectors above the roof (Vehicle Modifier must ensure that the part is non-metallic):

- Cooling unit mounted at front of box structure (minimum clearance of 100mm to antenna, max. dimensions from the box to the front of the vehicle: width: 1300mm, depth: 500mm).
- Other non-metallic structures above the roof.
- Discontinuous metallic structures above the roof (e.g. ladders).

Conversions where antenna needs a relocation:

- Cabin above the roof containing metallic components.
- Other continuous metallic structures above the antenna that are bigger and nearer to the antenna as a cooling unit (e.g. deflectors).

If the conversion requires the antenna to be relocated, it is recommended that the existing antenna should be disconnected and left in place for waterproofing. The disconnected fly-lead must be parked to avoid squeak and rattle issues. Alternatively, the roof hole of the old antenna position must be sealed to be waterproof by the Vehicle Modifier.

NOTE: The antenna is provided with a seal that fits to the roof surface, but it is the responsibility of the Vehicle Modifier to ensure an adequate waterproof seal is achieved.

If it is unavoidable and necessary to fit an antenna, the following instructions are recommended:

- The antenna must be mounted on sheet metal (ground surface/plane). The antenna includes two functions:
  - **GNSS** required for vehicle location, which is dependent on receiving satellite signals from overhead.
  - **Cellular** required for 'phone' communication, which is dependent on a clear line of sight from ground towers, for example, 'horizontal' transmission path. Hence, a repositioned antenna needs to take these requirements into account and should be positioned on the highest possible packaging location, avoiding depressions wherever possible.
- Provide a minimum clearance of 50mm from all electronic (powered) devices and any wiring harness not related to the antenna.
- When mounting the antenna, place it on sheet metal at the highest possible metallic packaging location.
- The ground surface does not require any further grounding to the vehicle, it provides a reflective surface rather than acting as a grounding element.
- Suitable fixings and sealing are required to secure the ground plane to the roof panel, for example, 4x rivets.
- The mounting on the antenna will accommodate sheet metal thicknesses from 0.7mm to 1.5mm.
- The antenna family requires a **minimum** of a 150mm radius uninterrupted metallic ground surface area surrounding the mounting hole. No interruptions are allowed.
- The antenna must have a **minimum** clearance of 250mm from any other antenna located on the vehicle roof and from any metallic structures above the ground plane (if present).
- The antenna must be as close to horizontal as possible, <20º to horizon.
- The antenna is attached to the ground surface with a driven fastener from the underside of the plane. The fastener is a captured component on the antenna base (10.5 +/- 1.6 Nm torque).

4.14.1 Bull Shark Fin Antenna -

New Section

A new antenna should be used for the alternative location, due to design intent for a single crimp fitment. The following parts listed are designed to fix to a flat roof design and fulfills the requirements of the vehicle's infotainment system.

Bull Shark Fin Antenna Type	Part Number
5G1/5G2/5G3/5G4/ GNSS L1-L5/SDARS	PCPT-19K351-DB
5G1/5G2/5G3/5G4/ GNSS L1-L5	PCPT-19K351-EC

Mounting Curvature of Bull Shark Fin Antenna

Fore-Aft (vehicle direction) mounting curvature of an antenna with an overall length of 230mm, on roof needs to be nominal 9861mm with a minimum radius of 6763mm, up to 18200mm.

Cross Car mounting curvature for an antenna width of 100mm on the roof needs to be nominal 7000mm with a minimum radius of 2664mm, up to flat mm.

A range of reception tests will need to be conducted outside of a building by the Vehicle Modifier to ensure system performance.

GNSS (free space):

- Check if a DTC is set for a non-connected antenna.
- For vehicles with navigation system, search for a route in the onboard navigation system to

verify GNSS connection in a reasonable time.

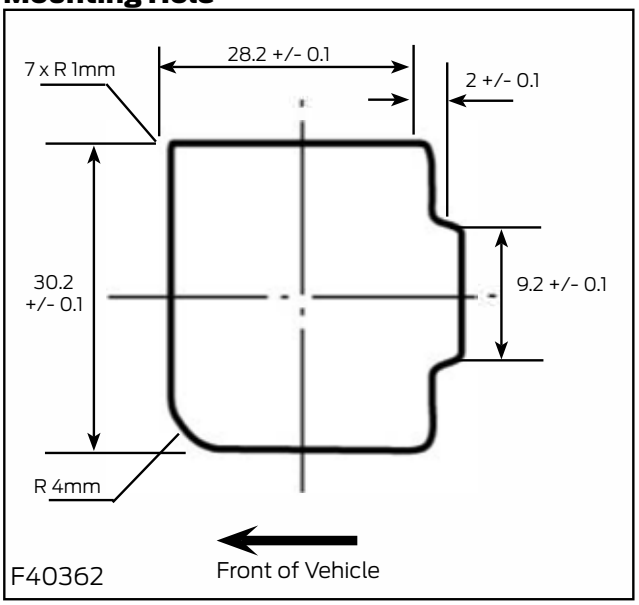
– For vehicles without navigation system, disconnect battery, re-connect it and check if time is set correctly.

Cellular:

– Check if a DTC is set for a non-connected antenna.

The antenna base design/mounting requires a specific hole shape to ensure anti-rotation and orientation. The position on the roof shown in F40362 and is exemplary only.

Bull Shark Fin Antenna Anti-Rotation Mounting Hole



*Measurements shown in F40362 are in mm.

Cable Extension (to be prepared by the Vehicle Modifier)

The overall cable run from the Connected component (Audio Head Unit/SYNC module/Telematics Control Unit) to the antenna must not be longer than 8m for GNSS connections and 6m for cellular connections. For GNSS connections RTK031 cables and for Cellular connections RTK044 cables must be used.

Vehicle Condition Before Conversion Cutaway

Cable Length from TCU to A Pillar Connection	
SDARS	**GNSS/Cellular**
2040 mm	765 mm

Cable Length from A Pillar Connection to Antenna	
GNSS/Cellular/SDARS	
Low Roof	1580 mm + 30 mm
Medium Roof	2640 mm + 30 mm
High Roof	2845 mm + 30 mm

Extensions must utilize materials and direction from the diagram and the table below:

Part Number	Rosenberger No	Function	Single/ Dual/ Quad	Color	Key code	Connected/ Placeholder
Bull Shark Fin Antenna Side Connection:						
With SDARS						
NU5T-19C041-EA	AMZ040-C00-E	Cellular/GNSS/ SDARS	Quad	Green	E	Connected
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3 x Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
Without SDARS						
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3X Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
PU5T-19C041-EA	AMZ032-C00-E	GNSS/Cellular	Dual	Blue	C	Connected
A Pillar Harness Connection:						
With SDARS						
NU5T-19C041-EA	AMZ040-C00-E	Cellular/GNSS/ SDARS	Quad	Green	E	Connected
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3 x Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
Without SDARS						
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	3X Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
PU5T-19C041-EA	AMZ032-C00-E	GNSS/Cellular	Dual	Blue	C	Connected

4.14.2 Split Antenna - New Section

The following parts listed are designed to fix to a flat roof design and fulfills the requirements of the vehicle's infotainment system.

Split Antenna Type	Part Number
5G2/5G4/GNSS L1+L5 Split Roof Ridge Right	PCPT-18D878-BF
SDARS/5G1/5G3 Split Roof Ridge Left	PCPT-18D879-GD

Mounting Curvature of Split Antenna

Fore-Aft (vehicle direction) mounting curvature of the antenna on roof needs a minimum radius of 1900mm in the front and 1100mm in the rear, with a maximum up to 3300mm.

Cross Car mounting curvature for the antenna on the roof needs to be a minimum radius of 5700mm, up to 6200mm.

The split antenna base design/mounting requires two specific hole shapes to ensure anti-rotation and orientation. The positions of the antennas on the roof shown in F40363 and are exemplary only.

Cable Extension (to be prepared by the Vehicle Modifier)

The overall cable run from the Connected component (Audio Head Unit/SYNC module/Telematics Control Unit) to the antenna must not be longer than 8m for GNSS connections and 6m for cellular connections. For GNSS connections RTK031 cables and for Cellular connections RTK044 cables must be used.

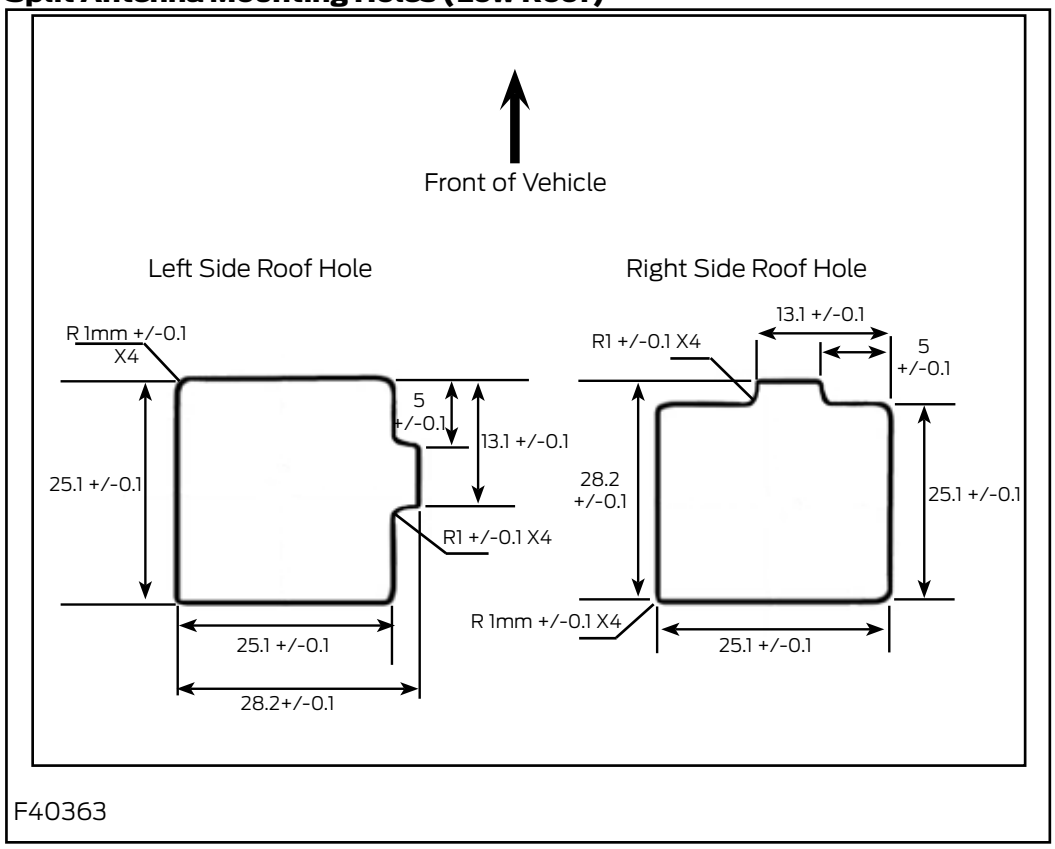
Vehicle Condition Before Conversion Cutaway

Cable Length from TCU to A Pillar Connection	
SDARS	**GNSS/Cellular**
2015 mm	1960 mm

Cable Length from A Pillar Connection to Antenna
GNSS/Cellular/SDARS
1150 mm

Extensions must utilize materials and direction from the diagram and the table below:

Split Antenna Mounting Holes (Low Roof)



F40363

*Measurements shown in F40363 are in mm.

Part Number	Rosenberger No	Function	Single/ Dual/ Quad	Color	Key code	Connected/ Placeholder
Split Antenna Connection:						
With SDARS						
PU5T-19C042-CA	AMZW17-000-K	SDARS	Single	Curry	K	Connected
NU5T-19C042-GA	AMZ005-000-D	2 x Cellular	Quad	Violet	D	Connected
Without SDARS						
MU5T-19C042-CAA	AMZ005-000-E	GNSS/2xCellular	Quad	Green	E	Connected
A Pillar Inline Harness Connection:						
With SDARS+GSM1+GSM4 (Left Hand Side)						
PU5T-19C041-BA	AMZ010-C00-D	SDARS	Single	Bordeaux	D	Connected
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	2 x Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
Without SDARS+GSM1+GSM4 (Left Hand Side)						
NU5T-19C041-DA	AMZ040-C00-D	GNSS/2 x Cellular	Quad	Bordeaux	D	Connected
GSM2+GSM3+GNSS (Right Hand Side)						
NU5T-19C041-EA	AMZ040-C00-E	GNSS/2 x Cellular	Quad	Green	E	Connected

4.15 Adaptive Cruise Control

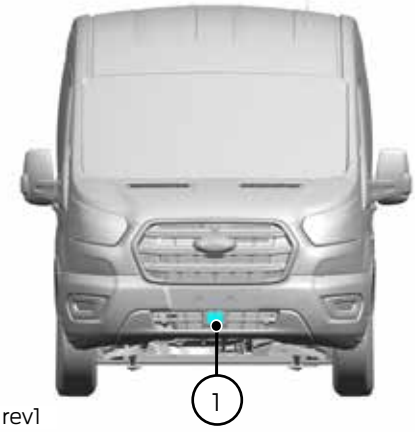
Illustration updated, note removed

CAUTION: For converted vehicles fitted with adaptive cruise control, where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, it is recommended that the radar vertical alignment and system functionality is checked by a Ford dealer. For further information refer to Workshop Manual or Owner's Manual.

NOTE: Do not obstruct the cruise control radar - Figure F40085 rev1.

NOTE: Do not paint the front grille of the vehicle as this may affect the functionality of the cruise control radar.

Adaptive Cruise Control Radar



F40085 rev1

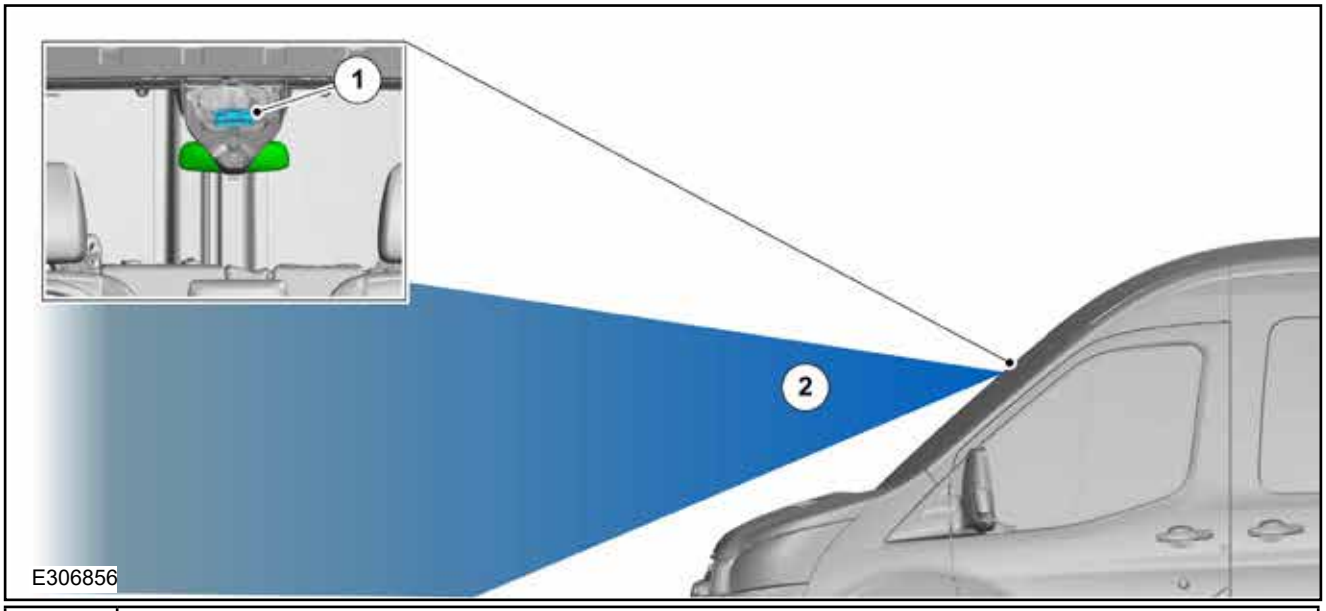
Item	Description
1	Adaptive Cruise Control Radars

4.16 Front Windshield Camera

NOTE: The Front Windshield Camera features (if available: Pre-Collision Assist, Lane Keeping System, Auto High Beam, Traffic Sign Recognition, Intelligent Speed Assist, Wrong Way Alert, Adaptive Cruise Control, Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control) will not function if any conversion or installation is in the field of view from the Front Windshield Camera.

NOTE: For converted vehicles fitted with Front Windshield Camera, where vehicle mass or geometry is significantly altered, a new calibration for the camera sensor needs to be made.

Illustration updated



Item	Description
1	Front Windshield Camera located behind the interior rear view mirror trim
2	View cone from camera, horizontal direction and downwards to the hood edge of the vehicle

4.17 Auto Wipe and Auto Lamp for Vehicles with Large Overhangs

NOTE: Where the modified vehicle has an overhang likely to cover part or all of the rain/light sensor position on the screen (see figure E175197) this may affect the sensor's ability to detect light or moisture to the defined calibration and will not function correctly.

In the event that the Auto Lamp or Auto Wipe function has become impaired, the vehicle can be modified to have manual wipers and headlamps in the following way:

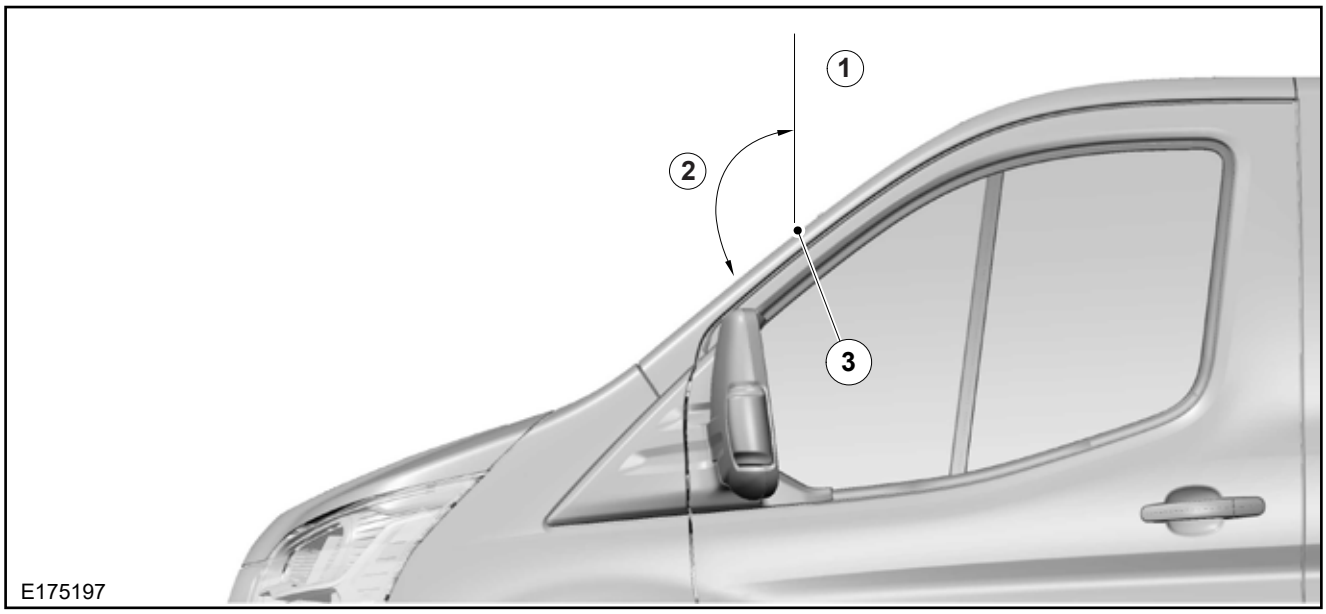
For wipers, there is a cluster menu option to switch wipers to variable intermittent rather than rain sensing. Use this setting instead.

For Auto Lamps, changing the headlamp switch to a non-auto switch will remove the auto position and the system will operate as if no sensor was present. If the Auto Lamp headlamp switch remains, the customer may experience dipped beam remaining lit instead of daytime running lights (if fitted) or off with the ignition on and the switch in Auto. A Ford dealer can help advise which switch should be ordered and fitted, starting with part number SK41-13D061-**.

Be aware, when no headlamp switch Auto position is available (or Auto is not selected on the original switch), auto high beam (provided with forward facing camera) will also not be available or shown in the cluster.

For further information, refer to:

- 4.20.2 Relays, Windshield Wipers
- 4.12 Exterior Lighting



Item	Description
1	Conversion or installation rearward where Auto Lamp and Auto Wipe feature will function correctly.
2	Conversion or installation forward of 132° where Auto Lamp or Auto Wipe feature may become degraded or NOT function correctly.
3	Auto sensor location.

4.18 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

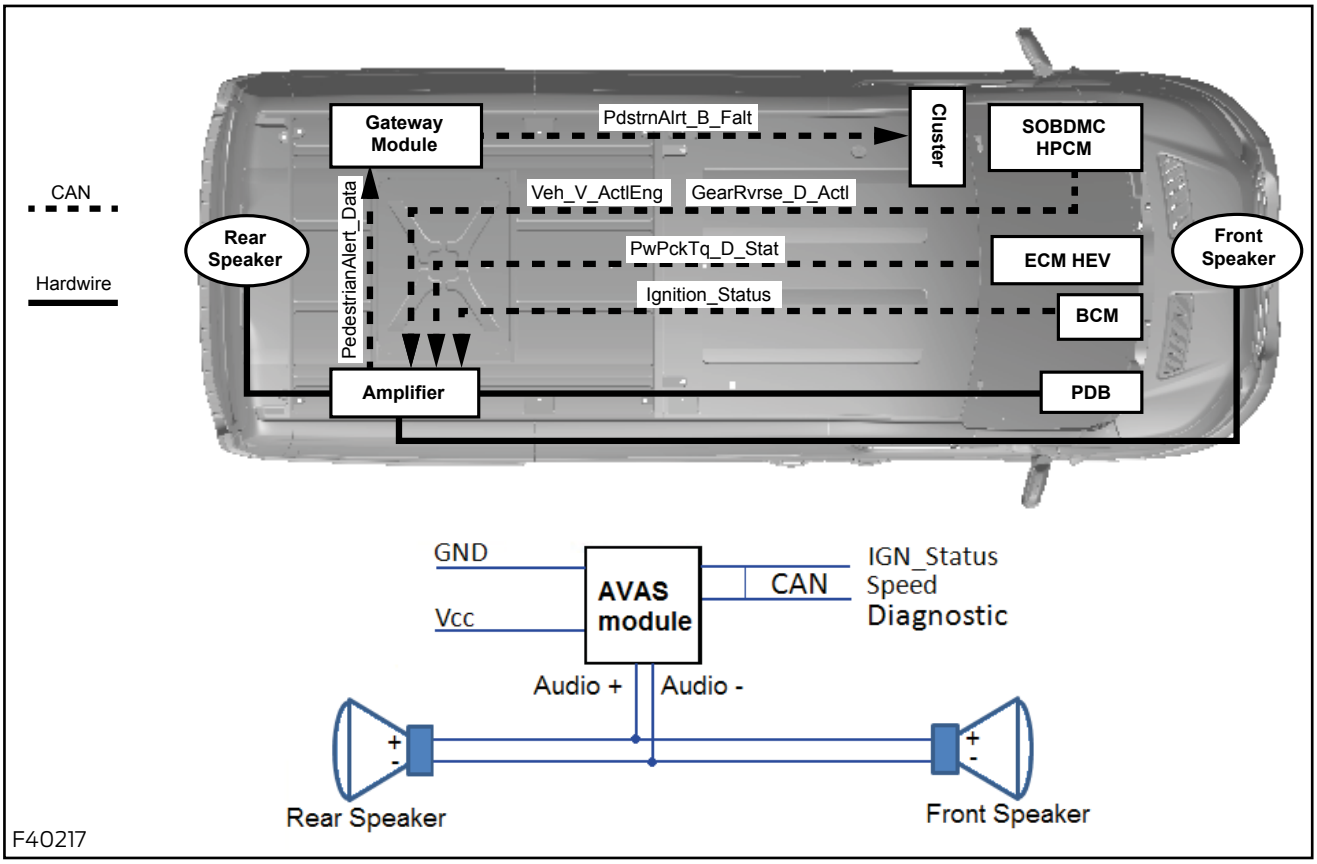
WARNING: Do not move or modify the components of the AVAS system. The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System warning is a legal requirement.

All E-Transit BEV vehicles are equipped with AVAS (Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System).

It is not permitted to remove, change position or obscure the AVAS speaker.

Converted vehicles, on the basis of a Chassis Cab or Cutaway, must not exceed the geometrical limits of a Van vehicle.

F40162



F40217

4.19 Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems

4.19.1 Door Removal or Modification

CAUTION: If an additional third party control system is incorporated into the Ford Locking/Unlocking System, the Crash Event Mid Speed Can Signal must be utilized to override the third party control system to trigger a crash unlock feature within the locking system in case of a relevant event.

Warning added

WARNING: Door outer handles must not be replaced, removed or modified due to Passive Entry/Passive Start (PEPS) function (Keyless Entry with Push Button Start).

NOTE: If any modified doors have ajar switches fitted and operating in accordance with the above, the original alarm and interior lighting functions can be maintained.

In the event of the requirement to remove the doors for derivatives requiring no doors, certain circuits will need to be linked to ensure door ajar warnings do not appear on the Instrument Cluster. The interior light will also stay on if this is not done.

It is possible to maintain a certain state by configuring the Body Control Module (BCM) in the following way. Door ajar circuits should be ground when door is closed except hood ajar:

- C1-5:Hood Ajar Switch in OEM Hood Latch Only
- C4-30 Front Left Ajar - Ground
- C4-24 Front Right Ajar - Ground
- C4-43 Right Rear Hinged Door Ajar
- C6-18 Left Rear Hinged Door Ajar (spliced)
- C1-9: Rear Hinged Door Ajar (spliced)
- C4-45 Left Sliding Door Ajar (only available in Double Chassis Cab)
- C4-15 Right Sliding Door Ajar (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab)

Following circuits should be ground when latch is locked & open circuit when unlocked or always ground. If not ground when locked, lock may not complete:

- C4-44 Front Left Door Latch feedback
- C4-22 Front Right Door Latch feedback
- C4-42 Right Rear Sliding Door Latch feedback (only available in Double Chassis Cab)
- C4-07 Left Rear Sliding Door Latch feedback (or normal door for Double Chassis Cab

Vehicles ordered with only the curb side sliding door, only the curb side sliding door ajar switch will be supported.

Lock reconfiguration into no deadlocks – this can be reconfigured to be central-locking only by a Ford Dealer (via Dealership hotline, as requires vehicle As-Built to be updated).

4.19.2 Central Locking

Content updated

NOTE: All latch lock and unlock pulse durations are 110ms.

Locking is controlled by the BCM. There is current sensing on certain locking circuit pins as part of the security system – if these are tampered with, locking performance cannot be guaranteed.

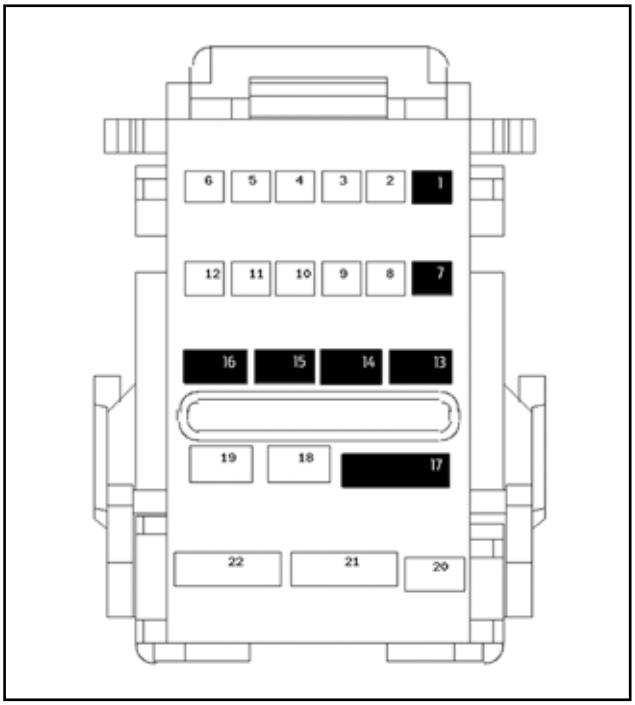
The use of Ford Transit lock mechanisms is strongly recommended as the BCM is designed to drive these latches for the correct amount of time.

See also: 4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections and 4.19.3 Third Button on Key Fob, later in this section, for more locking interface options.

Locking Configurations: The following list details specific locking scenarios that have been noted by customers:

1. Slam locking – this is a configurable parameter in the BCM (dealerships can only switch off this feature, but not switch on).
2. Lock reconfiguration into no deadlocks – this can be reconfigured to be central-locking only by a Ford Dealer (via Dealership hotline, as requires vehicle As-Built to be updated).

Pins to Control Additional Door Locks



Item	Description
C3-01	Unlock Rear Right/Child Lock 2nd Row
C3-07	Driver's Door Unlock
C3-13	Passenger Door Unlock
C3-14	Unlock Driver Side Sliding Door
C3-15	Rear Hinged Cargo Door Unlock
C3-16	Central Lock
C3-17	Front Doors Double Lock

4.19.3 Third Button on Key Fob - Single Chassis Cab

NOTE: There are no micro switches, no current sensing, or any alarm system functionality associated with this pin, or any lock set driven by it.

C3-31 on the BCM is controlled by the third button on the key fob. This provides a 12V 110ms pulse when pressed. The signal can be used via an external relay for a variety of upfitter applications, subject to load required.

The locking circuits are powered by solid state drivers in the BCM. The lock circuits have output protection that will switch the output off if a short circuit is present. The fault must be removed to reactivate the output.

4.19.4 Remote Keyless Entry / Tire Pressure Monitoring System Receiver (RKE/TPMS Receiver)

WARNING: For best performance, the RKE/TPMS receiver must be a minimum distance of 1" (25mm) away from any metal objects and 3.9" (100mm) away from high switch loads.

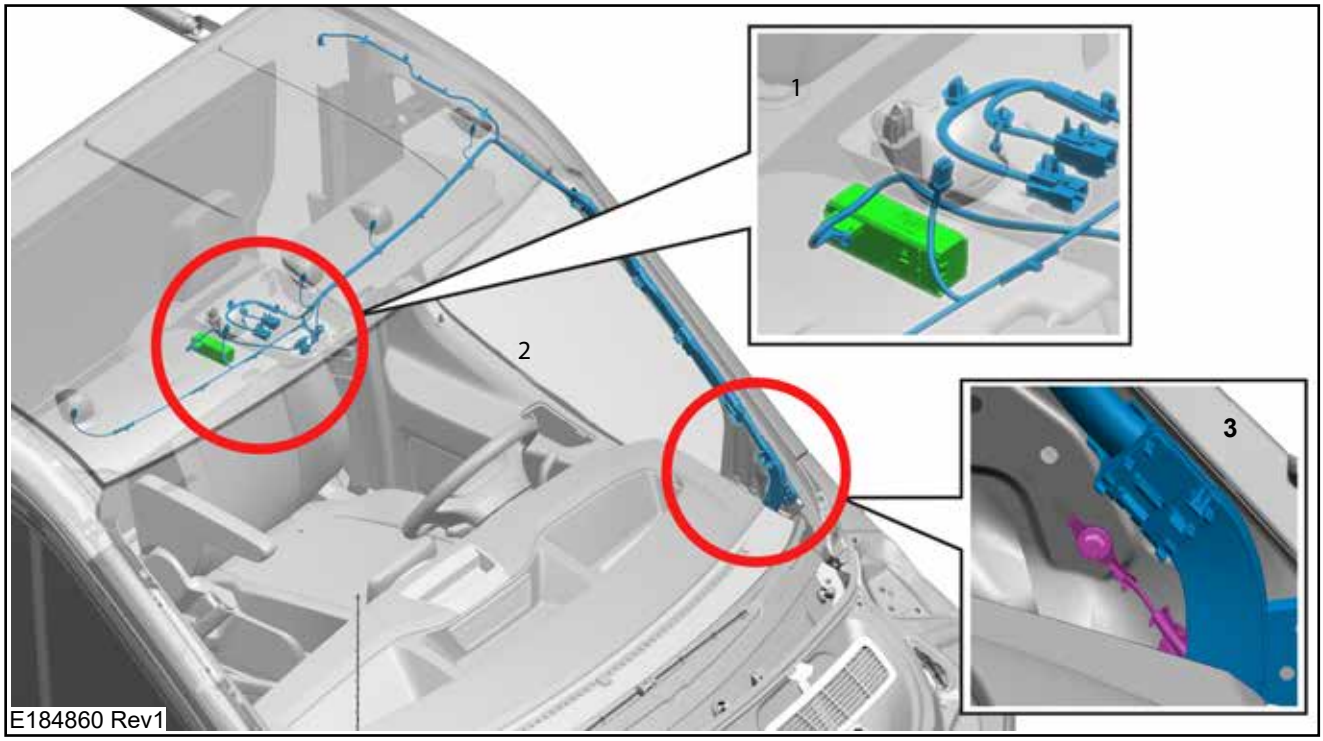
NOTE: It is recommended that the RKE/TPMS has a dedicated ground wire and ground stud, do not splice with other modules.

NOTE: If the RKE/TPMS receiver is removed during an upfitting/conversion process, the backup slot/pocket must be used to start the vehicle. To locate the backup slot, refer to your vehicle Owner's Manual.

The RKE/TPMS receiver is fed via a connection to the 13A409 harness and then grounded at the ground point located on the 'A' Pillar.

For ground point locations, refer to 4.22 Grounding. For additional information, refer to 2.4 Wheels and Tires.

Remote Keyless Entry/Tire Pressure Monitoring System Receiver



Item	Description
1	RKE/TPMS Receiver
2	Harness 13A409
3	Ground Point Location

4.20 Fuses and Relays

4.20.1 Fuses

WARNING: Increase in existing vehicle standard fuse capacity is not allowed. There are no spare fuses in the Power Distribution Box (PDB), Smart Relay Box (SRB) or Body Control Module (BCM). The vehicle modifier must provide additional fuses as required. Please refer to Ford Fuse table in this section.

NOTE: Only use Ford fuses as shown in table below. Other fuses may interfere with the validated fusing strategy.

Ford Fuses

Ampere Rating	Color
Mini Fuse	
2A	Gray
3A	Violet
4A	Pink
5A	Tan
7.5A	Brown
10A	Red
15A	Blue
20A	Yellow
Midi Fuse	
60A	Yellow
J-Case Fuse	
20A	Blue
30A	Pink
40A	Green
50A	Red
60A	Yellow

4.20.2 Relays

NOTE: Only use Ford Relays shown in table.

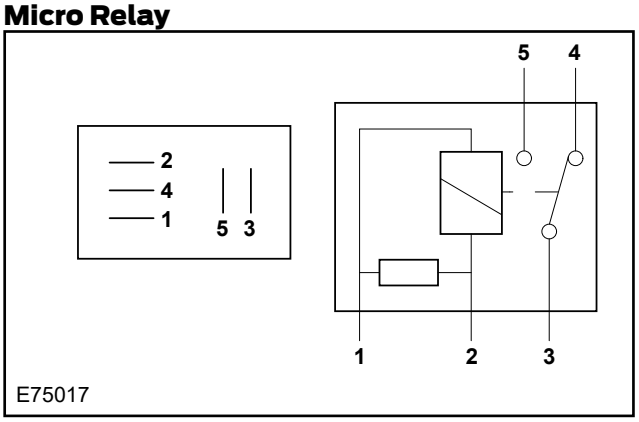
Ford standard relays have a nominal coil current of 300mA (max) at 77F (25°C). Relays with higher loads should not be used.

For maximum switching currents please refer to Relay Figures E75017 and E75018.

Ford Relays

Ampere Rating	Color
Mini Relay	
70A	Gray
40A	Black
40A	Black
Micro Relay	
20A	Black
20A - Silent/Low Noise Relay	Gray

Micro Relay



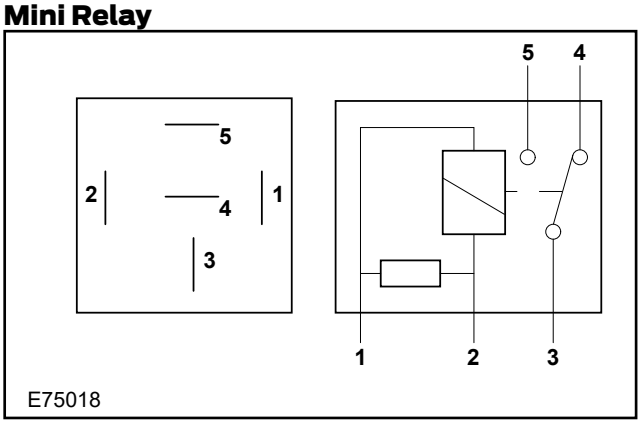
E75017

Micro Relay Parameters	
Open contacts	20A
Closed contacts	16A
Nominal coil current	300 mA (max)

Medium current changeover relay - Part number: 6G9T-14B192-B*

Medium current normally open relay - Part number: 6G9T-14B192-A* (pin 4 not present)

Mini Relay



E75018

Mini Relay Parameters	
Normally open contacts	40A
Normally closed contacts	20A
Nominal coil current	300mA (max)

Medium current changeover relay — Part number: 6G9T-14B192-D*

Medium current normally open relay — Part number: 6G9T-14B192-C* (pin 4 not present)

Windshield Wipers

The base wiper system should not be tampered with (controlled by steering column control module and multiplex architecture with LIN technology).

NOTE: Power to wiper motors is limited by the size of the wiring and associated relays. If any alternative wiper installation is made, it must have a specification equivalent to Ford components.

Refer to 5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms.

4.21 Electrical Connectors and Connections

Content updated

WARNINGS:

The CAN-Bus must not be tampered with as this may lead to failure of safety critical components such as Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS). To access the CAN, ensure Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) is ordered and the procedure followed, see later in this section for more details.

Do not use connectors which cut through the outer covering and into the core wire.

CAUTION: Ford approved connectors must be used.

4.21.1 General Information

Wiring

CAUTION: Ford approved jumper harnesses must be used.

WARNING: It is not recommended to cut into vehicle wiring because:

- **Base vehicle specification is unsuitable for incremental loads except in conjunction with Auxiliary Fuse Panel.**
- **Long term risk of a faulty connection developing.**
- **Potential fire risk from over-loading.**

All connections into existing wiring must be permanently insulated. Exterior connections must be waterproof and with a drip loop.

Where wires are required to be extended, break in points should only be at existing connector points. If splicing into existing wiring is unavoidable, see wiring splicing procedures in this manual.

Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides to access these signals.

4.21.2 Customer Connection Points

WARNINGS:

Before connecting to the vehicle you must remove the main vehicle ground to isolate the 12V system.

Only use the Ford approved kit for adding fuses to the CCPs.

DO NOT connect the same load to both CCP1 and CCP2. The system is not designed to work together as the fuses have different values.

CAUTION: When connecting to the CCP, it is recommended to disconnect the battery ground so as to avoid a short circuit. The fixing torque for CCP1 (M5) is 2.6-3.6 ft lb (3.5–4.5Nm) and for CCP2 (M8) is 8.85 ft lb (12Nm).

NOTE: When fitting additional power wiring feeds the protective cover will need to be revised to allow routing for the extra wires. The cover is pre marked with the relevant areas so that they can be easily removed.

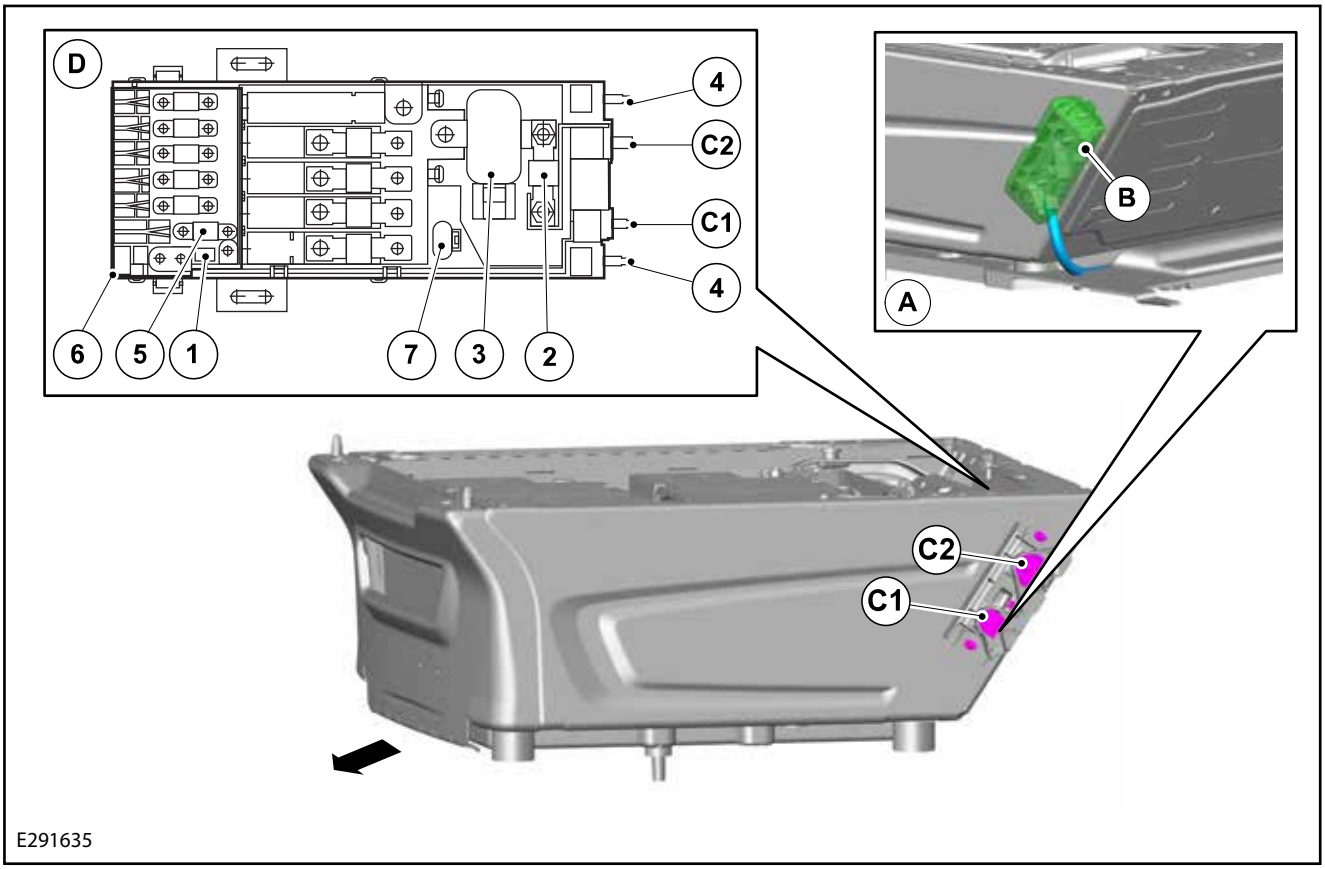
NOTE: There is a maximum of two CCPs. These points are always located on the driver's seat pedestal and are protected by a cover. CCP1 which is capable of supplying a max current of 60A and CCP2 which is capable of supplying a max current of 175A.

NOTE: CCP2 follows the Standard Battery Guard [SBG] function. Refer to 4.6.4 SBG and Load Shedding -Functionality for functional behavior.

NOTE: Before removing the CCP cover, move the driver's seat pedestal forward to provide sufficient access, avoiding the need to remove any body trim.

For high current supply and ground connections, refer to 4.5 Battery Systems.

CCP Location and Pre Fuse Panel



Item	Description
A	Suggested wiring location
B	CCP Cover
D	Pre Fuse Panel
C1	CCP1 (60A)
C2	CCP2 (175A)
1	60A fuse - supplies CCP1, High Specification Interface Connector (JZGAE), Camper
2	175A fuse - supplies CCP2
3	CCP2 Load-shedding, and Standard Battery Guard (SBG) Relay
4	CCP cassette fixing studs (NOT to be used as grounding points)
5	150A SVO Auxiliary Fuse Panel feed
6	If any of the fuses in this area have failed this section of the Pre Fuse Panel will need replacing. Please contact Ford Authorized Parts dealer for service kit
7	Park position for relay connector control when single battery donor

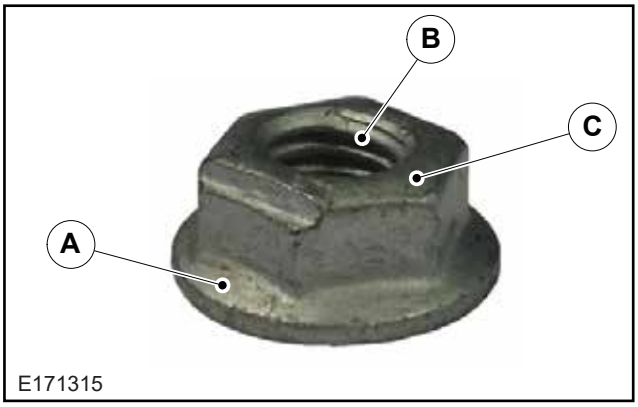
4.21.3 High Current Supply and Ground Connections

WARNINGS:

A self-locking crimp hexagonal nut MUST be used for high current terminal stud connections, for battery positive and negative or chassis ground. Do not use locking, split washers or nylon lock type nuts.

It is recommended to only use one eyelet per stud for high current applications. If more than one eyelet per stud is unavoidable, the highest current eyelet feed should be connected closest to the supply terminal. Do not exceed two eyelets or crimp terminals per stud connection.

Self-Locking Crimp Hexagonal Nut



E171315

Item	Description
A	Large flange for maximum surface area current flow and large clamp force area.
B	Crimp / locking feature is obtained by deformed female thread only
C	Finish must be a low resistance material which complies with the Restricted Substance Management Standards (RSMS).

4.21.4 Vehicle Interface Connector

Content updated

WARNINGS:

Signals 3 to 5 on the Vehicle Interface Connector are for sensing purposes only and not to be loaded by high current consumers.

The max current rating for signal 6 is 10A and signal 8 is 15A. These are not to be exceeded in any situation, this includes the total of the Ford system and third party system requirements.

Unused wires in the service kit must have cable ends insulated to avoid shorting on any ground points.

NOTE: The Vehicle Interface Connector C33-E is standard on every Ford Transit and provides a direct interface to useful signals, using the mating connector. In order to access the vehicle signals through this connector, the Vehicle Modifier needs to follow the wiring installation and routing guidelines and install terminals into the mating connector.

Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides.

- The terminal has the Aptiv part numbers below:

Aptiv Terminal Part Number	Cable Size (mm²)
35493301	1.5-2
35493302	0.75-1
35493303	0.5

- The mating connector Aptiv part number 15532138.

Vehicle Speed

WARNING: Do not interface with the CAN (Controller Area Network) for vehicle speed.

Pin 5: Vehicle Speed signal is a direct current coupled square wave that varies in frequency in proportion to vehicle speed. This provides a square waveform (50% duty cycle) signal, where a frequency of 138Hz equates to 100km/h. Refer to Square Wave Characteristics Table.

Ignition

Pin 6: Ignition signal is protected by a 10A fuse. It is +12V active at ignition positions: Accessory (1) and Run (2). It is not active at Ignition Off (0) or Crank (3). Whilst it can drive equipment directly it is recommended to use this feed to control a relay fitted by Vehicle Modifier, especially for high current applications.

Switch Illumination

Pin 7: Switch illumination signal is only to be used for sensing. It is a PWM signal only for low current illumination 300mA max, that can be dimmed and not used to drive a relay.

Square Wave Characteristics

Specifications	
Max High Signal	Battery Voltage
Min High Signal	3.67 Volts
Max Low Signal	1.1 Volts
Min Low Signal	- 1.1 Volts
Max Ground Offset	± 1.0 Volts
Rise Time	10µ sec <= tr <= 250µ sec
Fall Time	10µ sec <= tf <= 250µ sec
Duty Cycle	50% ± 10%
Pulse Rate	2.2 Hz/MPH (1.3808 Hz/KPH)

Engine Run

WARNING: Do not cut into the alternator wires or use the alternator as a source to obtain a 'D+ Signal'.

The load-shedding 10A ground signal must be used for power control. The engine run feature can only be used to control power if the load-shedding signal has overall control, for example to activate a power relay. Engine run can be used for other systems such as telematics and data loggers.

Pin 4: Load-shedding with Battery SOC Protection switched ground signal is a signal that must always be the primary controlling signal to be used to handle third party loads totaling over 60A.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

The engine run feature can only be used to control power if the load-shedding signal has overall control, for example through a power relay.

Engine run can be used for other systems such as telematics and data loggers. This feature will supply power at engine run, and at engine off it will isolate when the battery reaches the timer or SOC value. At engine run, the signal will extinguish if voltage drops to below 11V. This is to protect critical systems such as EPAS. The voltage of the system should not drop below 13V for continuous periods. If this occurs, the extra equipment added, is exceeding supply and supplemental energy sources may be required, such as additional alternators.

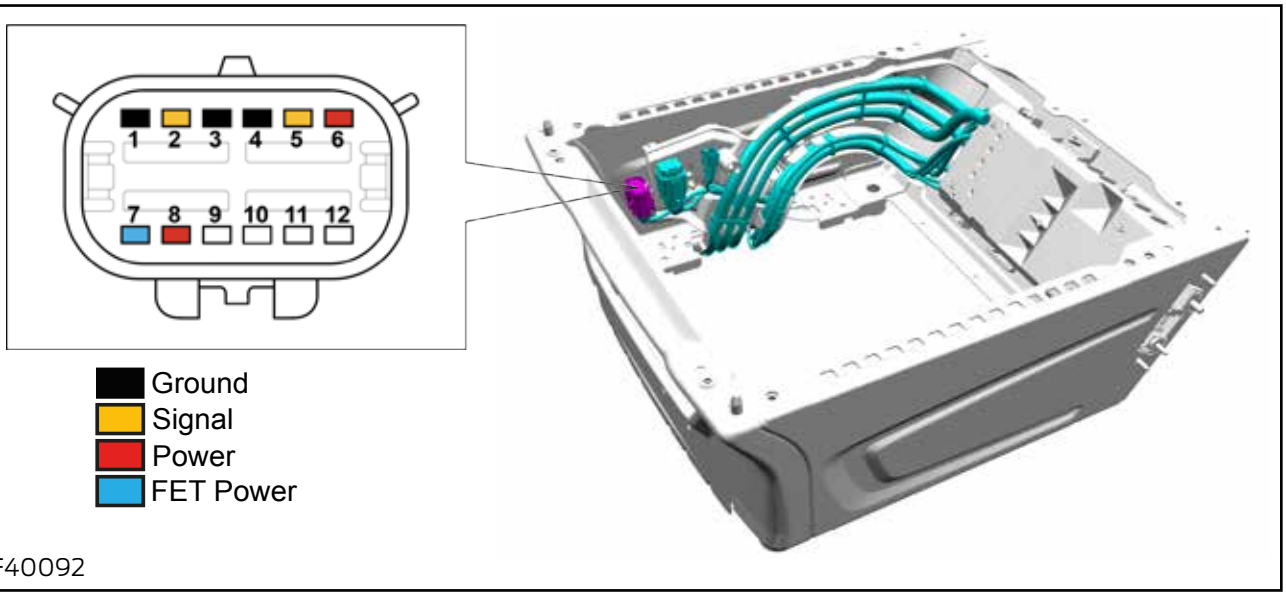
Pin 2: Engine run signal will only support a sense line or relay control that is in **AND** logic with the load-shedding signal.
This engine run signal is ground switching (max current sink 250mA), it provides no positive output (open circuit) and is only active when the engine is running.

The signal will not be present when:

- Key states - Off (0), Accessory (1), Run but Engine Off (2), Crank (3)
- Key in Run position, where Start-Stop vehicle has auto stopped the engine
- Engine running but load is greater than 250mA (driving two or more relays in error)

Due to Start-Stop vehicles, the signal may switch up to 300,000 times. Provision is required for control relays switched by this signal to meet this durability cycle.

12 Way Vehicle Interface Connector



F40092

12 Way Vehicle Interface Connector Signals	
1	Ground
2	Engine Run
3	SRC Inhibit/Third Party High Power Mode
4	Load Shed/Standard Battery Guard
5	Vehicle Speed
6	Run Start KL15 (10A))
7	IP Switch Illumination
8	+12V KL30 (15A)
9	No Connection
10	No Connection
11	No Connection
12	No Connection

4.21.5 Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE)

The Auxiliary Fuse Panel is recommended for Vehicle Modifiers where access to fused power connections are required (for example, additional lighting).

The Auxiliary Fuse Panel is located behind the glove box and slightly outboard behind the removable cup holder. The main power is supplied by a 150A fuse in the high current fuse panel, located in the driver's seat pedestal.

Critical signals are obtained from the standard interface connector. If the signals are still needed for other third party add-on systems, the fuse panel comes with a cloned standard interface connector, packaged slightly higher in the driver's seat pedestal.

The Auxiliary Fuse Panel uses the Vehicle Interface Connector, shown in figure F40092, and provides an advanced customer access point (C1) connector as well as a (C2) interface connector to further switch installations and a power and ground supply.

There are 4 relays that can be controlled via third party input switches (when ordering the stand alone fuse panel). Two of the outputs can switch 40A per circuit.

Features

- The fuse panel comes from production, 'powered at ignition position 2' only and not 'powered at all times'. This is to avoid any discharged batteries during the shipping and conversion process. Once switched and peripherals are added, the fuse panel can be configured to 'powered at all times' by the jumper fuse relocation from position A to B, as shown in figure E189518 Rev1. It is recommended to change to the permanent power mode after the third party equipment has been added and near the end of the total conversion.
- In the Auxiliary Fuse Panel, all switched relays are now controlled via the 'load shed' signal, which also functions as a 'battery guard' feature at 'engine off'. There are no 'engine run' controlled signals. If 'engine run' control is added, it must be '**AND** logic', not '**OR** logic' with the 'load shed' system. Even when 'engine run' control is required, the total vehicle third party system load must not exceed 60A. This total includes use of CCP1.
- At 'engine off', under SBG control, the BCM provides the following timers and SOC values before disconnect. The timer resets each 'ignition on' and in 'engine run'.
  - For a single battery and non-AGM, 30 minutes activation limit and 60% SOC limit.
  - For a twin AGM battery (in vehicle configuration) the timeout is 75 minutes and SOC limit is 40%.
- If the Third Party High Power mode feature is activated, the timeout on the SBG is suppressed so the system will isolate only on the battery SOC limit.

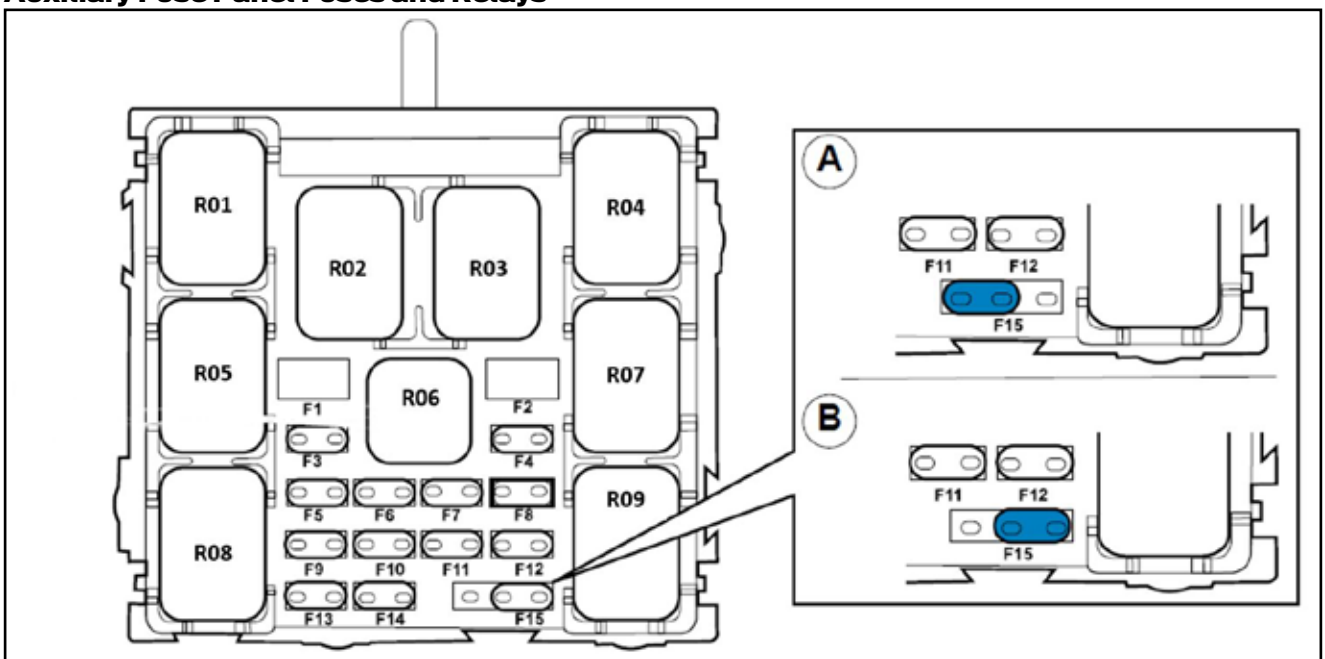
Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

- The Auxiliary Fuse Panel outputs, controlled by 'load shedding', and excluding the relay driven direction indicators, may switch off at engine 'drive run' mode in the event of a low voltage (11V). This is designed to protect EPAS which is now standard on the Ford Transit. If the system is continuously reaching this low voltage, there may be an issue with the energy sources, or the third party system demand is greater than the supply. System voltage should not drop below 13V for continuous periods. Check that each system's energy supply is compatible with the add on third party equipment and Ford system demands.
- There is a dedicated 40A output connection, separate to the C1 and C2 traditional connectors. This is mounted onto the fuse box housing.
- The 43-way interface connector (when ordering JZGAE) is also mounted to the fuse box housing.
- The 12-way standard interface connector, shown in figure F40092, is cloned nearby and is located in the driver's seat area. Extra signals for third party equipment can be obtained from here with the same dealer service kit.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection.

- The Auxiliary Fuse Box is fed from a 150A fuse F06, in the driver's seat pedestal, high current fuse panel, with the control grounds from the battery ground stud. If this fuse is an open circuit, then a complete fuse assembly is required.
- The SBG signal in the standard interface connector (cloned pin 3) must be used to control a third party relay (non-latched normally open type) if the CCP2 cannot be utilized and more than 60A is required.

Auxiliary Fuse Panel Fuses and Relays



E189518 rev2

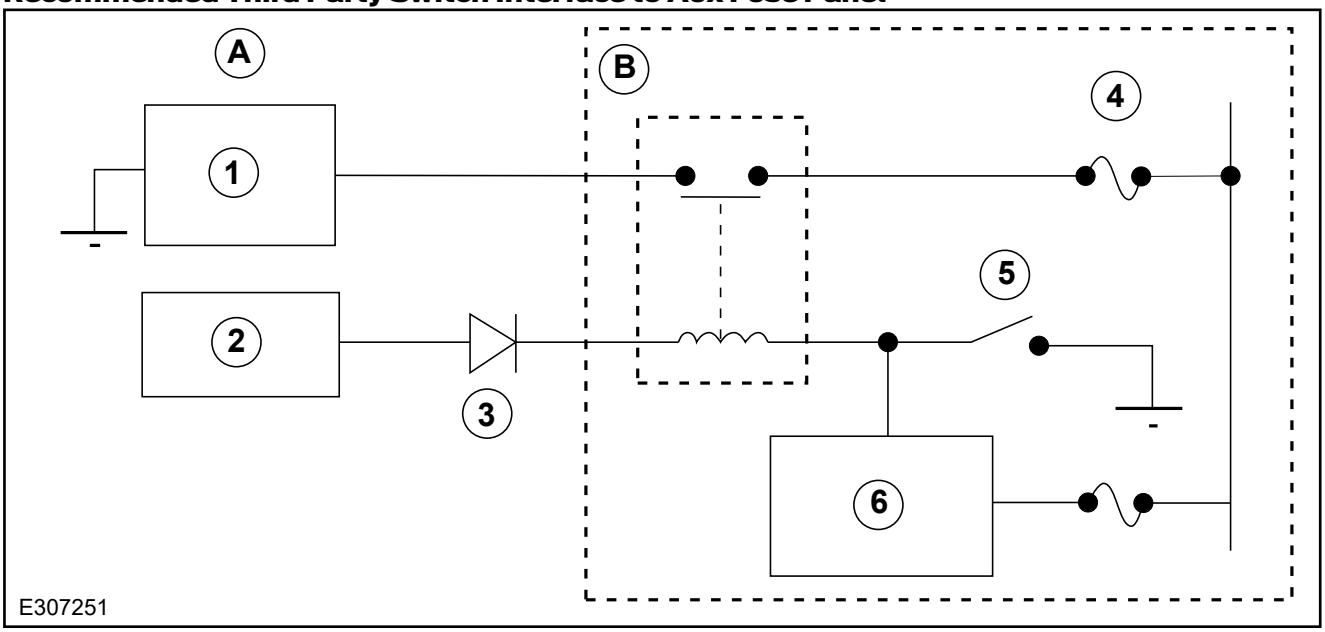
Item	Description
A	Ignition Only position of F15
B	Permanent Power Only position of F15*

*Moving this fuse also affects pin 28 in High Specification Interface Connector and switches to permanent power

Item	Description	Item	Description
F1	40A Fuse	F14	5A Fuse
F2	40A Fuse	F15	3A Fuse
F3	20A Fuse	R1	20A Relay (Beacon(1))
F4	20A Fuse	R2	40A Relay (Aux1 power)
F5	10A Fuse	R3	40A Relay (Aux2 power)
F6	3A Fuse	R4	20A Relay (Ignition)
F8	10A Fuse	R5	20A Relay (LHS Indicator)
F9	15A Fuse	R6	Ultra micro relay. Ground to set Third Party High Power mode when Beacon Switch is ON
F10	5A Fuse	R7	20A relay (Interior light)
F11	5A Fuse	R8	20A Relay (RHS Indicator)

(1)When specified on Ford options
Any pin/fuse not listed in the table above are not to be used.

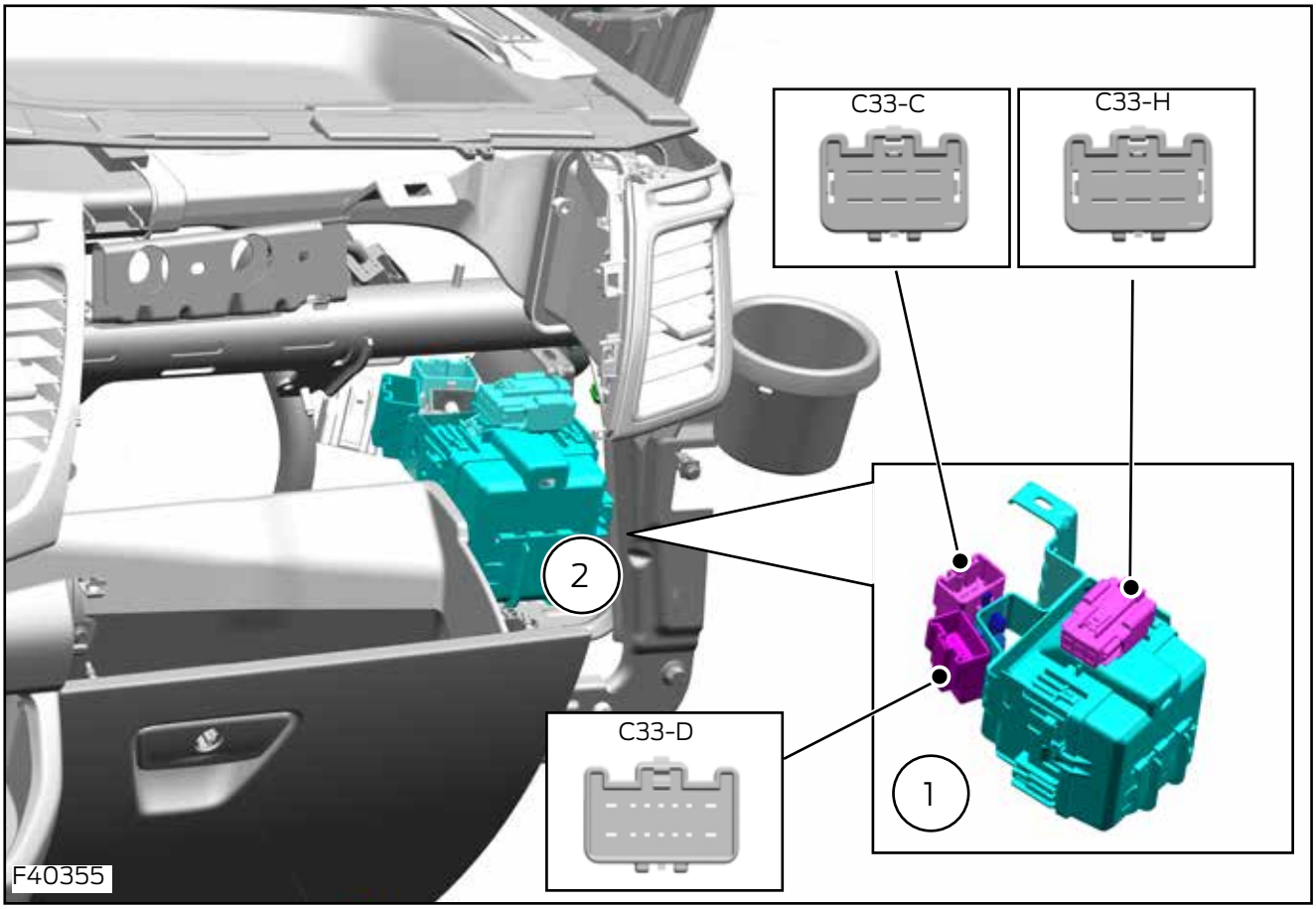
Recommended Third Party Switch Interface to Aux Fuse Panel



Item	Description
A	Third Party Fit System
B	Fuse Box Sub-System
1	Third Party Device to Power
2	Third Party +12V Input
3	Recommended To Add a Diode to the 12V Input Feed to Avoid a Back Feed Sneak Path
4	Fused Supply to Contacts
5	Load Shedding Ground
6	Other Auxiliary Fuse Panel Relays

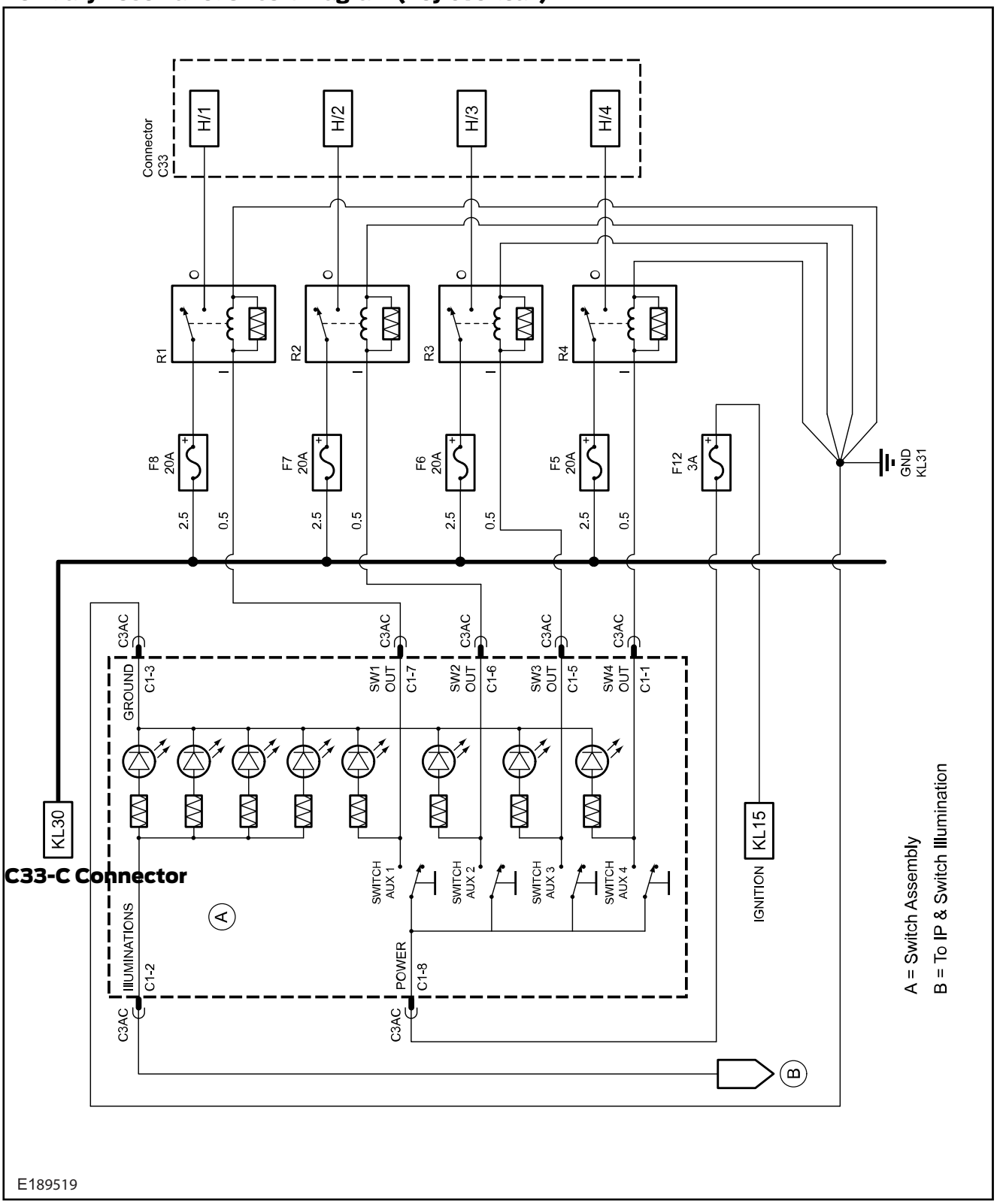
Illustration updated

Auxiliary Fuse Panel Connectors



Item	Description
1	Auxiliary Fuse Panel
2	Auxiliary Fuse Panel access lid
C33-C	High Current Power Upfitter Connector
C33-D	Cutaway Connector
C33-H	High Capacity Output Auxiliary Switch Connector

Auxiliary Fuse Panel Circuit Diagram (key overleaf)

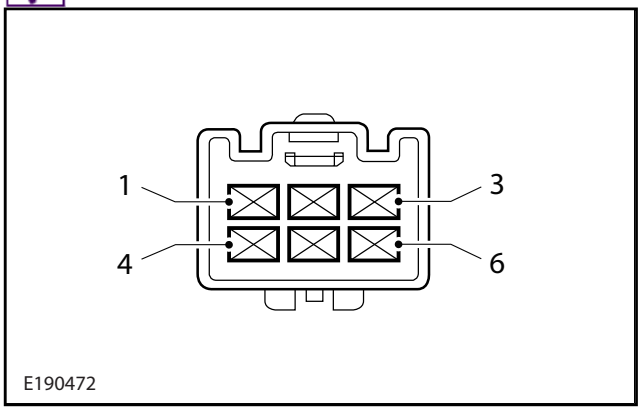


C33-C Connector

Auxiliary Fuse Panel Circuit Diagram Key				
Fuse No.	Type	Value (A)	Color	Function
F1	Mcase	40	Orange	R2 Power
F2	Mcase	40	Orange	R3 Power
F3	Micro	20	Yellow	R1 Power
F4	Micro	20	Yellow	R4 Power
F5	Micro	20	Yellow	R5 Power
F6	Micro	-	-	Spare
F7	Micro	-	-	Spare
F8	Micro	20	Yellow	R7 Power
F9	Micro	20	Yellow	R8 Power
F10	Micro	-	-	Spare
F11	Micro	-	-	Spare
F12	Micro	20	Yellow	R9 Power
F13	Micro	5	Yellow	R6 Feed
F14	Micro	5	Tan	Ignition KL15
F15	Micro	5	Tan	R6 Power
Relay No	**Type**	**Value (A)**	**Relay Name**	
R1	Power Relay	20	Aux Power 1	
R2	Power Mini ISO	40	Aux Power 2	
R3	Power Mini ISO	40	Aux Power 3	
R4	Power Relay	20	Aux Power 4	
R5	Power Relay	20	Aux Power 5	
R6	Ultra Micro Relay	20	Feeds Aux Switch Panel	
R7	Power Relay	20	Aux Power 5	
R8	Power Mini ISO	20	Aux Power 5	
R9	Power Mini ISO	20	Aux Power 5	

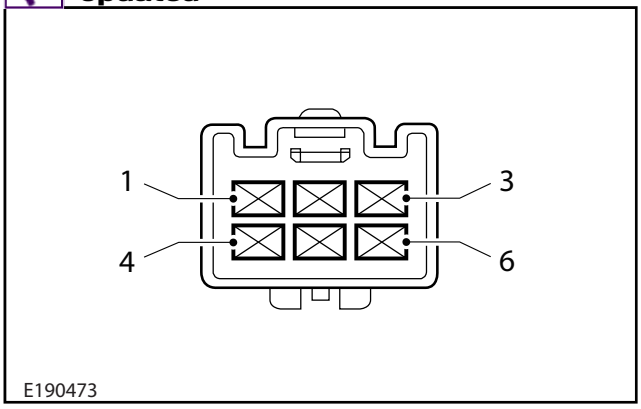
Any pin/fuse not listed in the table above is not to be used

C33-C Connector - updated



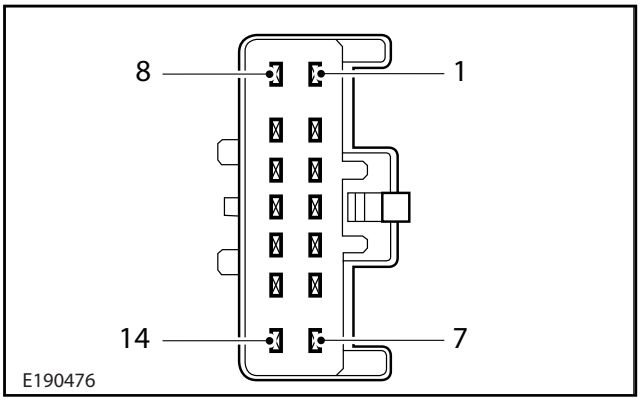
Item	Description
1	Ground - Cowl Side Pillar
2	Not Used
3	Fuse 35(Modified Vehicle Wiring) VBATT (30A)
4	Not Used
5	Relay 7 (Modified Vehicle Wiring) VPWR (30A)
6	Fuse 13 (Upfitter Connector) VBATT (40A) Battery Fused Feed

C12-A Connector (below the shifter) - updated



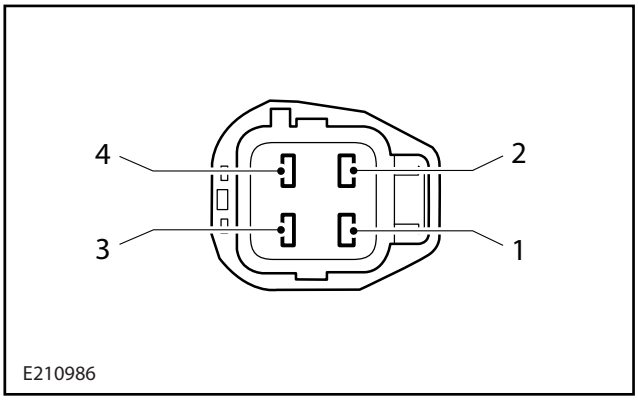
Item	Description
1	Upfitter Customer Access Pass Thru
2	Upfitter Customer Access Pass Thru
3	Fuse 35 (Modified Vehicle Wiring) VBATT (30A) Battery Fused Feed
4	Relay 7 Upfitter Relay 40A protected with Fuse 6 Upfitter Connector run/start 30A
5	Front Left Lamp Turn
6	Front Right Lamp Turn

C33-D Cutaway Body Connector - updated



Item	Description
1	Fuse 22 (Upfitter Connector) (10A)
2	Audio Speaker R-Rear -
3	Audio Speaker R-Rear +
4	Entry Illumination Rear
5	Leaf Rear Door Ajar
6	Micro Circuit Interior Lighting
7	Passenger Door Lock
8	Fuse 51 (7.5 A)
9	Audio Speaker L-Rear -
10	Audio Speaker L-Rear +
11	Not Used
12	Not Used
13	Not Used
14	Passenger Door Unlock

C11-H Connector (in engine compartment) - updated



Item	Description
1	Fuse 59 (Modified Vehicle Wiring) VPWR (30A) Run/Start Fused Feed
2	Upfitter Customer Access Pass Thru_1
3	Upfitter Customer Access Pass Thru_2
4	Fuse 35 (Modified Vehicle Wiring) VBATT (30A)

4.21.6 High Capacity Auxiliary Switches (ICE)

CAUTION: When the vehicle is in the load shed event, the vehicle switches will be inoperative.

NOTE: High capacity auxiliary switches are available with ICE vehicles only.

When the switches are pressed (light on) the switches provide a +12V(20A,20A,40A,40A) output.

NOTE: Aux 1, 2 and 3 switches are Ignition supplied and Aux 4 is Engine Run.

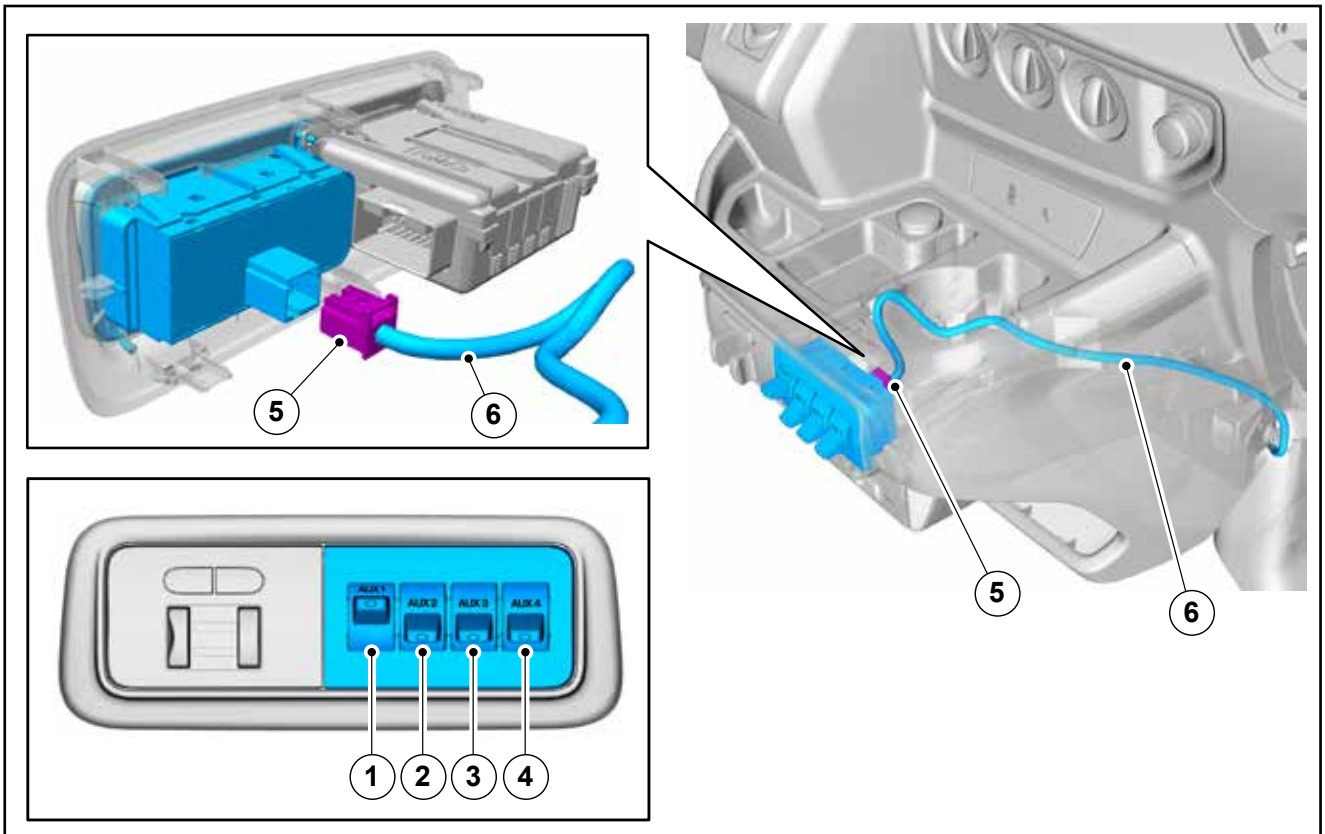
The Aux 1, 4 and Unswitched power outputs (with respective grounds) are located in High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector, see figure F40352 and table. Aux 2 and Aux 3 power outputs (with respective grounds) are located in the C33-H connector behind the glove box, see figure F40356 and table for pin details.

If heavy loads are required, controlled via these switches (especially at engine off) it is recommended to order High Performance Deep Cycle AGM batteries on the base vehicle. The switches are illuminated red when the lights are side, dipped, full beam or auto lights on.

Recommendations: When the switches are configured to hot/live at all times please note the following:

- The peripherals to be controlled by the hot/live at all times switches should be visual/audible systems, such as Beacons, Spotlights.
- Covert systems such as Water Heaters and Invertors must be fed from Ignition and Engine Run supplies.
- If a system is connected to hot at all times which cannot be detected, visually/audibly, then there is a risk of complete battery discharge and therefore failed start.

High Capacity Auxiliary Switches



E189520

Item	Description	Current (A)	Comments
1	Aux 1	20	Ignition supplied/Hot at all times
2	Aux 2	40	Ignition supplied/Hot at all times
3	Aux 3	40	Ignition supplied/Hot at all times
4	Aux 4	20	Engine Run
-	Unswitched	20	Ignition Supplied
-	Unswitched	20	Ignition Supplied
5	Auxiliary Switch Pack Connector		
6	14A348 Jumper Harness		

C33-H - High Capacity Auxiliary Switch Output - updated

F40356

Pin	Description	Comments	Fuse Number	Fuse Rating	Nominal Rating
1	Ground KL31 (40A max)	-	-	-	-
2	Not to be Used	For EMC	-	-	-
3	Upfitter switch 2 Output (40A max, Ignition Supplied) (Relay 2 Fuse 1)	for EMC reasons, use Ground Pin 1 in this connector	13	40A	32A
4	Ground	-	-	-	-
5	Not to be Used	For EMC	-	-	-
6	Upfitter switch 3 Output (40A max, Ignition Supplied) (Relay 2 Fuse 1)	for EMC reasons, use Ground pin 4 in this connector	14	40A	32A

4.21.7 High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector - Section added

The standard system includes the High Capacity Auxiliary Fuse Panel and an Auxiliary Fuse Box, it is powered by two fuses from the Customer Connection Points at the driver's seat pedestal. The Ford production fit location of these feeds are under the carpet at the rear of the driver's seat pedestal, and they need to be installed by the modifier. Therefore on high-specification vehicles there will only be one remaining customer connection point available for customer to use.

The High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector (43 way connector), see F40352, is an order only option for production fit and cannot be updated after the vehicle is built. The connector is located behind the glove box. It provides access to multiple signals, power and ground. These signals include those required for Police/Emergency Service modifications.

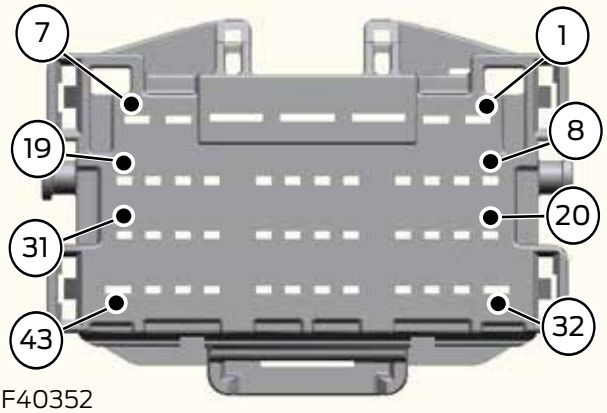
WARNINGS:

The fuse ratings and nominal ratings within the table must be strictly followed. Any deviation could interfere with the validated fusing strategy and wiring architecture. Some inputs are provided via electronic modules and any overloading could cause serious vehicle malfunction and may conflict with legal requirements.

No increase in existing vehicle standard fuse capacity is permitted.

On high-spec vehicles the C1 connector is not available as a customer interface and only the 43 way connector should be used. The connector to add wiring for switches and beacons is still available.

High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector



F40352

High Specification Vehicle Interface Connector

Cavity	Wire	Signal	Comments	Fuse	Fuse Rating	Nominal Rating	Wire Code	Notes
1	2.50	Switched Upfitter Output #1	Relay activated via Upfitter switch 1	3	20A	16A	B_CAC01A	
2	2.50	Switched Upfitter Output #4	Relay activated via Upfitter switch 4	4	20A	16A	B_CAC04A	
3	2.50	Unswitched Upfitter Output #5	Relay activated via Pin 12	5	20A	16A	B_CAC05A	
4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
5	2.50	Unswitched Upfitter Output #7	Relay activated via Pin 13	8	20A	16A	B_CAC07A	
6	2.50	Unswitched Upfitter Output #8	Relay activated via Pin 14	9	20A	16A	B_CAC08A	
7	2.50	Unswitched Upfitter Output #9	Relay activated via Pin 15	12	20A	16A	B_CAC09A	
8	0.75	Turn Signal Left	Low Power: Only to be used to drive relay coil	-	-	-	CLS21F	
9	0.75	Turn Signal Right	Low Power: Only to be used to drive relay coil	-	-	-	CLS25F	
10	0.50	IP+Switch Illumination	PWM Signal from BCM	-	-	-	VLN04K	
11	0.50	Stop Lamp Signal (CHMSL)	PWM Signal from BCM	-	-	-	CLS17C	
12	0.35	Upfitter Relay R5 Control-	Feed 12V to engage relay coil	-	-	300mA	A_CAC05A	
13	0.35	Upfitter Relay R7 Control-	Feed 12V to engage relay coil	-	-	300mA	A_CAC07A	
14	0.35	Upfitter Relay R8 Control-	Feed 12V to engage relay coil	-	-	300mA	A_CAC08A	
15	0.35	Upfitter Relay R9 Control-	Feed 12V to engage relay coil	-	-	300mA	A_CAC09A	
16	0.50	LHS Sliding Door Ajar	Door Open = Ground (<50 ohms)	10	5A	4A	CPL36C	
17	0.35	Passenger Door Ajar	Door Closed = Ground(<50 ohms)	11	10A	8A	CPL31C	
18	0.35	Drivers Door Ajar	Door Closed = Ground(<50 ohms)	12	5A	4A	CPL26C	
19	0.50	Cargo Door Ajar	Door Open (<50 ohms)	-	-	-	CPL81D	
20	0.75	High Beam Signal	Output from BCM	-	-	-	CLF02B	
21	0.75	Low Beam Signal	Output from BCM	-	-	-	CLF04B	
22	0.50	Parking/Marker Lights	PWM Signal from BCM	-	-	-	CLS06C	
23	0.35	Horn Signal	Relay Coil Switched Ground (by BCM)	-	-	-	CRH04C	
24	0.35	Smart Regen Charge	SRC and start/stop inhibit when grounded	-	-	-	CE937	
25	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
26	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
27	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
28	0.50	5A Fused Feed	KL30/15 configurable external switch supply (via F15)	15	5A	4A	CBS15SA	
29	0.50	Engine Run	Engine Running = Ground (<50 ohms)	-	-	-	CE607C	
30	0.50	Park Brake Signal (Mechanical Parking Brake Only)	Park Brake Engaged = Ground (<50 ohms)	-	-	-	CMC25C	
31	0.35	RHS Sliding Door Ajar	Door Open = Ground (<50 ohms)	-	-	-	CPL39B	
32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
33	0.75	Reverse Signal	PWM Signal from BCM	-	-	-	CLS10E	
34	0.50	Vehicle Speed Signal	to be used as input to ECUs only	-	-	-	VMC05D	
35	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
36	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
37	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
38	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
39	1.50	Load Shed Ground	Use for any additional power take-off control logic	-	-	-	C_GD238PY	
40	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty
41	0.50	Lock Request	+12V 500ms. Ground (<50 ohms) all other times	-	-	-	CPL42D	
42	0.50	Unlock Request	+12V 500ms. Ground (<50 ohms) all other times	-	-	-	CPL43D	
43	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Empty

4.21.8 Additional Vehicle Signals/ Features

WARNING: When interfacing with specific lighting high side driver outputs, additional supplemental signal access, relays and peripherals fitted, must be compatible with a Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) frequency of 200Hz.

For list of lighting circuits that are PWM supplied refer to 4.3 Communications Network BCM Output Information table.

For additional information on lighting loads, refer to 4.12 Exterior Lighting.

4.21.9 Adding Connectors

Unused Connectors

The harnesses may have a number of unused connectors – these are dedicated to other features and options, but are not always present depending on level of harness fitted. Ford do not recommend the use of these connectors for any other purpose than that intended by design.

Power Outlet/Cigar Lighter

Both features adopt a 20A fusing strategy. With a single battery system, continued loading of these features will lead to battery drain, and risk vehicle starting. If continuous power is required, a second battery option should be installed and the customer connection points, where fitted, utilized. At engine OFF, all three power outlets are connected to the battery saver system, where the supply will switch off at 30 minutes.

4.21.10 Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits

WARNING: Only Ford released wiring must be used to support added vehicle functionality. If the implementation of wiring other than this is required, Ford guidelines must be followed.

NOTE: The Auxiliary Fuse Panel should be ordered.

For further information, refer to:

- 4.23 Fuses and Relays
- 4.25 Grounding.

In addition to the Auxiliary Fuse Panel, a number of other kits are available to meet customer needs, contact your local Ford Dealer for details.

4.21.11 Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) - Section added

WARNING: It is the responsibility of the Vehicle Modifier to ensure all safety checks have been carried out prior to installation of any 3rd party systems/configuration to the vehicle.

NOTE: The wiring harness of the base vehicle consists of giveaway circuits and interface connector(s) to allow for the retrofitting of the Vehicle Integration System module.

NOTE: Vehicle Integration System can be installed to a vehicle if it was not ordered or equipped from factory (module installation referenced later in this document). Installation of Vehicle Integration System should be done through Ford authorized dealers.

NOTE: The Vehicle Integration System has limited functionality from factory fit. The Vehicle Integration System (that includes UCIM and APIM if soft switch functionality is planned) must be flashed with Upfitter Configuration created by the Vehicle Integration System programming tool to enable the Vehicle Integration System functions.

The Vehicle Integration System module is a programmable I/O controller which communicates on the vehicle CAN network.

The Vehicle Integration System module can control various vehicle functions via Upfitter Configuration.

Users should consult the Vehicle Integration System programming tool manual for further information.

Vehicle Integration System provides two methods of accessing CAN output:

1) through the Vehicle Integration System programming tool or

2) through an additional hardwired connection in the SAE J1939 format.

Vehicle Integration System Module Location

F40096

SAE J1939 Output Customer CAN Signal Access

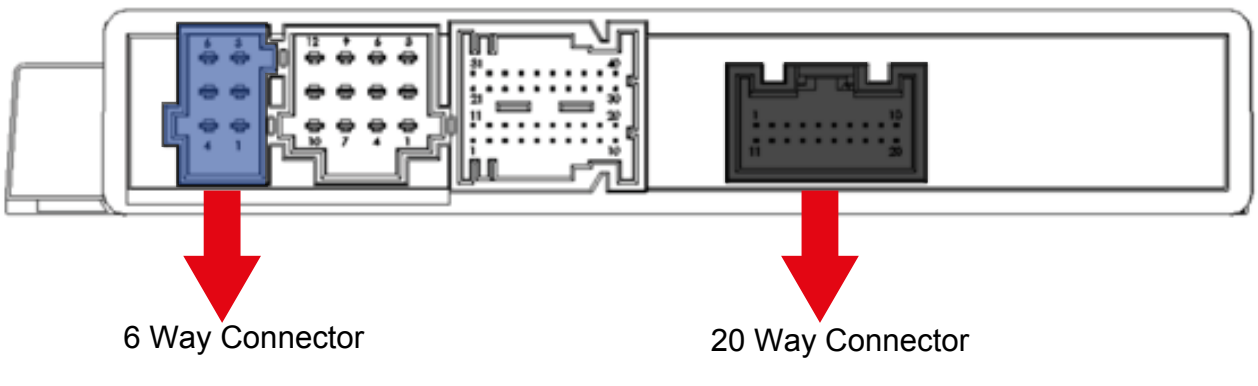
1. Vehicle Integration System and connectors can be accessed in the instrument panel.
2. Reference the Vehicle Integration System module and 2 connectors: Black 20-Way & Blue 6-Way (highlighted below) and disconnect both the Black 20-Way and Blue 6-Way from the module to ensure no power is being delivered to module.
3. Focusing on the Black 20-Way connector, begin to unravel/unwrap the flocked tape around the harness such that enough workable length is available to expose the wire circuits. Stow away the unraveled/unwrapped flock tape so it can be reused for re-installation later.
4. Locate the SAE J1939 wired circuits 3 and 4. These 2 circuits will be used in order to perform the cut and splice to obtain the signals.

NOTE: The circuits remaining in the harness will not be used and no longer need to be connected. Recommend taping the circuits back securely and stowed away from the splice.

NOTE: Follow the Ford approved procedure for soldering circuits to complete the splice. These are CAN network circuits that are a twisted pair, and for the added length ensure it meets the twists per foot requirement (4 twists per 50 mm).

5. Complete the splice, following the Ford Repair Guidelines, re-wrap the flock tape removed (Step 4) or use an acceptable substitute ensuring that circuits are wrapped within 50mm from the back of the connector.
6. Reconnect the Black 20-way, and Blue 6-way to the Vehicle Integration System module.

Vehicle Integration System Module Connectors



Vehicle Integration System Connectors

Upfitter electrical loads should not exceed stated limits in the following tables:

C1 Connector (6-way) Module Power and Ground

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Power						
2	KL30_2	Power Supply 2	9	16	-	20
4	KL30_1	Power Supply 1	9	16	-	20
5	KL30_2	Power Supply 2	9	16	-	20
6	KL30_1	Power Supply 1	9	16	-	20
Ground						
1	KL31	Ground	9	16	-	24
4	KL31	Ground	9	16	-	24

C2 Connector (12-way) High Current Outputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	PWM		Power Supply
			Min	Max	Max Steady State	Frequency	Duty %	
High Side Switch								
1	MFA_7	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
2	MFA_5	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
3	MFA_6	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
4	MFA_8	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
5	MFA_4	10A HS Switch	9	16	10	-	-	2
6	MFA_1	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	1
7	MFA_3	5A HS Switch	9	16	5	-	-	2
12	MFA_2	10A HS Switch	9	16	10	-	-	1
Half Bridge								
8	MFA_20	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	1
9	MFA_19	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	1
10	MFA_22	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	2
11	MFA_21	5A HB	9	16	5	<= 3KHz	3-100	2

C3 Connector (40-way) Low Current Outputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Current (A)	PWM	Duty %	Power Supply
			Min	Max	Max Steady State			
Low Side Switch								
1	MFA_15	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
2	MFA_16	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
3	MFA_13	1A LS Switch	-	-	1	<=5KHz	5-100	-
11	MFA_17	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
12	MFA_18	0.5A LS Switch	-	-	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	-
13	MFA_14	1A LS Switch	-	-	1	<=5KHz	5-100	-
High Side Switch								
21	MFA_11	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	2
22	MFA_12	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	2
31	MFA_9	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	1
32	MFA_10	0.5A HS Switch	9	16	0.5	<=300Hz	3-100	1

C3 Connector (40-way) Inputs

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Voltage (V)		Voltage level for digital Input detection (V)		Sink Current (mA)		Sampling Rate	Resolution
			Min	Max	Non-Active	Active	Min @9V	Max @16V		
Digital Input Active HIGH										
7	MFE_17	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
8	MFE_19	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
9	MFE_21	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
10	MFE_23	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
17	MFE_18	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
18	MFE_20	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
19	MFE_22	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
20	MFE_24	Digital High	0	16	<2.8	>6.1	6.7	12.82	5ms	N/A
Digital Input Active LOW										
23	MFE_9	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
24	MFE_11	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
25	MFE_13	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
26	MFE_15	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
33	MFE_10	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
34	MFE_12	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
35	MFE_14	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
36	MFE_16	Digital Low	0	16	>6.1	<2.8	5.3	11.81	5ms	N/A
Analog Input										
27	MFE_1	Analog Input	0	19.95	Dependent on Upfitter Configuration		5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
28	MFE_3	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
29	MFE_5	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
30	MFE_7	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
37	MFE_2	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
38	MFE_4	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
39	MFE_6	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit
40	MFE_8	Analog Input	0	19.95			5.3	11.81	5ms	12-bit

C4 Connector (20-way) Module Communications

Pin	Signal Name	Description
1	Vehicle CAN High	Vehicle CAN coms with Upfitter module – DO NOT SPLICE
2	Vehicle CAN Low	Vehicle CAN coms with Upfitter module – DO NOT SPLICE
3	J1939 CAN High	J1939 CAN – blunt cut circuit available on vehicle
4	J1939 CAN Low	J1939 CAN – blunt cut circuit available on vehicle

ECU Sleep States (Quiescent Current)

The Vehicle Integration System Module has 2 sleep states depending on Upfitter Configuration. Default sleep state will only wake from vehicle CAN messages and has the lowest power consumption possible. If configured, the Upfitter Module can wake from Digital and Analog Inputs. During this sleep state the module will have higher quiescent current than in Default. Recommendations regarding Key Off Load should be followed when configuring the Upfitter Module.

Electrical Load Shedding

Vehicle Load Shedding strategy will command Upfitter Module outputs to be switched OFF if it deems it necessary to maintain system Voltage. A total of 60A has been allocated to customer loads. This allocation should be considered when connecting loads to both the Upfitter Module and the non-switched Customer Connection Point 1.

If >60A of electrical consumers have been fitted to the vehicle, there is higher potential for Upfitter Module outputs to be switched OFF.

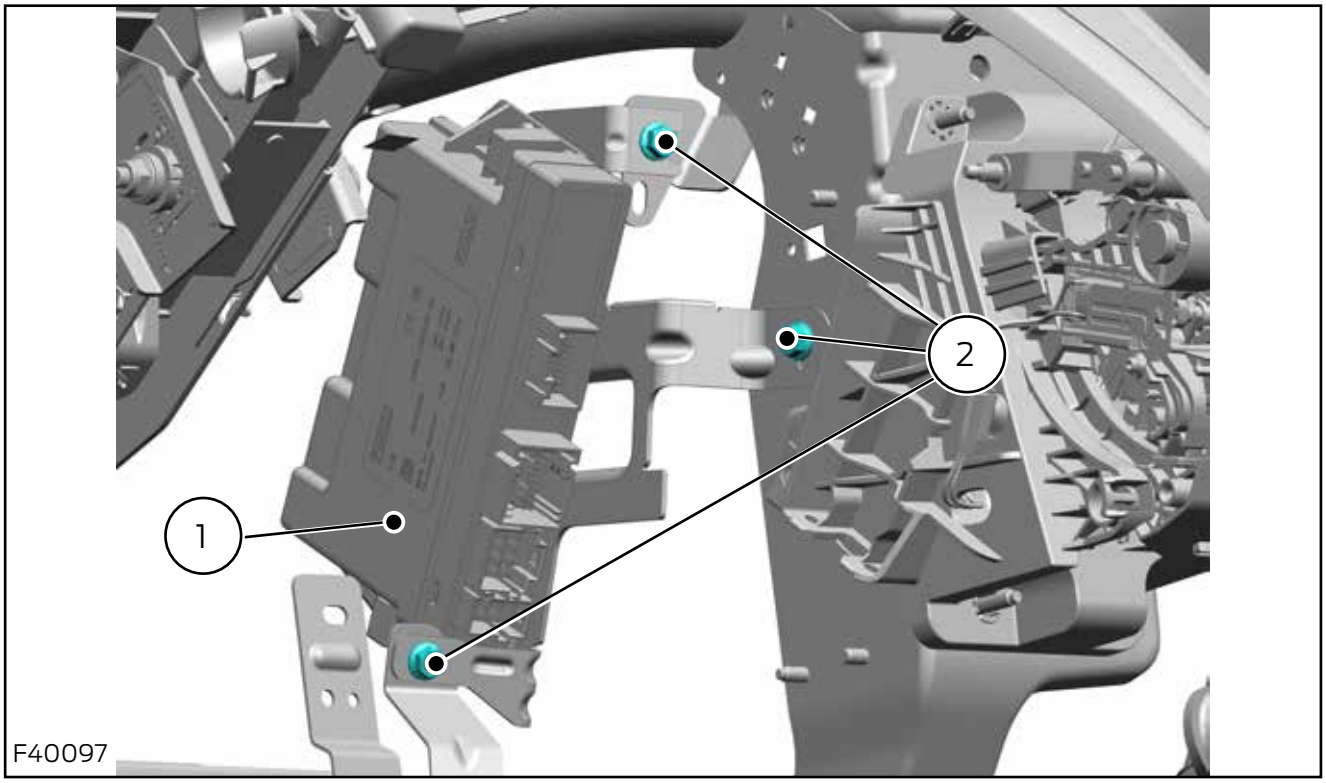
Ordering and Retrofitting

If the Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) is ordered as factory fit, the vehicle will be provided with the module fitted and the upfitter blunt cut wiring stowed in the glovebox. It is possible to retrofit the module and wiring to a vehicle. The matrix below shows list of parts to be ordered for retrofitting the Vehicle Integration System.

Installation Steps to follow:

1. Fit Module (1).
2. Secure Module with 3 x nuts – torque 5.4Nm ± 0.9Nm (2).
3. Connect Wiring Harness to Module and Vehicle.
4. Update Vehicle Configuration – see dealer.

Vehicle Integration System Installation



Parts Required for Retrofitting Vehicle Integration System

Module	Module Wiring	Upfitter Wiring	Fixings
RK3T-14G589-A*	SK4T-14A303-AB*	SK4T-14A303-BB*	3x W520412-S442

Application on Sync/ Soft Switches

Ford infotainment system (center stack display) contains Upfit Controls Application.

This application shall be only used for driver /user secondary control of Upfitter Equipment such as Auxiliary Air Conditioning Systems, sub compartment locking, sirens, beacon lights, chimes which do not directly affect the normal vehicle functions.

The Vehicle Modifiers shall not configure soft switches in Upfit Controls Application that may affect safe operation of the equipment.

Auxiliary Switches

Upfitters must install hard wired buttons or switches where necessary to control functions of heavy equipment like snow plough, salt spreader, lifts, ramps etc. that may affect normal vehicle function.

It is the upfitter's responsibility to make sure that additional safety counter measures related to the operation of heavy equipment are in place.

4.22 Grounding

WARNING: It is recommended to only use one eyelet per stud for high current applications. If more than one eyelet per stud is unavoidable, the highest current eyelet feed must be connected closest to the supply terminal. Do not exceed two eyelets or crimp terminals per stud connection.

CAUTIONS:

Do not use the populated ground points indicated.

Make sure that all ground points are tightened to the correct torque.

NOTE: The Ground Point (GP) numbers are only for reference to show the location of the GP. Ground wires should be brought back to the Ford ground points provided. For very high current users, it is recommended that the ground connection is made directly to the ground point close to the battery ground point.

Refer to 4.6 Battery Protection Additional Loads and Charging Systems section for additional information.

If a new grounding point is required, avoid weather zones, especially for high current grounds. Ground connections should be routed back close to the location of the +12V supply. This helps to reduce the electromagnetic field particularly generated by inrush current and improve electromagnetic compatibility.

For further information, refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides.

Ground wires should be brought back to the Ford ground points provided, please refer to the following figures.

4.22.1 Ground Points - BEV

WARNINGS:

Electrical ground paths for high voltage components (includes low voltage ground points for the high voltage system) must not be utilized as additional ground points for 12 volt system applications.

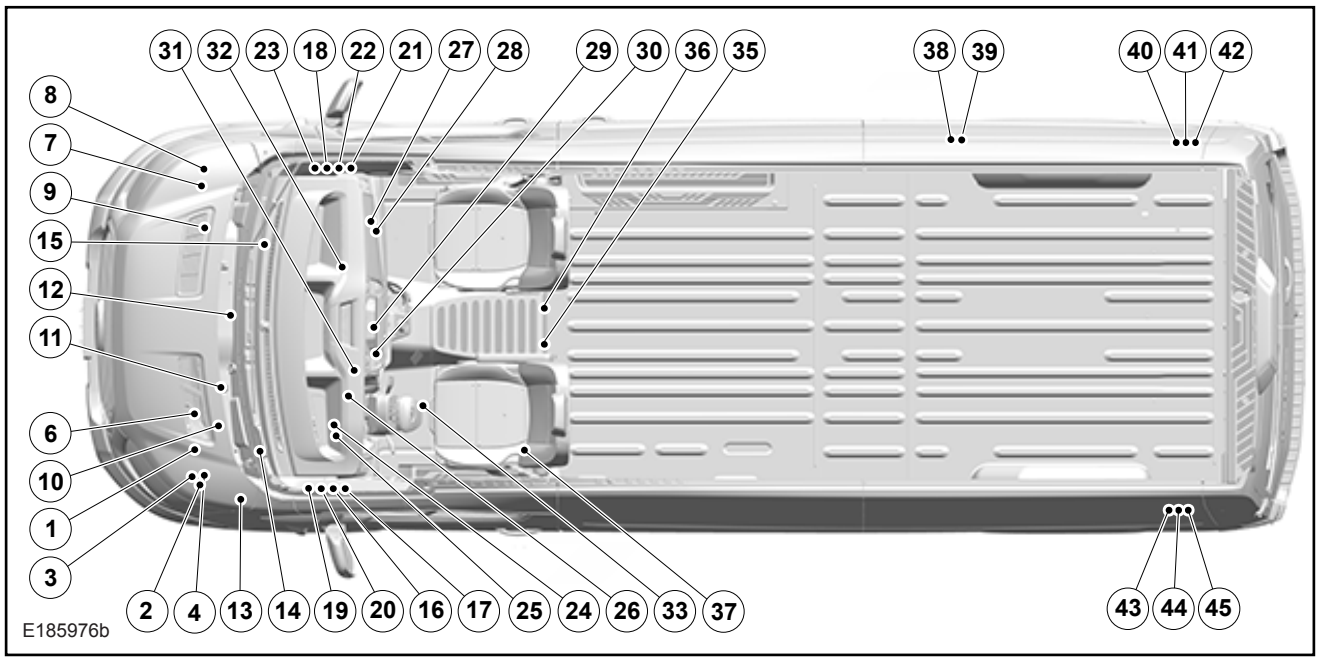
All the high voltage components on the E-Transit BEV are either grounded through the metallic case or through a ground cable/wire or an EMC ground strap. Do not tamper with or modify any of these HV component fastener joints or grounding points.

NOTE: Please refer to the following diagrams for the E-Transit BEV 12V system ground points. Additional ground points can be created by the Vehicle Modifiers on the body (preferable) or chassis. This may be the use of a welded on stud or nut secured to body sheet metal. Requirements for a clean surface to weld to, and for corrosion protection afterwards, should be followed.

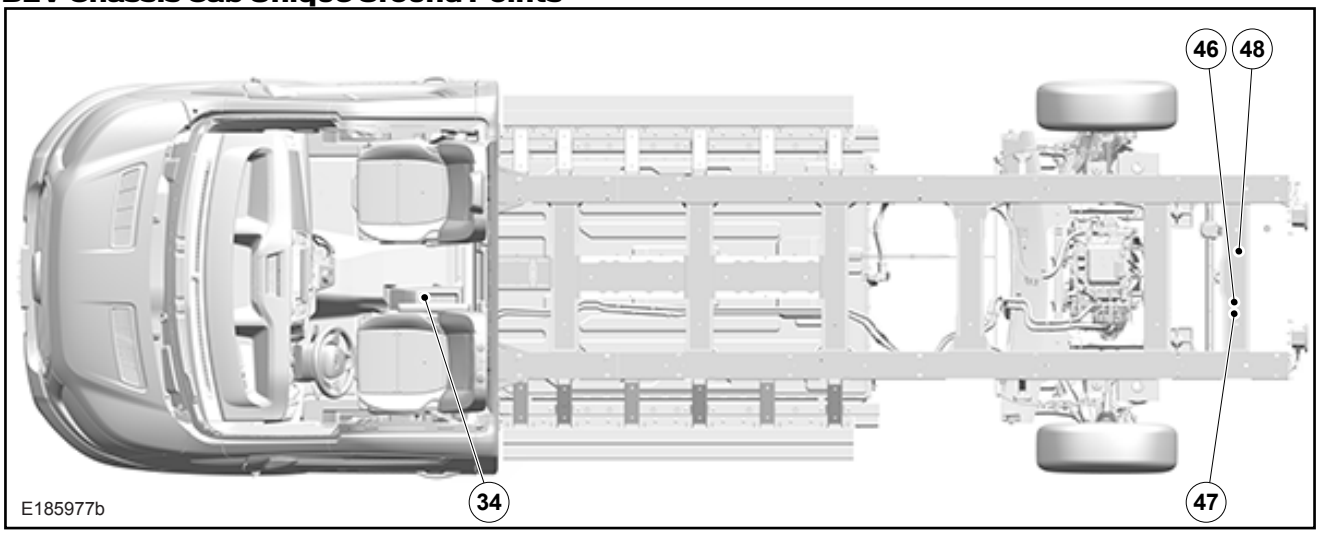
For further information, refer to:

- 5.1.2 Welding/Plasma Cutting
- 5.14 Corrosion Prevention

BEV Van, Wagon and Common Ground Points

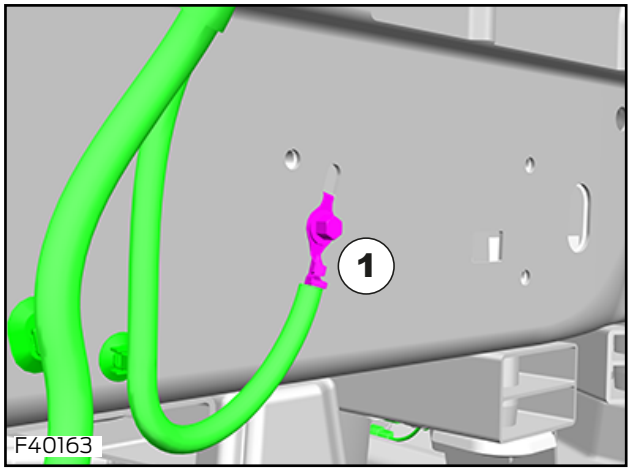


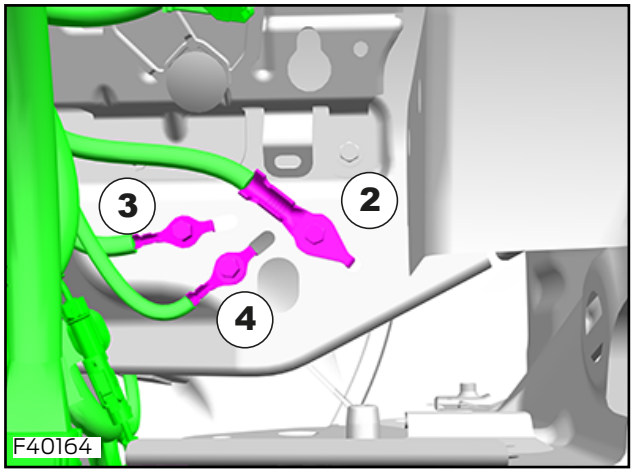
BEV Chassis Cab Unique Ground Points

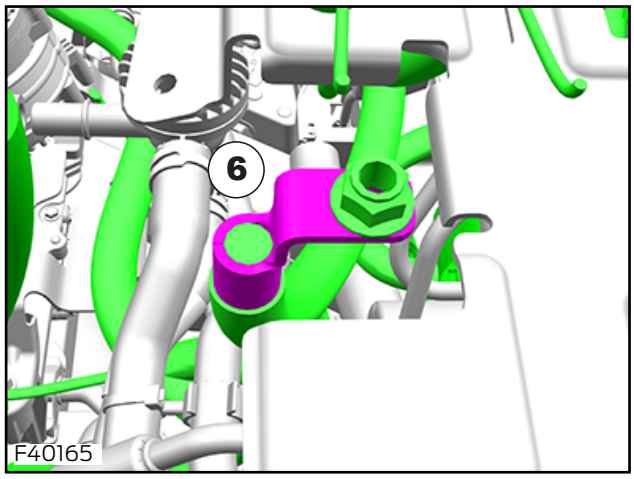


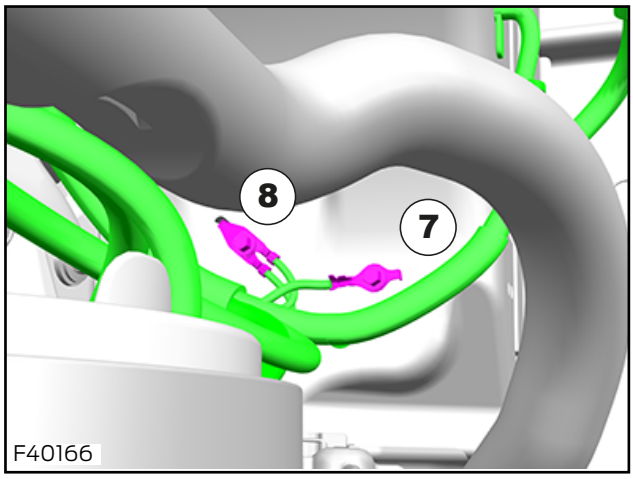
Ground Point	Location	Type (Use of Ground Point)	Body	Power	Harness
1	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
2	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
3	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
4	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
6	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
7	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
8	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
9	Front End Cradle	HV Megabrace Case	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14301
10	Front End Cradle	HV Megabrace Case	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14301
11	Frame Front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
12	Frame Front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
13	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
14	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
15	Frame front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
16	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
17	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
18	A Pillar	Rear ACC	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14659
19	Bodyside Rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	13A409
20	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
21	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
22	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
23	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
24	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14401
25	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14401
26	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14401
27	Frame Front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
28	Frame Front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
29	Frame Front	Engine Bay Megabrace	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14K011
30	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14401
31	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
32	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14401
33	Frame front cross member	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon	BEV	14406
34	Frame front cross member	Fuel Tank Sender	CCB/CW	BEV	14406
35	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
36	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
37	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	BEV	14A005
38	Bracket Body Side	Fuel Tank	Van/Wagon	BEV	14A006
39	Bracket Body Side	Fuel Tank	Van/Wagon	BEV	14A006
40	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
41	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
42	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
43	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
44	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
45	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	BEV	13A409
46	Rear Floor Crossmember	Axle Sensor Rear	CCB/CW	BEV	14A107
47	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	CCB/CW	BEV	13A409
48	Rear Floor Crossmember	Axle Sensor Rear	CCB/CW	BEV	14A107

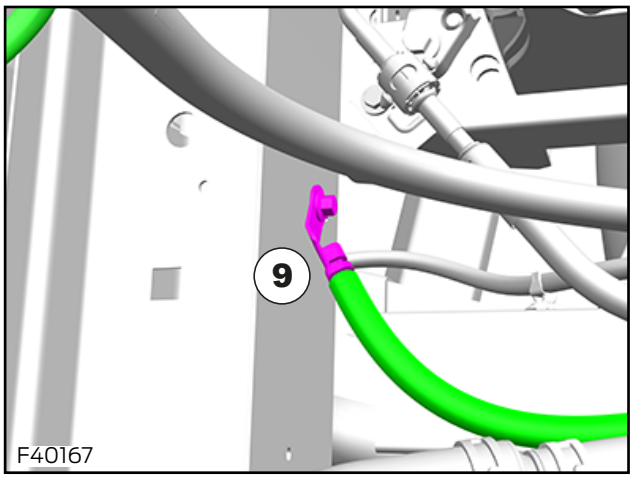
Ford M6 x 1.0, 20mm thread rolling screw - torque 8.85 ft lb (12Nm) ± 1.3 ft lb (± 1.8Nm)
Abbreviations used in table: CCB - Chassis Cab, CW - Cutaway, BEV - Battery Electric Vehicle

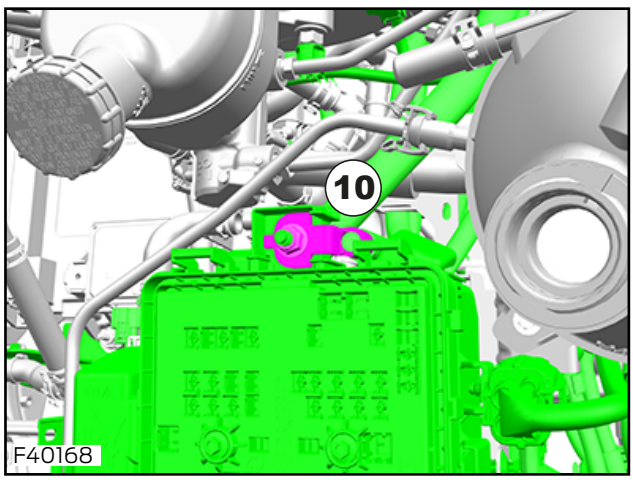

1
F40163

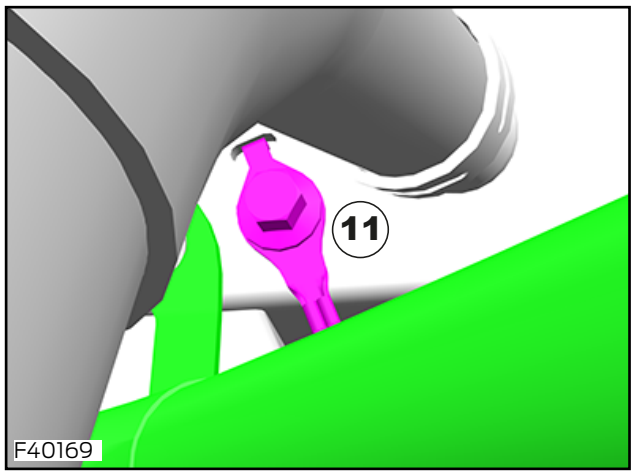

3
2
4
F40164

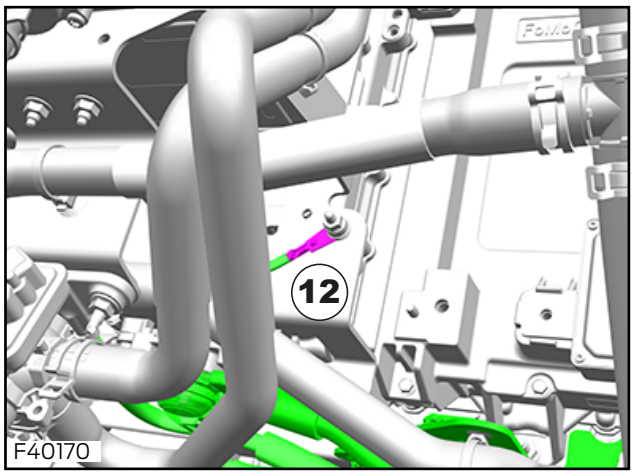

6
F40165

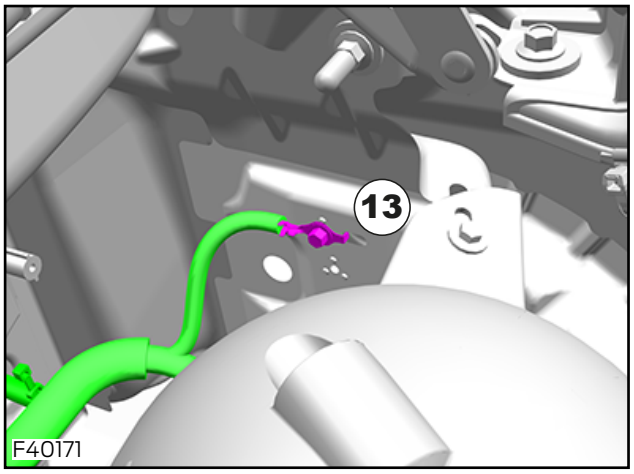

8
7
F40166

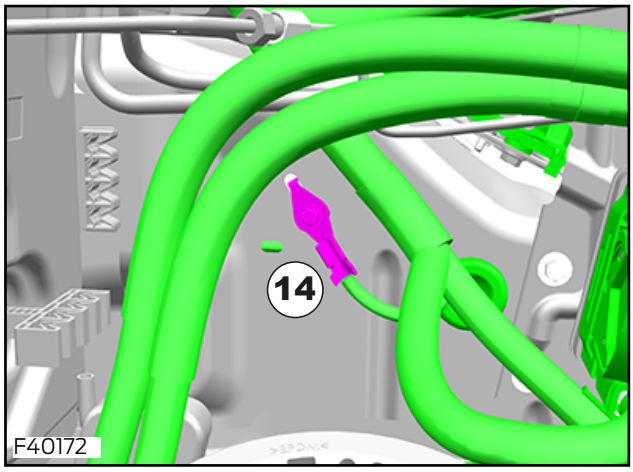

9
F40167

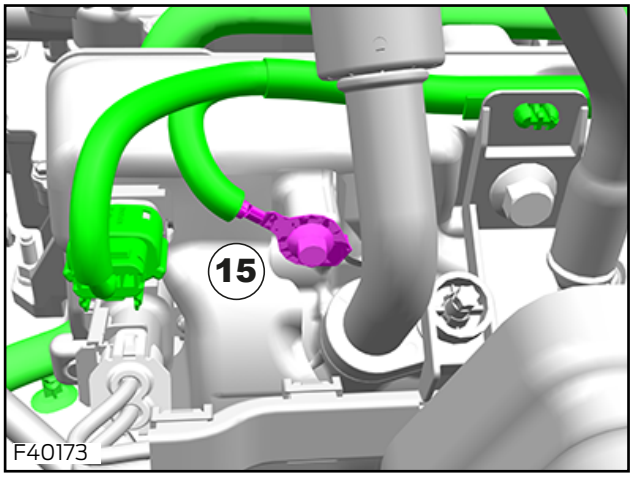

10
F40168

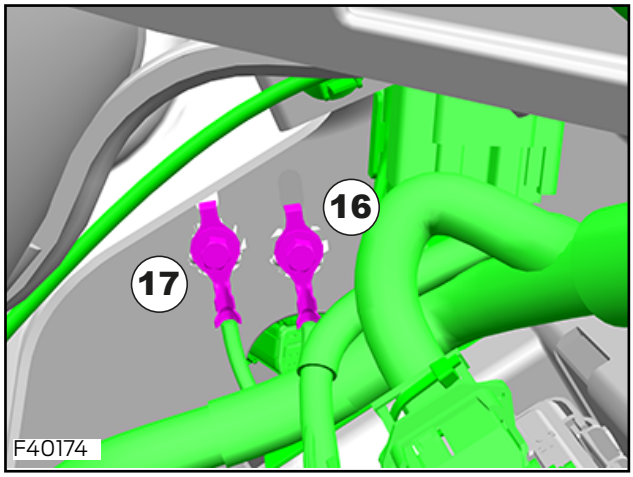

11
F40169

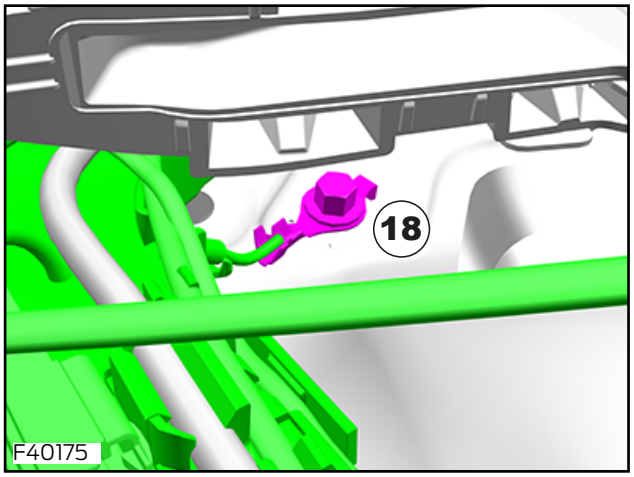

12
F40170

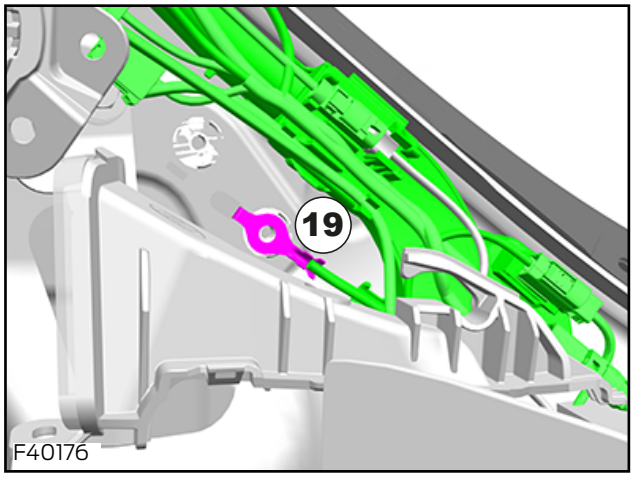

13
F40171

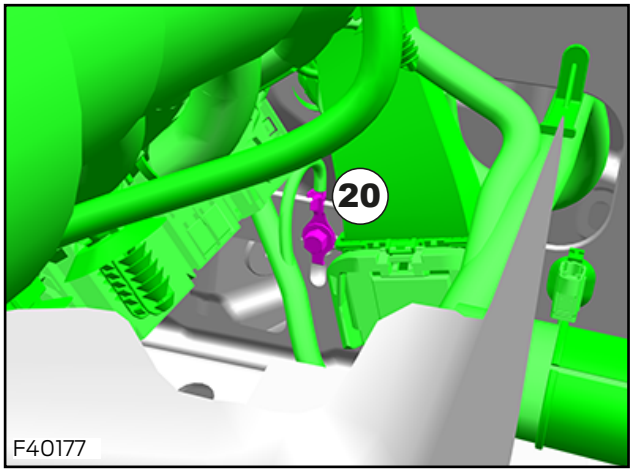

14
F40172

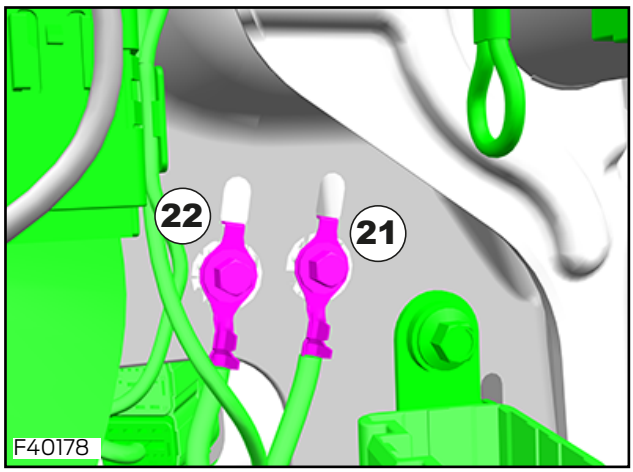

15
F40173

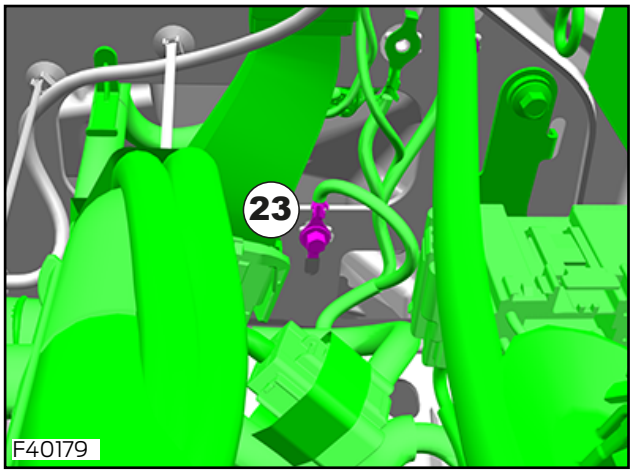

16
17
F40174

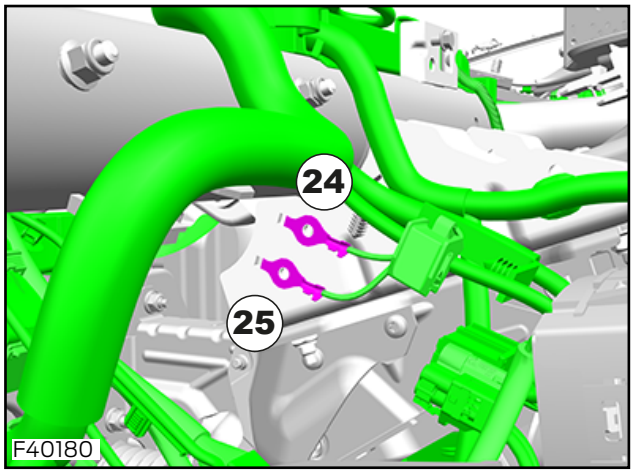

18
F40175

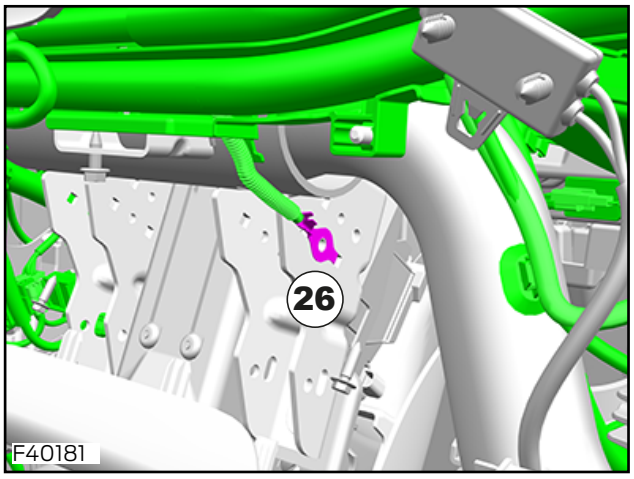

19
F40176

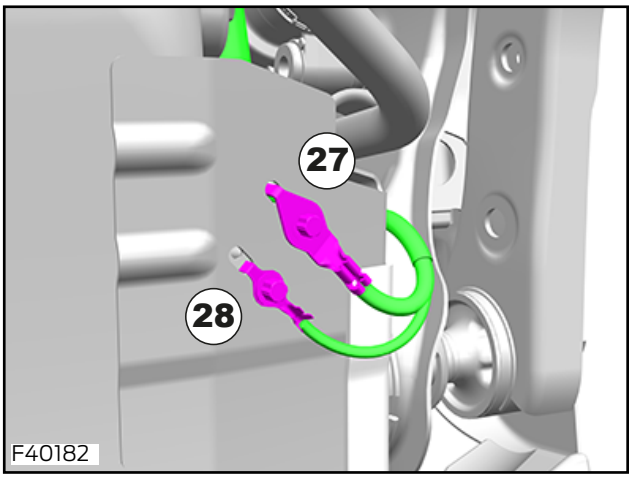

20
F40177

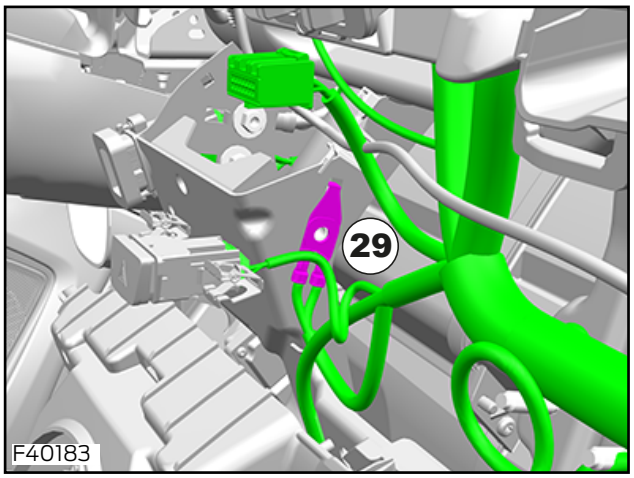

22
21
F40178

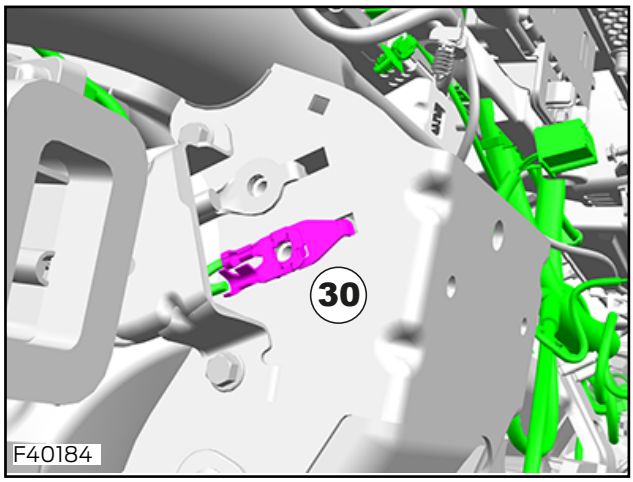

23
F40179

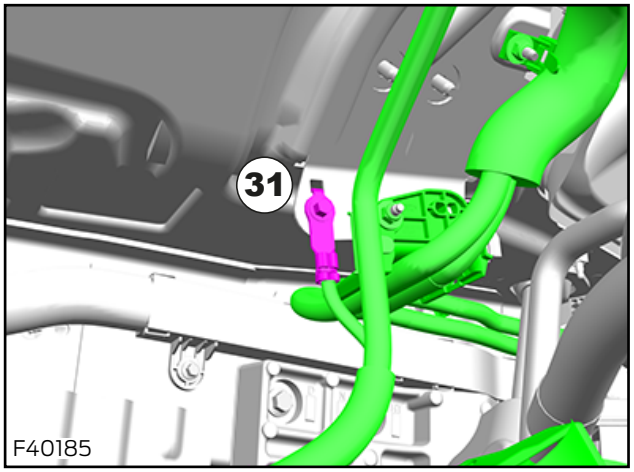

24
25
F40180

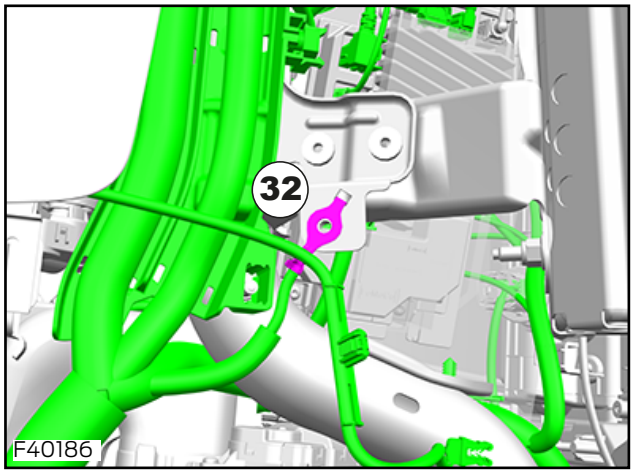

26
F40181

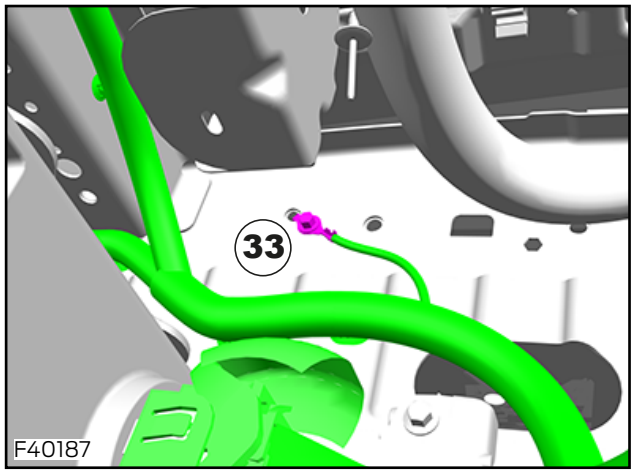

27
28
F40182

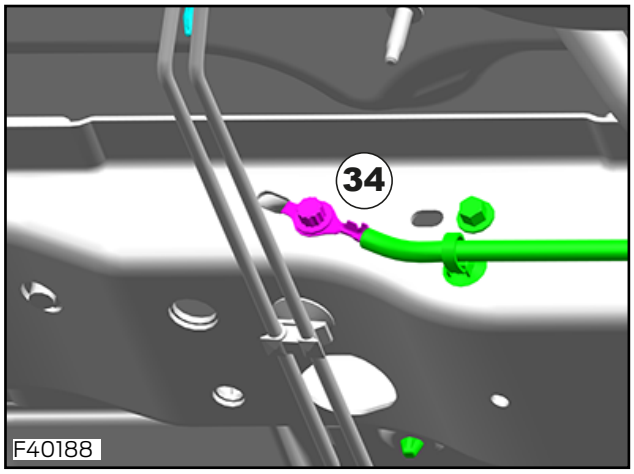

29
F40183

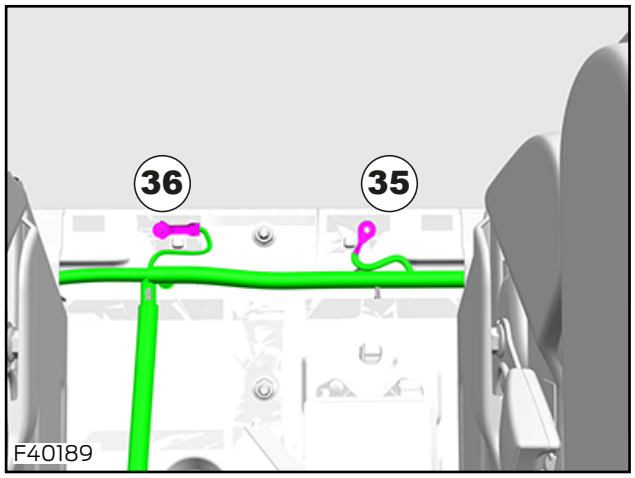

30
F40184

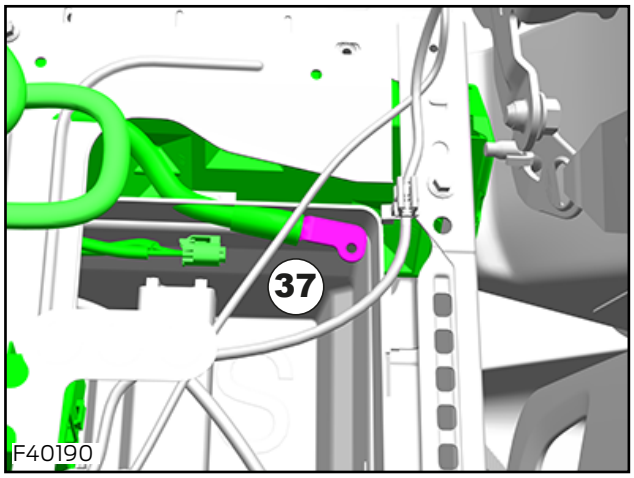

31
F40185

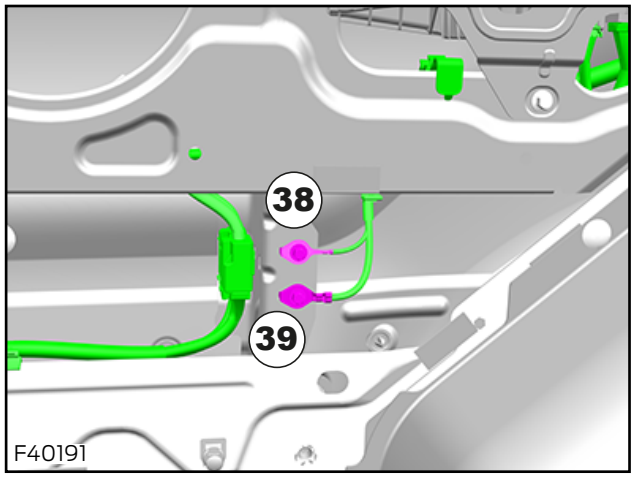

32
F40186

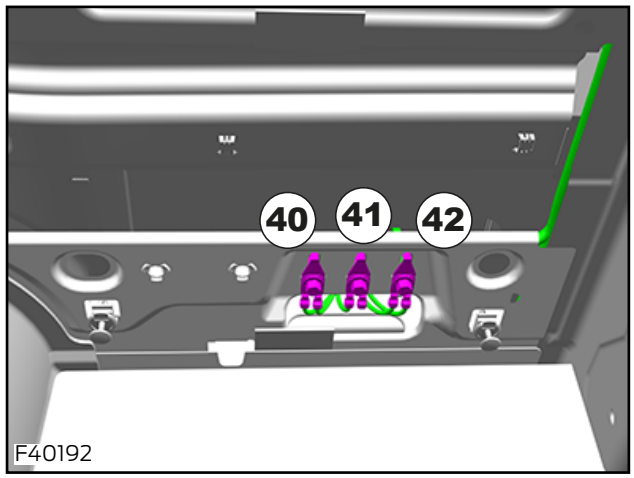

33
F40187

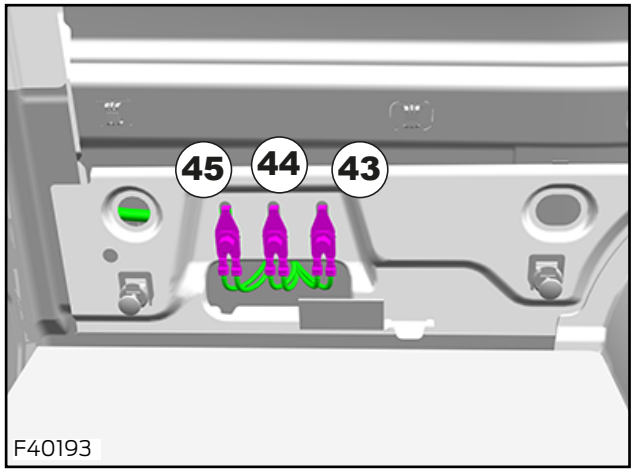

34
F40188

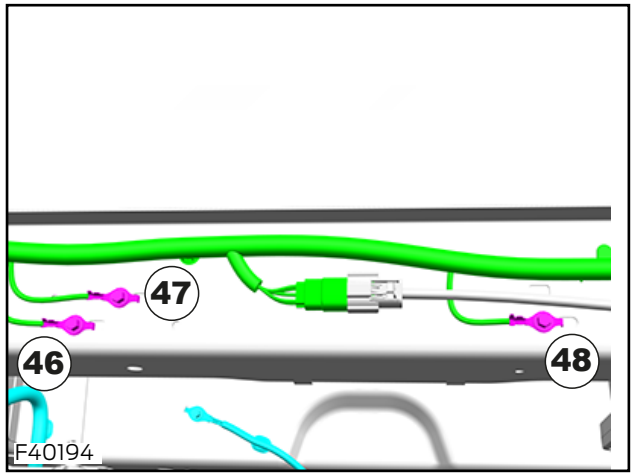

36
35
F40189


37
F40190


38
39
F40191

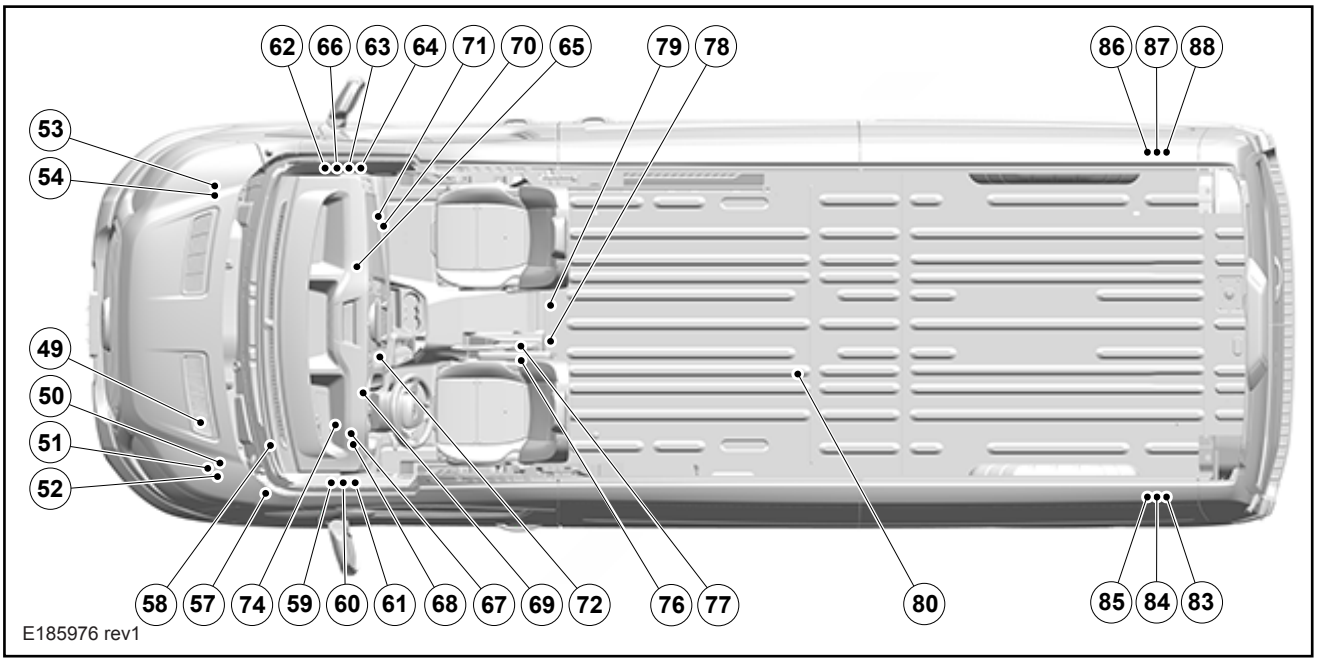

40
41
42
F40192


45
44
43
F40193

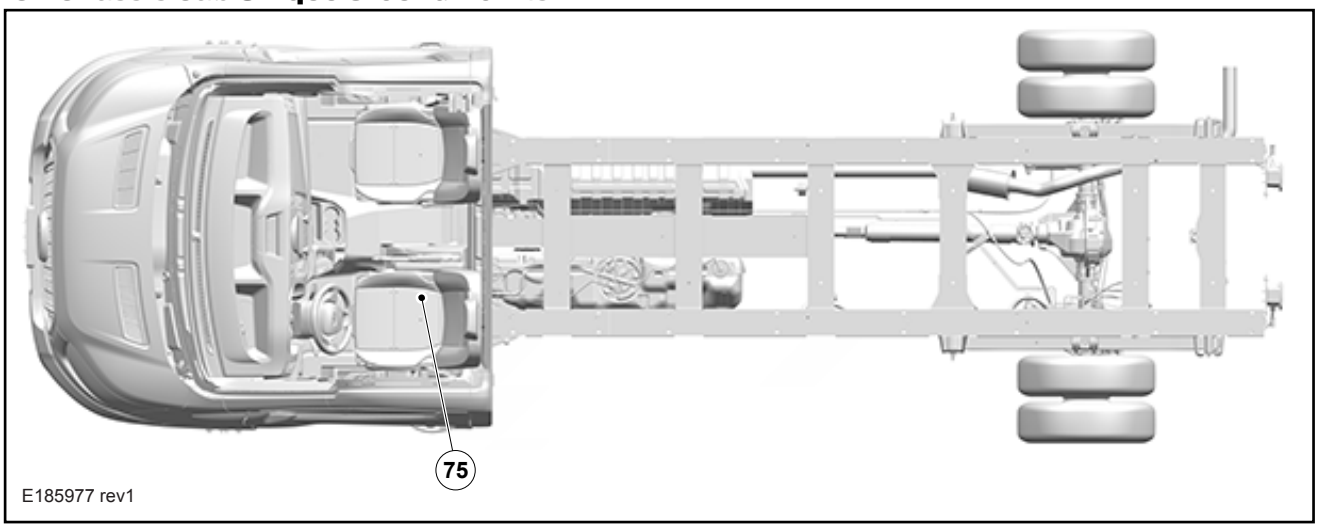

47
46
48
F40194

4.22.2 Ground Points - ICE

ICE Van, Wagon and Common Ground Points

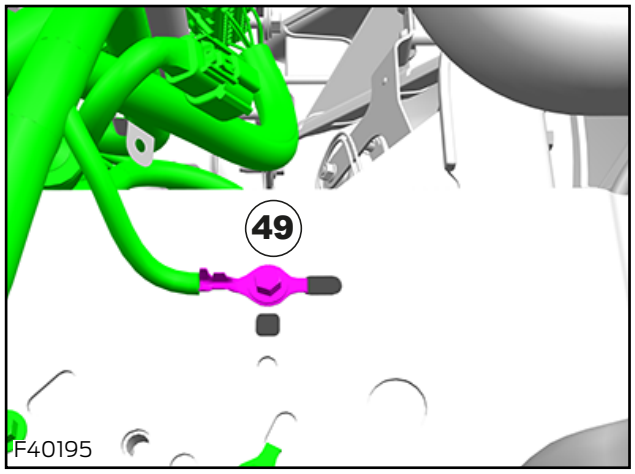


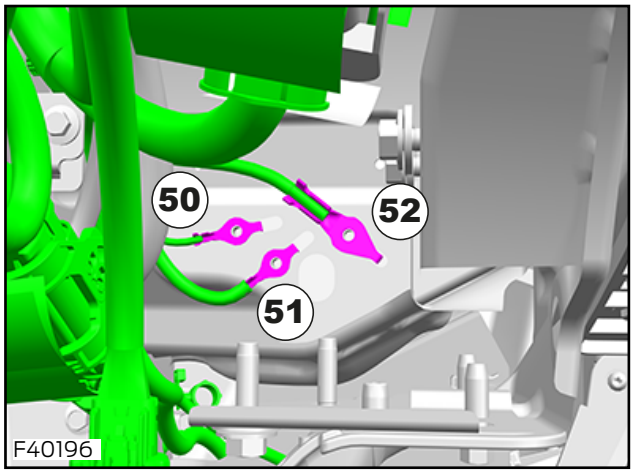
ICE Chassis Cab Unique Ground Points

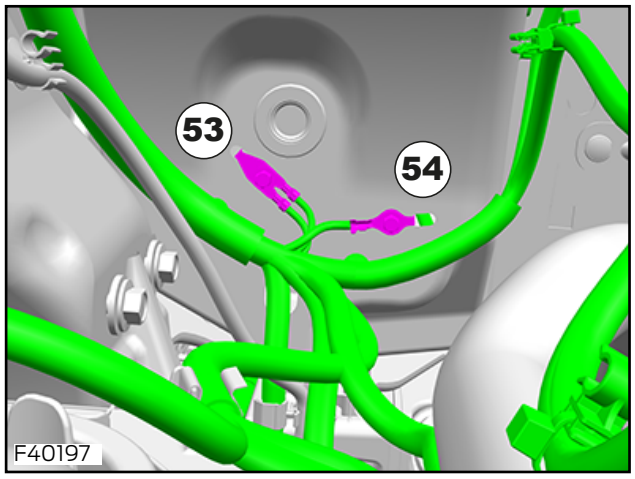


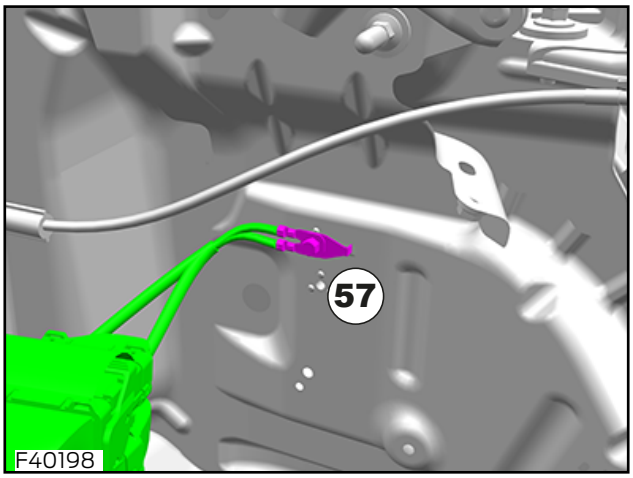
Ground Point	Location	Type (Use of Ground Point)	Body	Power	Harness
49	Engine Bay Side Inner	Exhaust Gas Gauge	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14290
50	Engine Bay Side Inner	Exhaust Gas Gauge	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14290
51	Engine Bay Side Inner	Exhaust Gas Gauge	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14290
52	Engine Bay Side Inner	Exhaust Gas Gauge	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14290
53	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
54	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
57	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
58	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
59	Bodyside Rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	13A409
60	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
61	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
62	A Pillar	Rear ACC	Van/Wagon	ICE	14659
63	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
64	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
65	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14401
66	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
67	CrossCarBeam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14401
68	CrossCarBeam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14401
69	CrossCarBeam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14401
70	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14406
71	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14406
72	Cross Car Beam	Instrument Panel	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14401
74	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
75	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	CCB/CW	ICE	14406
76	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14406
77	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14406
78	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
79	Front Floor/Turret/Fender	Wire Assy Main	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14A005
80	Frame Front Crossmember	Fuel Tank Sender	Van/Wagon, CCB/CW	ICE	14406
83	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409
84	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409
85	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409
86	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409
87	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409
88	Bodyside rear	Rear Lamp Connector	Van/Wagon	ICE	13A409

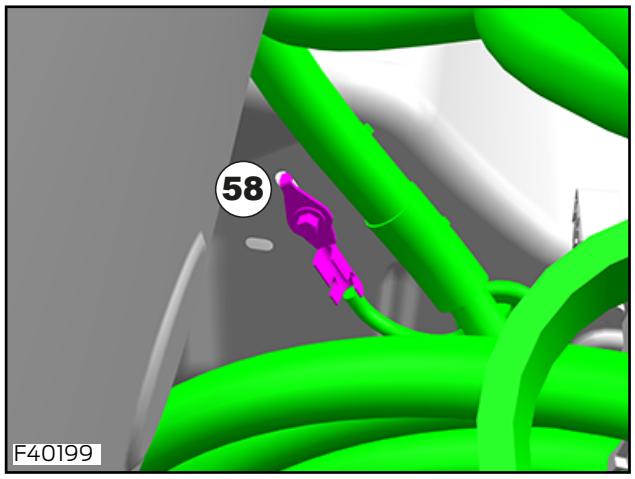
Ford M6 x 1.0, 20mm thread rolling screw - torque 8.85 ft lb (12Nm) ± 1.3 ft lb (± 1.8Nm)
Abbreviations used in table: CCB - Chassis Cab, CW - Cutaway, BEV - Battery Electric Vehicle

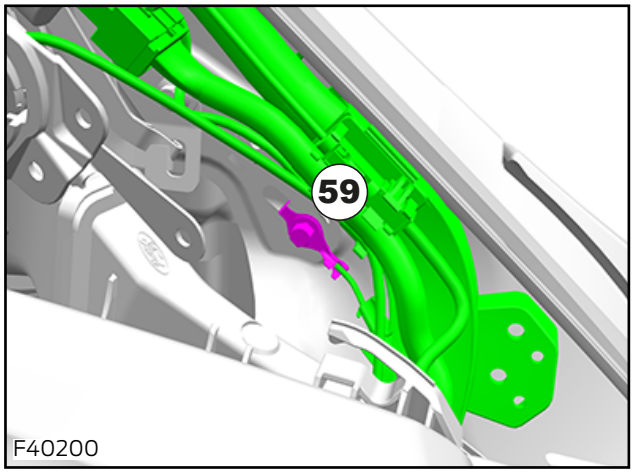

49
F40195

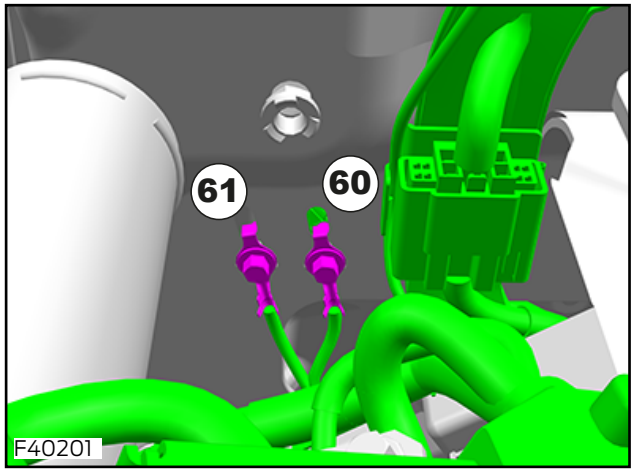

50
52
51
F40196

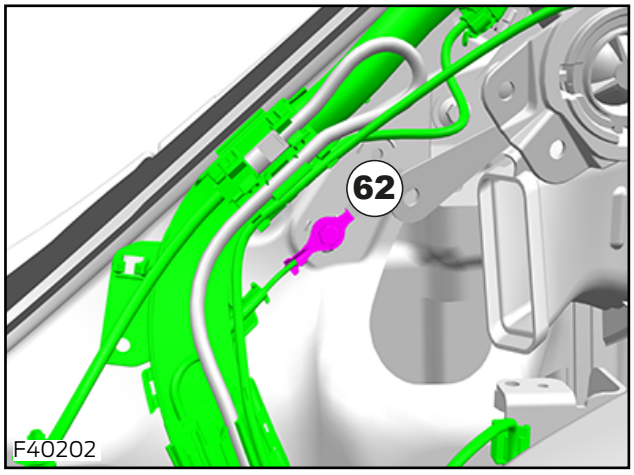

53
54
F40197

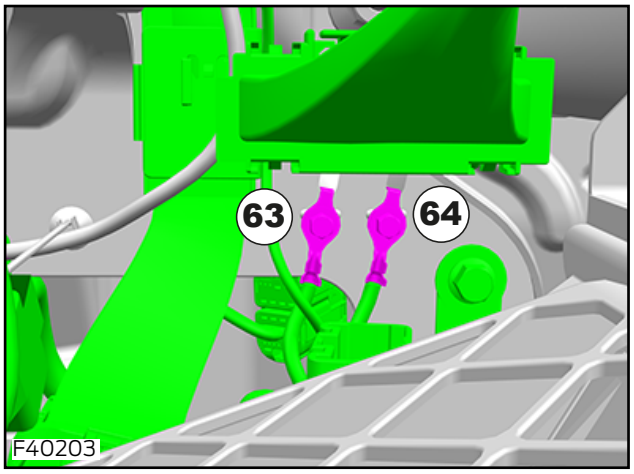

57
F40198

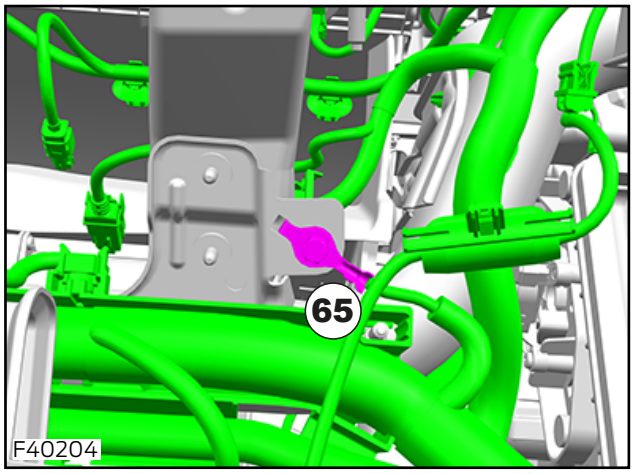

58
F40199

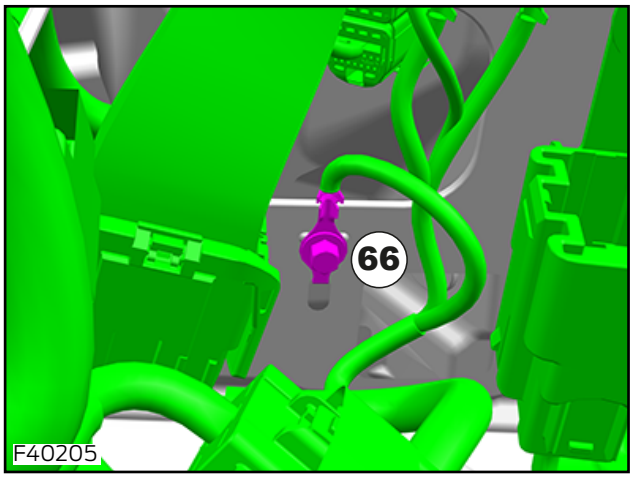

59
F40200

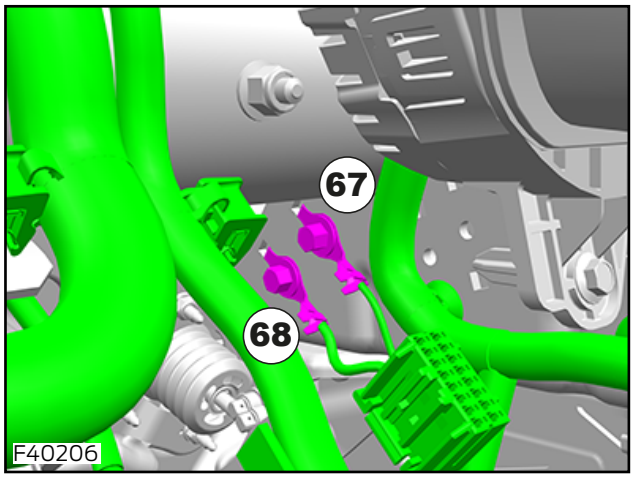

61
60
F40201

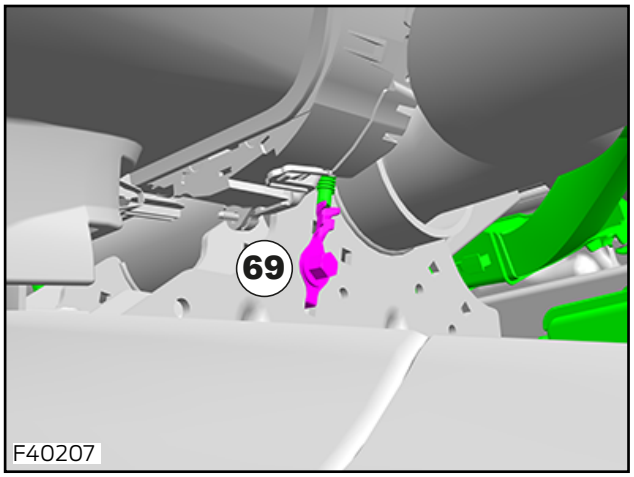

62
F40202

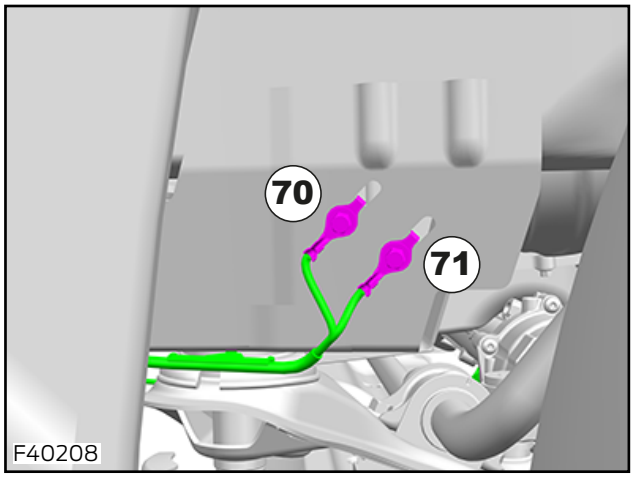

63
64
F40203

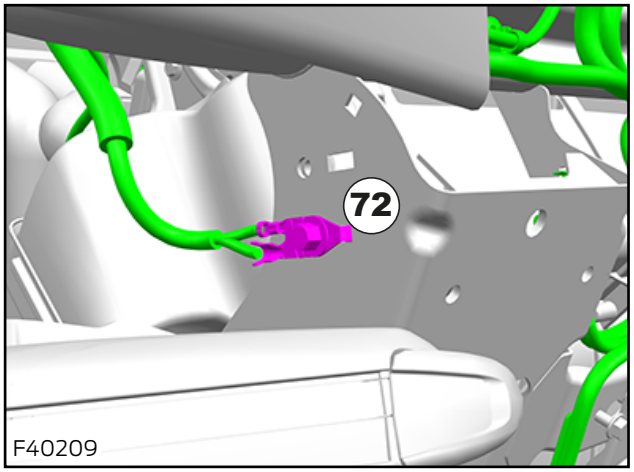

65
F40204

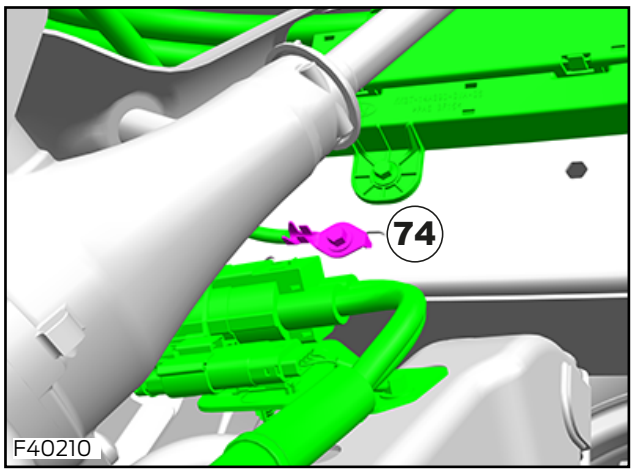

66
F40205

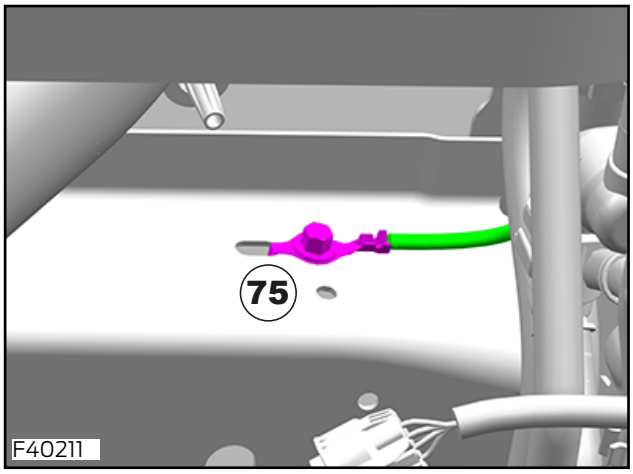

67
68
F40206

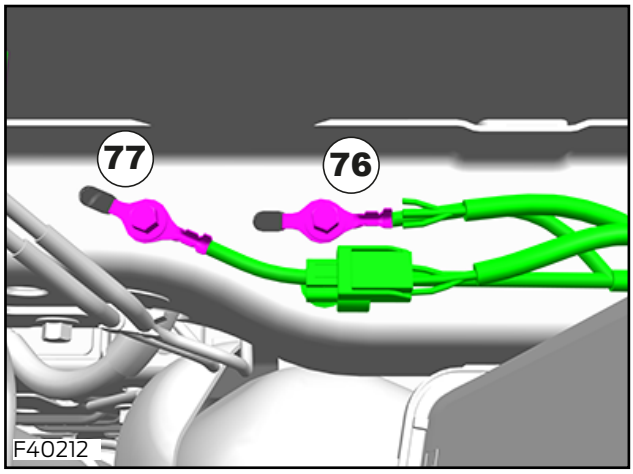

69
F40207

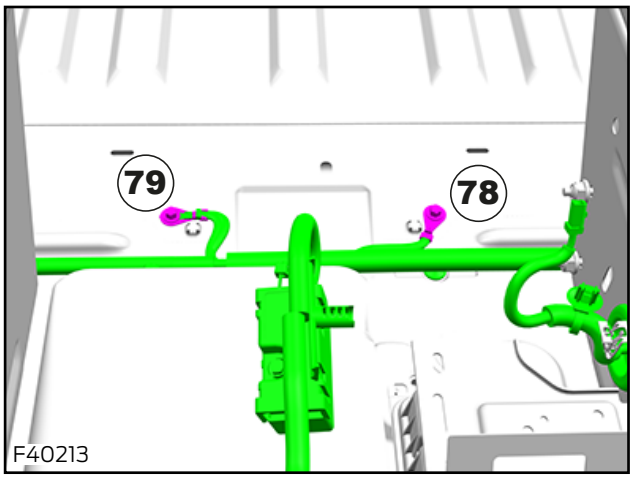

70
71
F40208

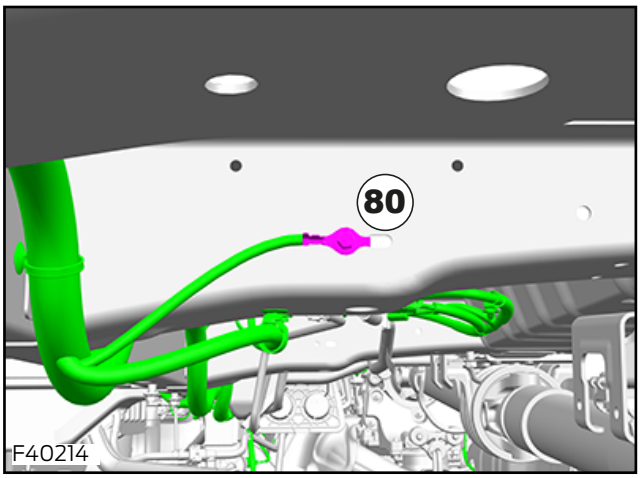

72
F40209

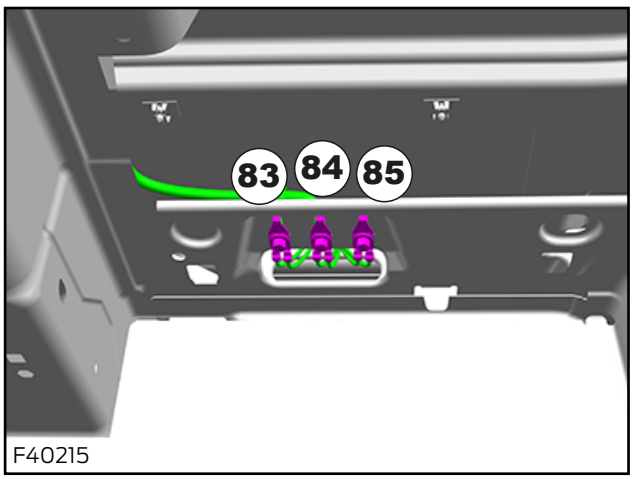

74
F40210

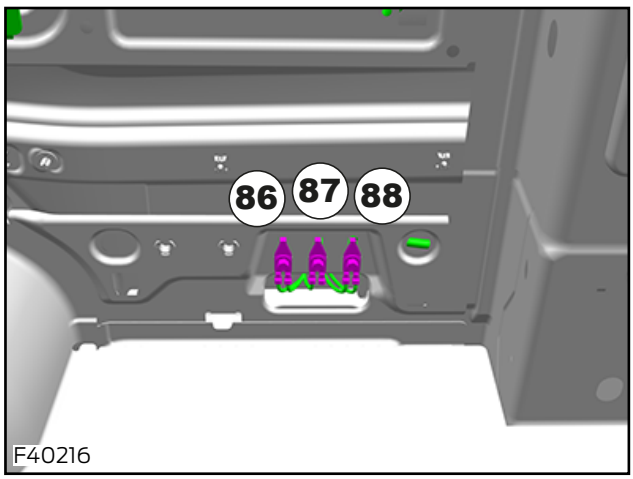

75
F40211


77
76
F40212


79
78
F40213


80
F40214


83
84
85
F40215


86
87
88
F40216

4.23 Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Relocation - General Information - Section added

CAUTIONS:

The instructions in sections 4.23 and 4.24 must be followed to guarantee performance of the systems. Any deviations to the instructions may result in failure or reduced functionality of the systems for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible. Appropriate tests must be conducted by Vehicle Modifier to ensure durability and functionality of the system after installation.

All tolerances, positions, angles, and calibration criteria in this document are provided to ensure your system meets the same system performance that has been tested and calibrated by Ford.

NOTE: The painting of sensor pods / rear sensors is not recommended as there is a risk of performance degradation. Any such painting must be followed by validation of correct function.

NOTE: Any materials covering sensor pods/rear sensors such as stickers or vinyl wraps must not be applied.

The content in this section is valid for both Chassis Cabs and Cutaways.

4.23.1 Important Information

This feature is incorporated into DAT PACK #15 (DBCAT) as an orderable option for N1 vehicles and it requires rear facing radars. On a Cutaway and lightweight chassis, the rear radars are located in the radar pod housing which is supplied in the kit.

Advanced Driver Assistance Systems

The following Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) features are included on Chassis Cabs and Cutaways with DAT PACK #15 and are dependent on the correct function of the radar sensors.

BLIS – Blind Spot Information System (active >10km/h)

LBLS – Low Blind Spot Assist (Low Speed BLIS active from 0km/h)

CTA – Cross Traffic Alert

BTT – BLIS with Trailer Tow (available on Chassis Cab only)
CEA – Clear Exit Alert (available on Chassis Cab only)

4.23.2 Mandatory Requirements

The following criteria must be met for the BLIS system to function correctly.

1. The radar Field of View (FOV) must not be blocked.
2. The radar's physical location must match location stored within the ADAS module.
3. The converted vehicles overall length must be stored in the ADAS module.

4.23.3 Tolerances

The tolerances to position the BLIS radar have been detailed in this section.

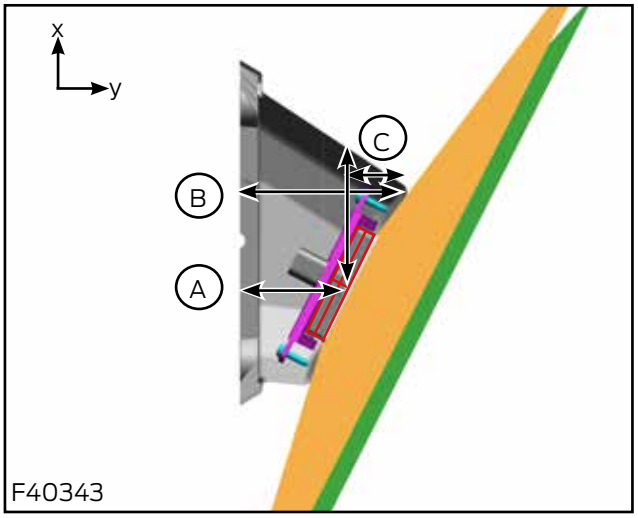
The tolerance reference point is the center on the front (outward) face of the radar.

These tolerances are applicable to both the under-run supplied radar and the pod radar.

Radar Location Tolerances

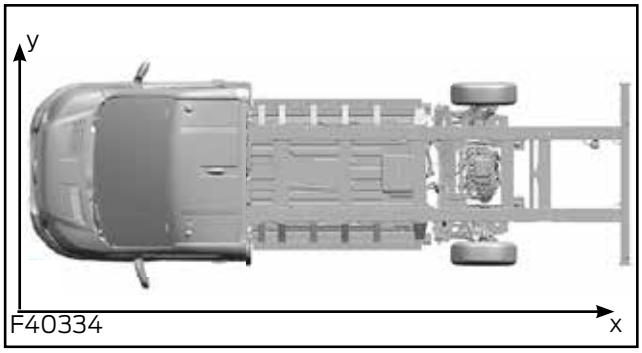
The tolerances of the radar position are shown in the table below 'as calibrated'. 'As calibrated' positions are available in the Calibration Tables for the respective vehicle sections.

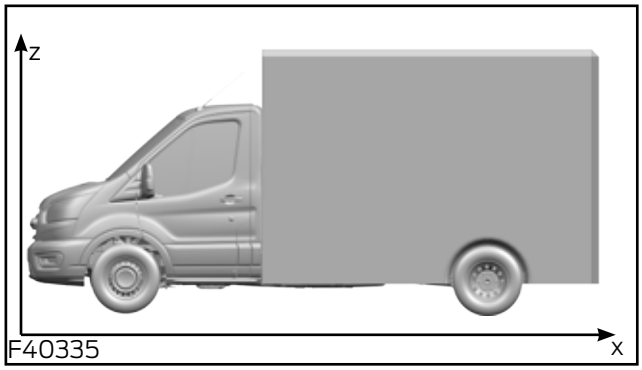
For Cutaway, refer to section 4.24.5 Chassis Cab/ Cutaway Calibration Table



Item	Measurement
A	62.86 mm
B	95.20 mm
C	32.38 mm

Plane	Radar Location Tolerance
X	+/- 50 mm
Y	+/- 25 mm
Z	+/- 200 mm

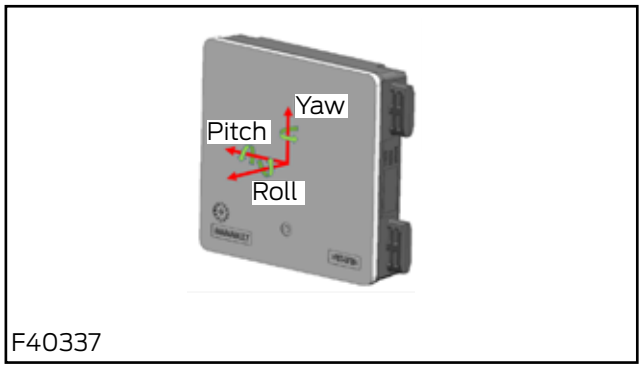




Radar Angular Tolerances

The angular orientation of the radar front face cannot be adjusted from its factory fitted orientation. There are tolerances associated with the fitment, but they do not allow for any customer adjustment.

Angular Tolerances table shows allowed angular tolerances.



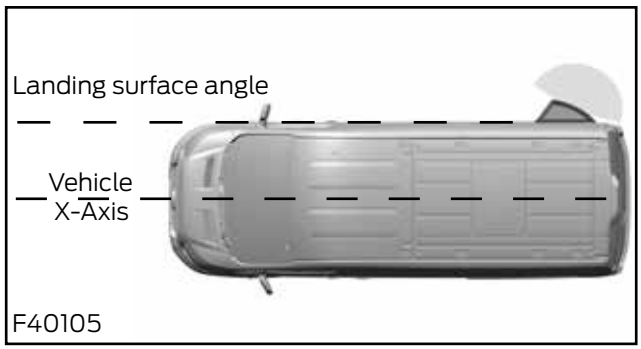
Angular Tolerances	Under-Run Bar	Radar Pod	Tolerance
Yaw	33º	27º	+/- 3º
Pitch	0º	0º	+/- 3º
Roll	0º	0º	+/- 3º

Yaw Angle

The yaw angle (α) is the angle measured between the back face of the radar to the side of the vehicle.

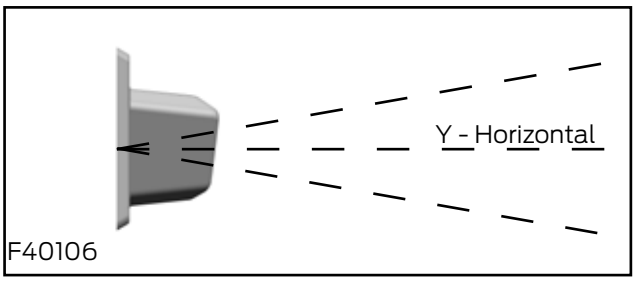
Landing surface of sensor pods should be mounted on surface parallel to vehicle X-Axis.

Allowed tolerance deviations are +/- 3 º.



Pitch Angle

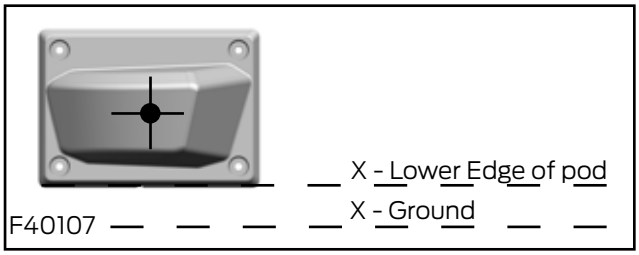
Sensor Pitch Angle should be 0º = horizontal
Allowed tolerance deviations are +/- 3º.



Sensor Roll Angle

Sensor Roll Angle should be horizontally 0º.

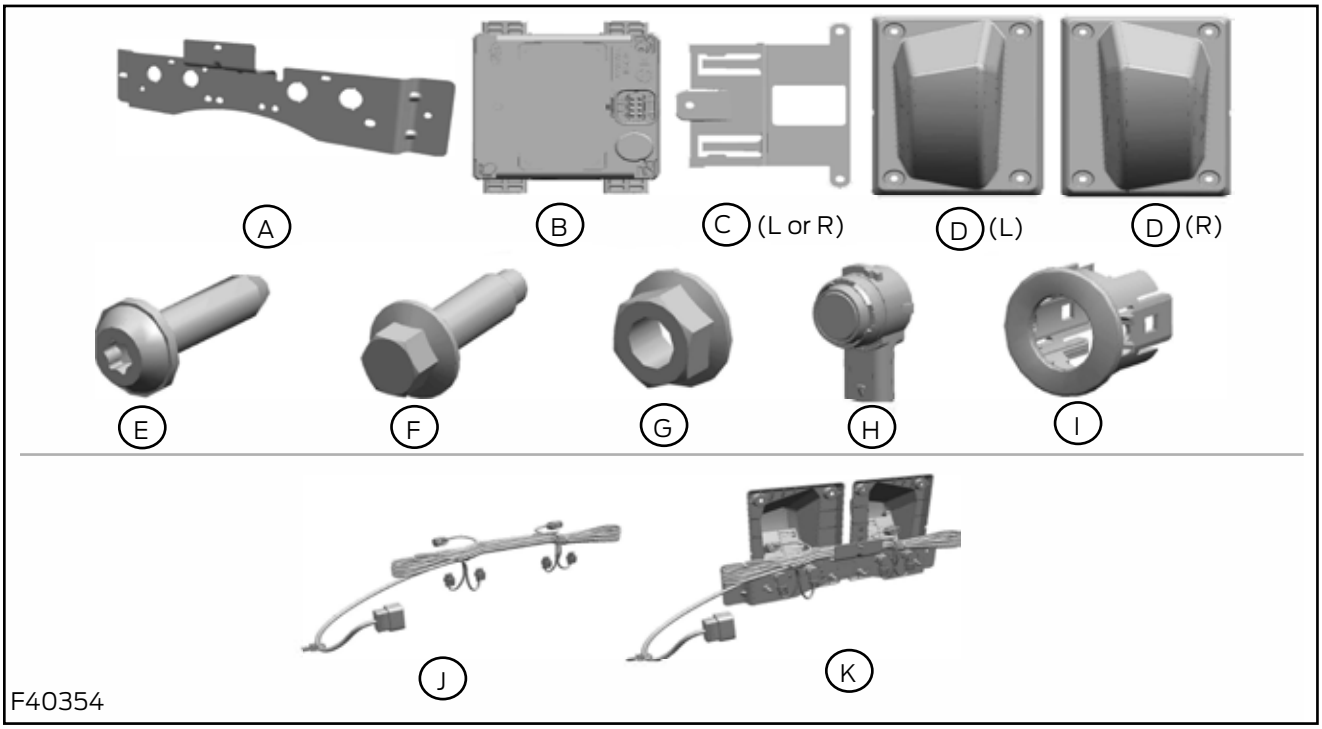
Allowed tolerance deviations +/- 3º.



4.24 BLIS Radar Relocation Guidance for Chassis Cab/ Cutaways - Section added

CAUTION The radar pods have not been homologated by Ford and the converter is responsible for seeking homologation approval with the correct authorities.

4.24.1 BLIS and Park Aid Installation Kit



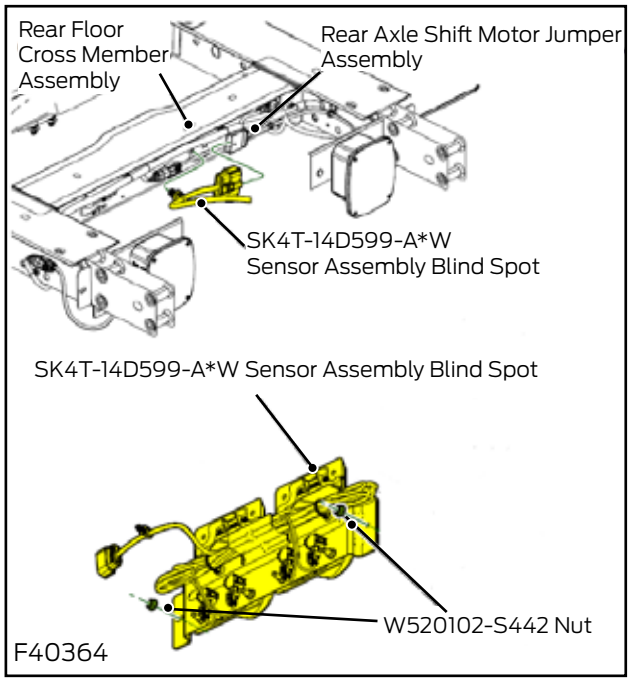
F40354

Item	Quantity	Part Number	Description
Bracket			
A	1	RK3T-14D190-A*	Sensor Bracket BLIS and PDC
BLIS			
B	2	ML3T-14H031-A*	BLIS Radar
C (L)	1	RK3T-14D189-B*	Radar Bracket Left
C (R)	1	RK3T-14D189-C*	Radar Bracket Right
D (R)	1	RK3T-14D188-A*	BLIS Housing Right
D (L)	1	RK3T-14D189-A*	BLIS Housing Left
E	4	W506945-S450B	Screw 4x16 PC TI TFP TH
F	4	W520413-S450B	SC M08x1.25x25.0 HEX FLNG HD PIL
G	4	W500224-S439	Nut M8 HF 8
Park Aid			
H	4	NU5T-15K859-B*	Park Aid Sensor
I	4	JK2T-15K872-C*	PA Sensor Bracket Holders
Wiring Harness			
J	1	SK4T-15K868-AD*	Wiring Harness
K	1	SK4T-14D599-A*	BLIS and PDC total assembly

4.24.2 Disassembly Instructions for Delivered BLIS & Park Aid Packaging

BLIS and Park Aid wiring harness is located on the rear floor cross member assembly and found already connected to the vehicle main harness. In order to install BLIS assembly the steps below must be followed :

1-Disconnect BLIS & Park Aid wiring harness connector from main vehicle harness in figure F40364.


Rear Floor Cross Member Assembly
Rear Axle Shift Motor Jumper Assembly
SK4T-14D599-A*W Sensor Assembly Blind Spot
SK4T-14D599-A*W Sensor Assembly Blind Spot
W520102-S442 Nut
F40364

2- Remove BLIS & Park Aid (SK4T-14D599-A*W) assembly from the vehicle. Unscrew 2 bolts W520102-S442 in figure F40364.

3- Remove SK4T-15K868-AD* wiring harness:

- Disconnect connectors – 2x BLIS Radar & 4x PA sensors depending on the ordered package.
- Take out 2x fir tree fasteners.

4-Remove 2x BLIS assembly (Housing + Radar + Radar Bracket) if BLIS is ordered:

- Unscrew 4x W500224-S439 nuts and 4x W520413-S450B screws.

5-Remove 4x PA sensors and holders if PA is ordered.

6-The EOL Bracket (RK3T-14D190-A*) part is no longer required and can be recycled.

7-Please find an instruction giving key guidelines to where to install, for a fully functional system.

4.24.3 BLIS Radar Installation Considerations

CAUTIONS:
Before beginning to drill holes ensure that the placements of the BLIS Sensor Pods are within the tolerances specified. Area and placement are crucial.

See 4.23.3 Tolerances section for the required tolerances and angles that should be used to achieve required placement.

The Sensor Field of View, Yaw, Pitch and Roll angles need to be considered.

Ensure to meet the following mandatory criteria when positioning the radar

1. The radar Field of View (FOV) must not be blocked.
2. The radar's physical location must match location stored within the ADAS module (Table 1).
3. Overall vehicle length must be stored in the ADAS module.

Refer to 4.23.2 Mandatory Requirements.

The radar is very sensitive to orientation and reflections from the material that the cover / housing is made from. Therefore, it is strongly recommended not to make own housing, instead to repurpose the housing that is supplied.

Vehicle Width

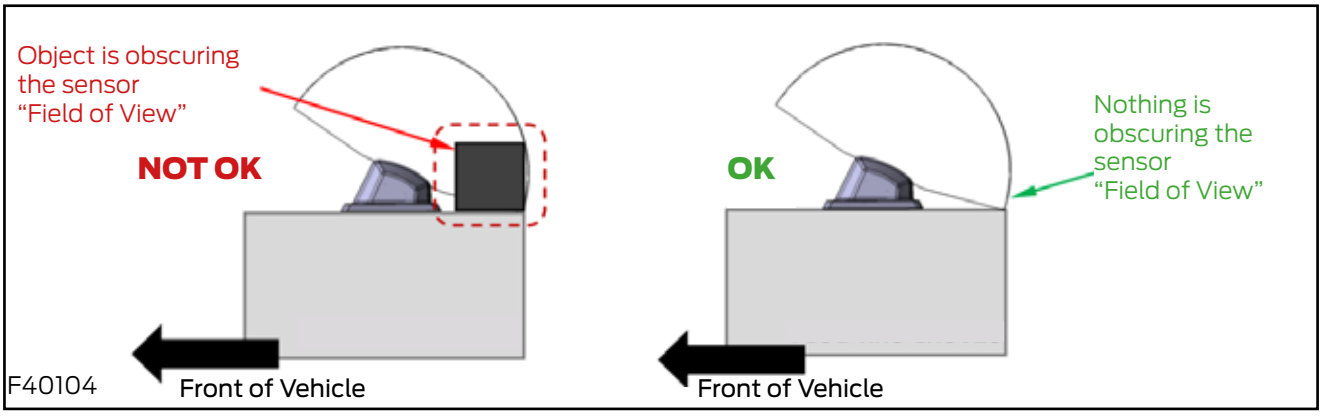
CAUTION: Please consider the maximum allowable vehicle width including the BLIS sensor pods during conversion the Sensor field needs to be free of obstructions.

4.24.4 Chassis Cab/Cutaway Field of View

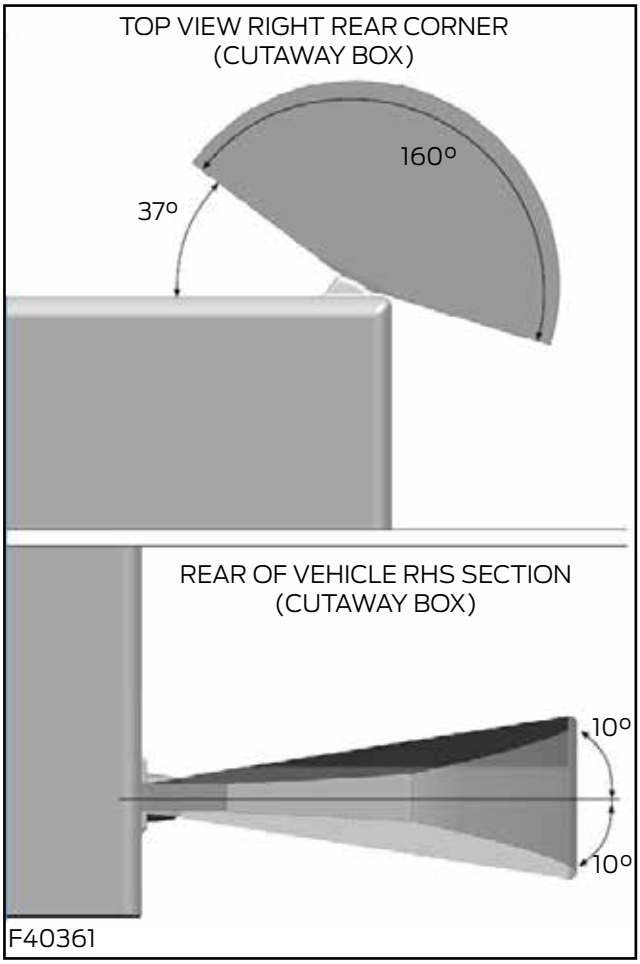
The BLIS radar Pods have a field of view of 160º.

The radar has a projection of +/- 10º, for a total of 20º.

See F40104 and F40361 for further details.



Chassis Cab/Cutaway Field of View of the Rear Corner BLIS Radar Pod



4.24.5 Chassis Cab/Cutaway Calibration Table

Radar Angular positions in section 4.23.3 Tolerances shows the X, Y and Z radar positions as calibrated within the ADAS module. These values are only applicable to the radar pods that are supplied for Cutaway vehicles.

In addition to the calibrated positions, changing the 'overall vehicle length' variable which is calibrated into each vehicle must also be considered to maintain proper system functionality.

Following Table 1 and 2 show the calibrated positions of the rear corner BLIS radar pod, however Table 2 shows the allowed positional tolerances applied. No further tolerances are allowable with Table 2.

Table 1	**Chassis Cab(CCAB)/Cutaway "As Calibrated" Values**				
Length	**L1**	**L2**	**L3**	**L4**	**L5**
Vehicle Type	90	91	92	93	94
Vertical Position (z)	600	600	600	600	600
Longitudinal Position (x)	5400	5900	6400	6900	7400
Lateral Position (y)	1050	1050	1050	1050	1050

Table 2	**CCAB/Cutaway "As Calibrated" Values (including Tolerances)**				
Length	**L1**	**L2**	**L3**	**L4**	**L5**
Vehicle Type	90	91	92	93	94
Vertical Position (z)	400-800	400-800	400-800	400-800	400-800
Longitudinal Position (x)	5350-5450	5850-5950	6350-6450	6850-6950	7350-7450
Lateral Position (y)	1025-1075	1025-1075	1025-1075	1025-1075	1025-1075

Calibration Location

The X location highlighted in F40103 rev1 corresponds to the five green zones in F40348.

The X location is the point stored within the ADAS module that was calibrated for the system to function.

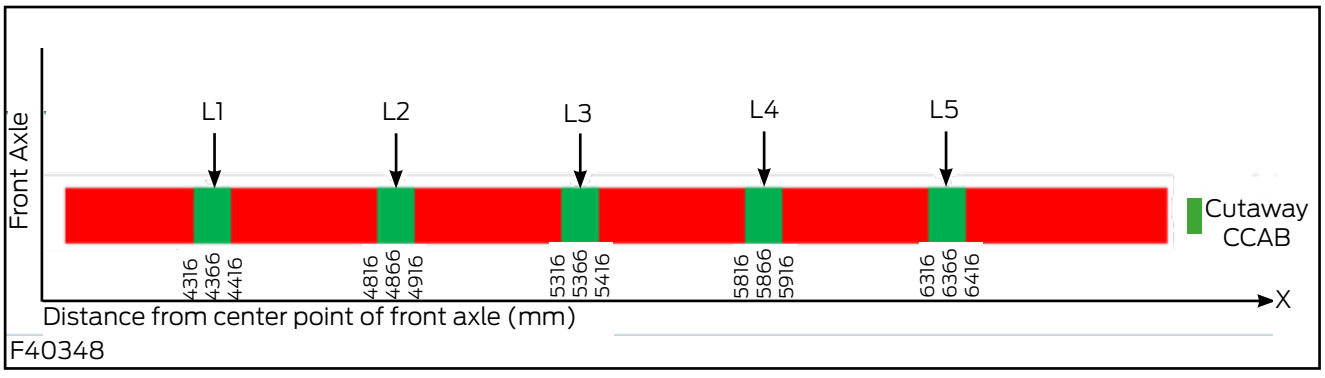
See Table 1 in the "Calibration Table" section for the exact figures for X, Y and Z.

The values assumed do not allow for vehicle calibration overlap, meaning that there is no scope to extend further backwards to use a different wheelbase calibration.

Movement of the radar toward the front of the vehicle is also not possible, as this would conflict with the first criteria and the FoV will be obscured by the box.

If the upfit does not permit, the radar to be located within the original calibrated position for the vehicle wheelbase (L1, L2 etc.), Ford cannot guarantee that the system will work correctly.

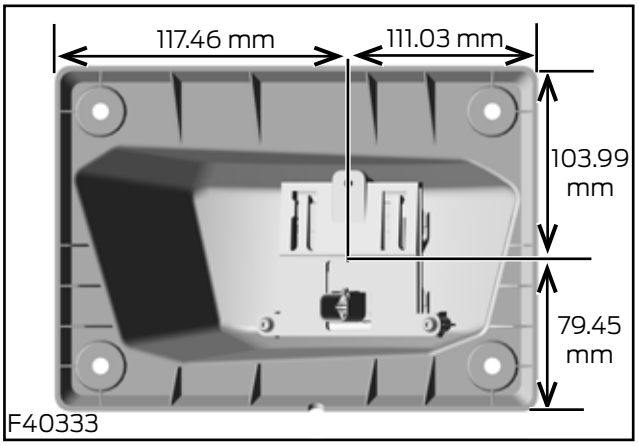
Calibrated Radar Positions on Chassis Cab/Cutaways



4.24.6 Positioning the Radar on Chassis Cab/Cutaways

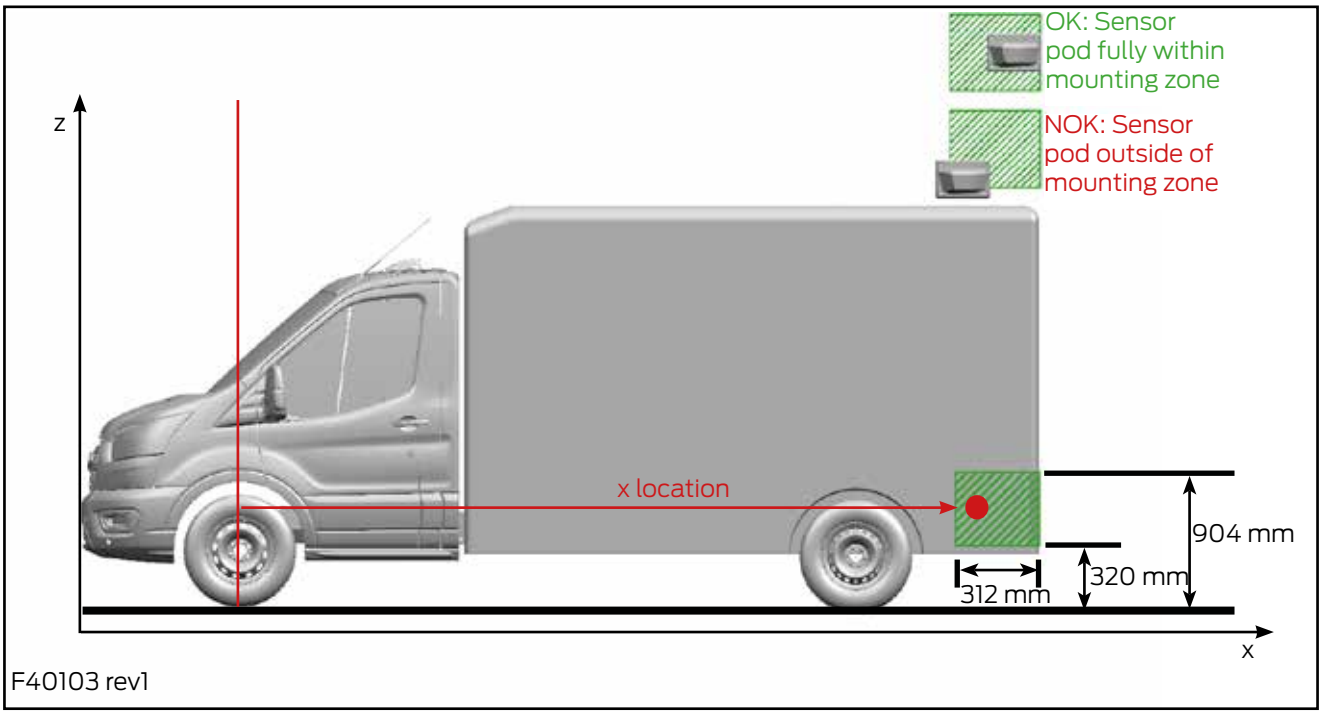
The performance of the rear ADAS functions was confirmed at a single radar location for each Cutaway wheelbase.

Location of the radar center with respect to Cutaway BLIS housing outer edges



F40333

BLIS Housing and Radar Assembly Mounting Zone



F40103 rev1

Figure F40103 rev 1 illustrates the region of space, with reference to the rear of a box body that the BLIS housing must be positioned to ensure the radar FoV is clear of the box itself.

The height of the green zone has been determined by calculating the Z height tolerance (+/- 200mm from the as calibrated value of 600mm) of the radar itself and has taken into consideration the pod holding the radar.

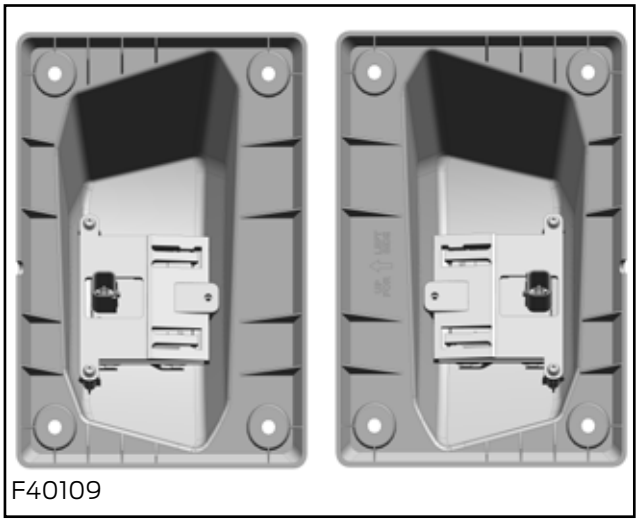
The width of the green zone has been determined by calculating, with respect to the pod housing, at which point does the radar FoV become blocked by the upfitter box.

By positioning the radar pods within this green zone, it will ensure that the FOV is not obscured.

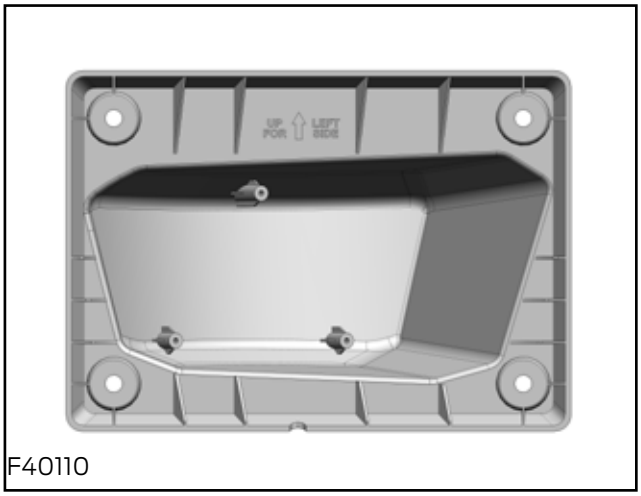
Sensor Pod Side Selection

Sensor pods need to be positioned according to markings and direction arrows.

2 different sensor pods are supplied, and left hand side pod marked as shown in Figure F40110.



F40109



F40110

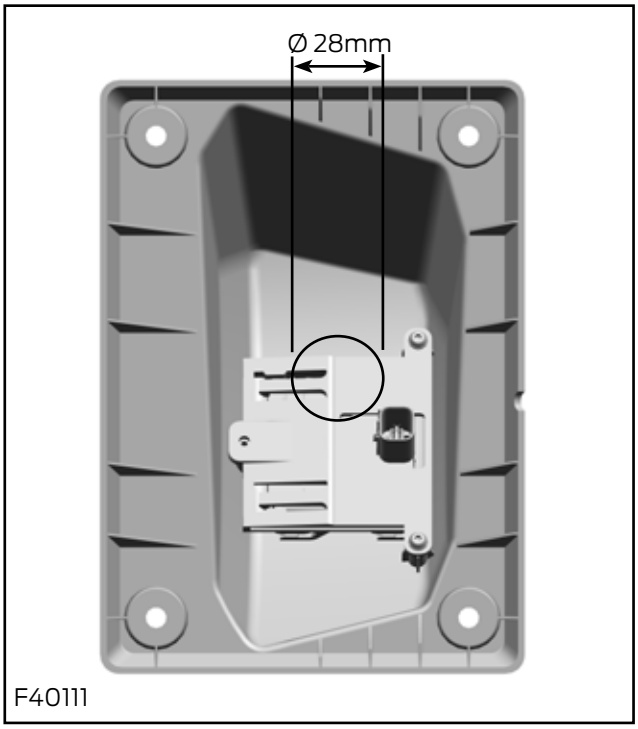
Hole Placement to Connect Sensor Pod

A hole is needed in the side of the vehicle to make connection to the radar sensor.

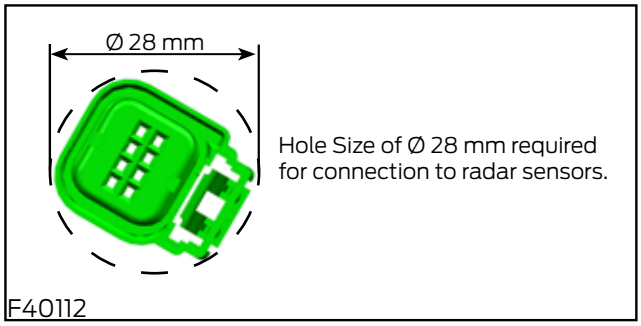
The hole needs to be placed in the center of the sensor pod.

The hole should be fully covered by the sensor pod and not be visible from outside. The Vehicle Modifier must ensure they install a grommet or any other sealing concept to avoid water ingress into vehicle through the wiring hole.

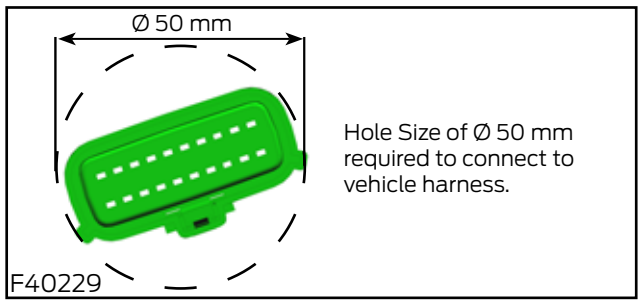
Before drilling the hole, take into consideration that an anticorrosive will need to be used where drilling will have removed current protective coating in this area.



F40111



F40112

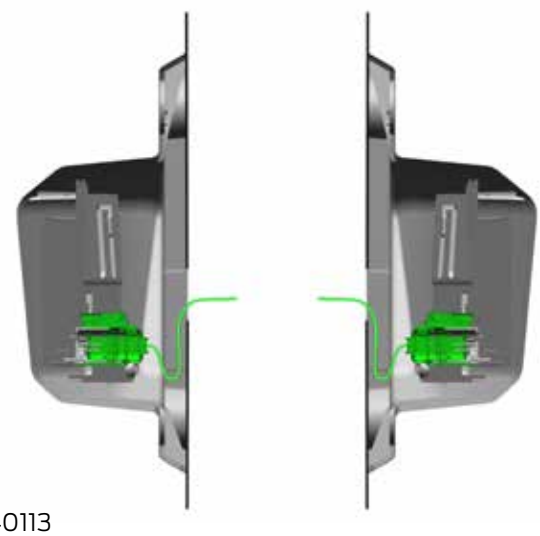


F40229

Cable Management

For the hole position and wiring length outside of vehicle side, ensure a dripping-loop to avoid water exposition of radar connector.

Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides.



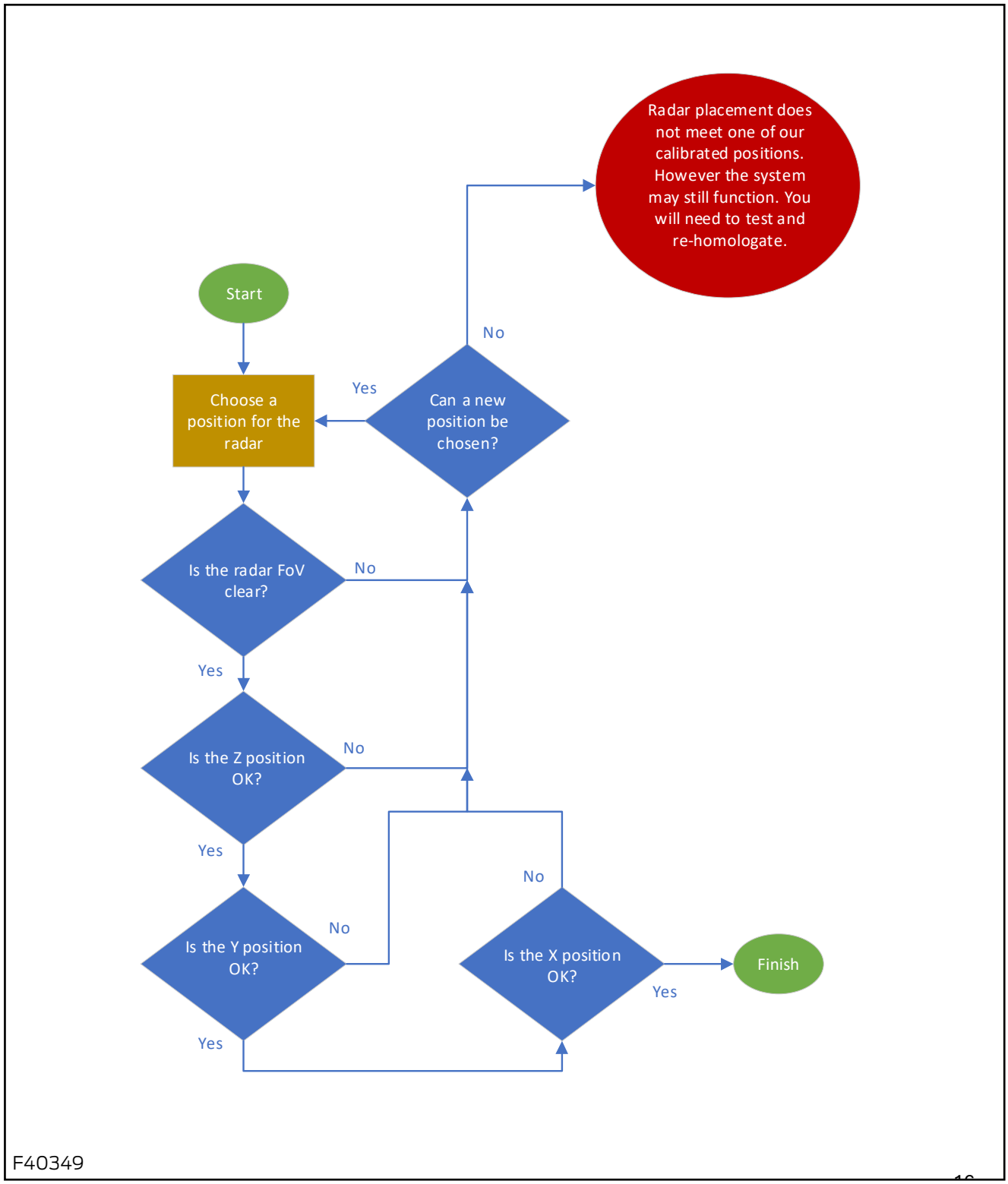
F40113

4.24.7 Process Steps for Positioning the Radar on Chassis Cab/Cutaway

Currently there is very limited scope to position and move the radar pods on Cutaways.

If the cutaway conversion is outside the acceptable 'as calibrated' range, Ford cannot guarantee the same BLIS system performance as originally tested and calibrated.

Process Flow Chart for Chassis Cab/Cutaway



4.25 Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance - Section added

CAUTION: The instructions in this section must be followed to guarantee performance of the systems. Any deviations to the instructions may result in failure or reduced functionality of the systems for which Ford Motor Company cannot be held responsible. Appropriate tests to be conducted by Vehicle Modifier to ensure durability and functionality of the system after installation.

4.25.1 General Requirements

For sensor holders and Park Aid sensors, refer to section 4.24.1 BLIS and Park Aid Installation Kit.

The sensor holder is designed for typical bumper assembly (material modulus of elasticity range from PP to ASA). If surrounding material is harder, another sensor and holder may need to be used.

The sensor holder is designed for a material thickness: 2.8+/-0.1 mm.

The minimum distance of PWM wires to sensors must be 200 mm to avoid magnetic or electric fields.

4.25.2 Sensor Positions and Tolerances

The sensor holder needs to be positioned on flat surfaces. If the sensor is placed into a pocket or next to sharp edge, this might influence the performance of the system.

The proposed Parking Sensor Holder itself is angled at 8° facing upwards. The sensor connector direction cannot be changed/rotated because this would lead to a facing down sensor.

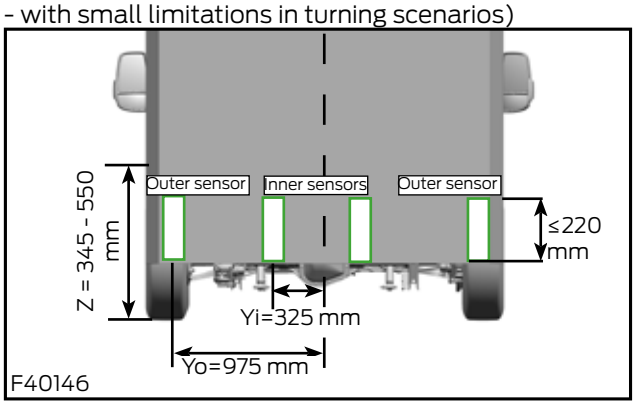
Distance height from sensor to ground = Z

- Z - min worst case 345 mm.
- Z - max defined by distance to bumper lowest edge - should not be more than 220 mm. If 220 mm cannot be fulfilled, lowest point of the bumper may not be covered in certain driving maneuvers. Besides of that Z – max can go up to 550 mm from the ground. Higher is possible but will compromise lower object detection.
- Z - same height for inner and outer assumed. If variance required - should be minimized (~30 mm) to avoid wrong distance between the sensors.

Distance width between vehicle middle point and sensor = Y

- Y - Inner 325 mm (Yi), outer 975 mm +/-25 mm (Yo.)
- Y - mirrored installation for left/right.
- X- Distance between sensor and rear axle.

X= 1208 mm, same distance for all sensors. Overhang can vary to the defined X value (1m, more is possible - with small limitations in turning scenarios)



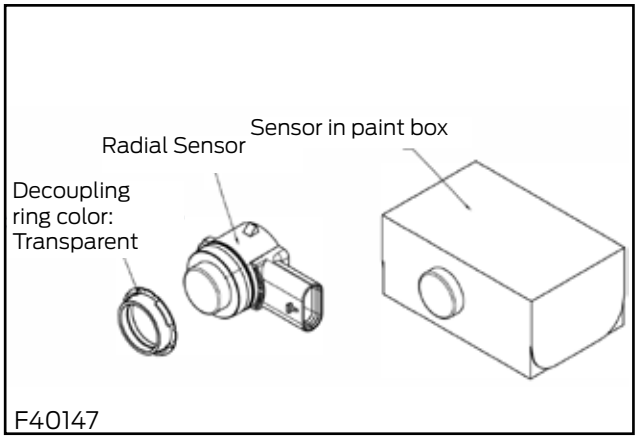
Sensor angles

- Beta Angle (angle to the ground) of the Bumper assumed with 0 +/- 2° -> deviation would require threshold verification (=7° with the holder).
- Alpha Angle (angle to the side) of the bumper installation position assumed with 0 +/-2°.

4.25.3 Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Requirements

Before painting, decoupling ring needs to be disassembled (ring does not allow any paint on it). A paint box may be used to ensure that only the correct area of sensor is painted. An example is shown in figure F40147.

Sensor Paint Box

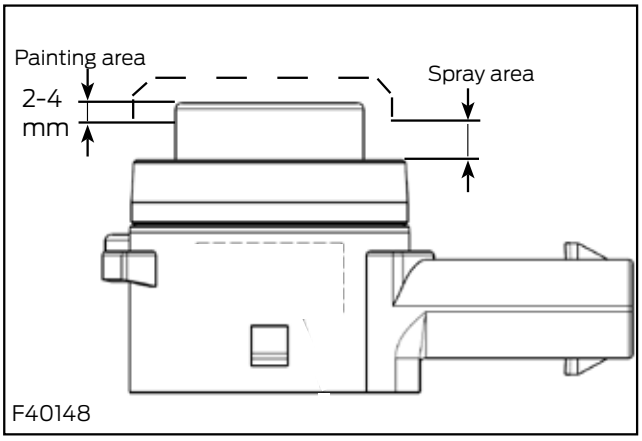


The painting area of the sensor is the front, transition radius and shell surface of the membrane. The shell surface is painted from the front surface to the sides. In spray area, only spray is permissible. A continuous coating layer between membrane and cover is not permissible.

Painting area without spray area is 2-4 mm.

For the spray painting (state-of-the-art), the coating in Figure F40148 must be met.

Sensor Paint and Spray Area



Minimum layer thickness coating: The minimal layer thickness stems from the minimum layer thickness of acrylic and minimum layer thickness of the used coating depending on color and required coverage.

Maximum layer thickness coating must be 160 µm (including acrylic powder layer). Layer thickness can be measured with ECT.

The total layer thickness of the coating can vary between a minimum and a maximum.

The minimum layer thickness is the necessary measure to comply with color matching and quality.

The maximum layer thickness is a necessary measure to guarantee the functionality of the transducer.

Ensure that the layer thickness of the entire coating area (front, transition radius, shell surface) does not exceed the maximum layer thickness. If the coverage/ color matching and quality of the whole coating area is already achieved at a lower layer thickness, this thickness is permitted.

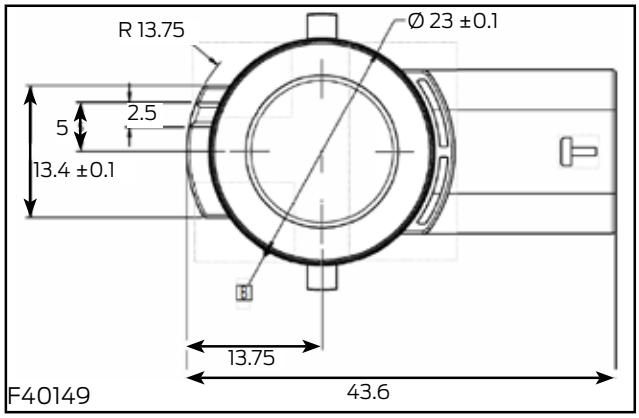
Coating or coating veils are inadmissible beyond the defined area (e.g. plug periphery, plug contacts) Coating and coating veils must not form a strap between membrane and bordering components.

Immersion treatment / power-wash is not permitted without prior sealing of the whole plug.

Parameters

Acrylic Powder Layer Thickness	30 µm - 5 µm to 45 µm +5 µm
Ideal Storage Conditions	Ambient temperature (18°C-28°C) without being exposed to UV rays

Sensor Surface Dimensions



Sensor Holder

Overall minimum and maximum holder dimensions must be guaranteed even with the added paint layers to the sensor interface to avoid any risk of sensor malfunction.

4.25.4 Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting

1. Place an object 20 - 30 cm away from each sensor. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a red indication on display is visible and a continuous tone will be requested.
2. Place an object 35 - 50 cm away from each sensor. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a yellow/orange indication on display is visible and a chime will be requested.
3. Place an object 70 - 140 cm away the inner sensors only. Shift to reverse gear and verify that a green indication on display is visible and a chime will be requested.

4.25.5 Park Aid Sensor Relocation Guideline

In relation to the vehicle's original Park Aid sensor positions, sensor relocation should not exceed the following limits:

Symmetrical sensor position setup to the vehicle's center needs to be maintained.

X-Position: All sensors can be moved in X-direction as long as the change is equal for all sensors. Additionally, a deviation of maximum 3cm X-direction change between different sensors is tolerable.

Y-Position: Sensors can be moved +/- 2.5cm.

Z-Position: Sensors can be moved up to 20cm upwards if the position change is equal for all sensors. A deviation of maximum 3cm Z-direction change between different sensors is tolerable maintaining a symmetrical sensor position.

NOTE: Distance change between sensors, combining X/Y/Z, should never exceed absolute worst case of 5cm.

Alpha-angle: No change possible to the horizontal direction of each sensor.

Beta-angle: No change possible to the vertical direction of each sensor.

CAUTION: Installation of the sensors into rigid material (especially metal) is not recommended. In case it cannot be avoided, special attention needs to be paid (e.g. considering plastic fixtures, damping improvements).

NOTE: Every sensor relocation can lead to a deterioration of the base Park Aid system performance.

NOTE: If sensors need to be moved downwards (e.g. into a rearstep), this could lead to false warnings caused by reflections from uneven road surfaces.

NOTE: If the vehicle is equipped with Reverse Brake Assist (RBA), it uses rear Park Aid sensors and the rear view camera for object detection. A rear Park Aid sensor relocation might lead to a deteriorated object detection and therefore to a deterioration of RBA.

4.26 Cameras

4.26.1 Rear View Camera Connector Changes

On Transit Cutaway, a change has been made from analogue rear connector to digital to include the SVO Rear View Camera option J3KAQ.

Brown FAKRA F coax cable connector (HU5T-18D813-A*) is used to connect to camera connector 2818496. It is a 2-way connector with pin 1 for signal and pin 2 for ground/shield.

4.26.2 General Information for Rear View Camera on Chassis Cab/ Cutaway

NOTE: Effective May 1, 2018, all vehicles completed in 2 or more stages (produced by Ford as incomplete vehicles) are required to comply with new FMVSS 111 requirements for rear visibility (including rear view camera). The new FMVSS 111 requirements affect vehicles 10,000 lbs (4536 kg) GVWR or less. For best field of view and image size results, the camera should be mounted along the vehicles centerline when practical.

CAUTION: It is the modifier's responsibility to ensure compliance with FMVSS 111.

For installation and FMVSS 111 compliance assistance, refer to the following websites:

- www.nhtsa.gov
- www.ntea.com
- www.fordbbas.com>bulletins
- www.motorcraftservice.com/instructionsheets

This information is provided for directional purposes only, based on testing done by Ford.

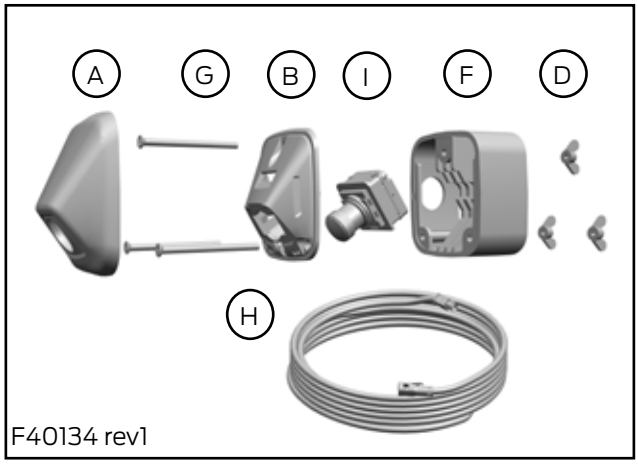
4.26.3 Rear View Camera Installation Kit for Chassis Cab/ Cutaway

Kit part table added

NOTE: The rear view camera kit assembly is located in the glovebox. For exterior or interior camera installation instructions, refer to kit installation sheet (I-Sheet) provided with the kit (kit FINIS code 6412978).

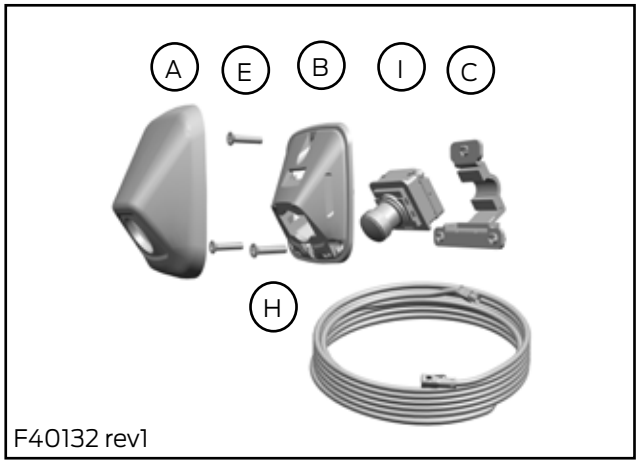
Rear View Camera Kit (J3KAQ)

Rear View Camera Exterior Mount Assembly



F40134 rev1

Rear View Camera Interior Mount Assembly



F40132 rev1

Rear View Camera Assembly Parts

Item	Quantity	Description
A*	1	Camera Cover
B*	1	Camera Retainer
C*	1	Y-Bracket
D*	3	Wing Nut
E*	3	Screws (shorter, for use with Y-Bracket)
F*	1	Collar
G*	3	Screws (longer, for use with collar)
H	1	Coaxial Cable
I	1	Camera
-	1	Template (used for mounting hole positions - not shown)

* It is a part of camera housing assembly

A rear-view camera and prep kit for incomplete vehicles is available as an orderable option (J3KAQ) with all Chassis Cab and Cutaway vehicles.

If the rear view camera kit (J3KAQ) is not ordered with the vehicle, it can be retrofitted later.

The rear view camera and wiring kit provide opportunity for easy installation by the upfitter to support multiple variants of body styles.

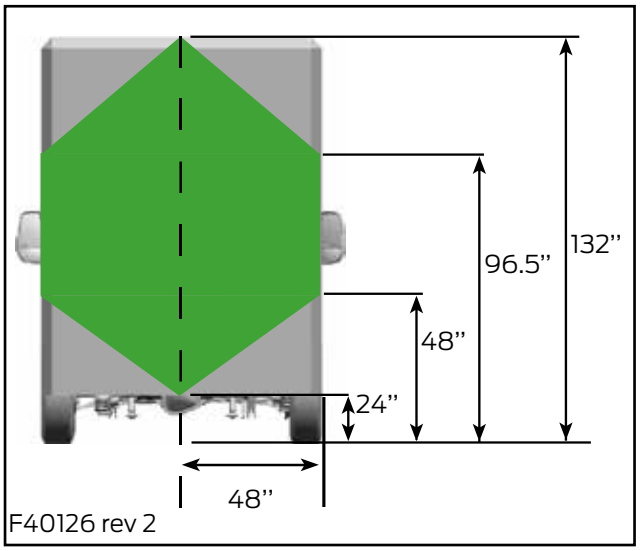
For optimum camera performance and view, keep the following points in mind while selecting a camera mounting location on the vehicle.

Please refer to figure F40359:

- There are 7 vertical cylinders as part of the ruling.
- Cylinders A through E must be 100% within view (5 of 7 cones).
- For cylinders F and G, the minimum field of view cylinder must see at least 150mm wide.
- In order to obtain this, the upfitter must set up the cones behind the vehicle following NHTSA rule FMVSS 111 and adjust the camera until the requirements are met.
- Mounting location can vary based on vehicle configuration as long as the mounting location allows proper field of view and image size following NHTSA rule FMVSS 111.

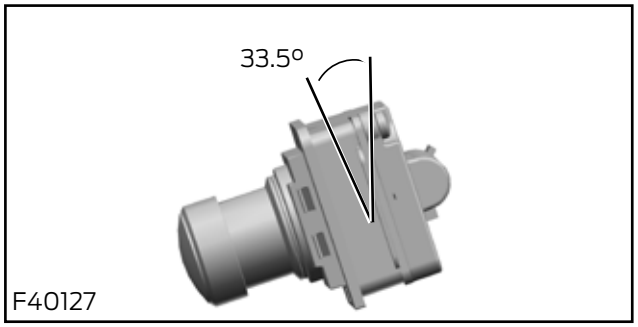
The camera included in the kit is capable of complying with FMVSS 111 Rear Visibility Regulations when it is mounted in the green areas defined in Figure F40126 rev2 on Stage2 chassis cab/cutaway conversions.

Rear View Camera Mounting Location for Stage 2 Cutaway and Chassis Cab Conversions



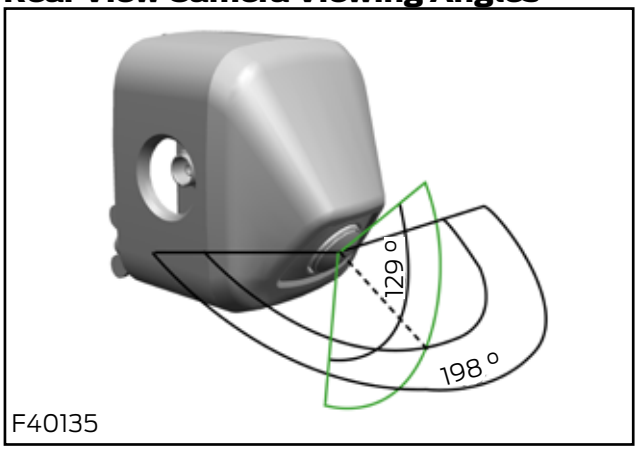
F40126 rev 2

Rear View Camera Installation Angle



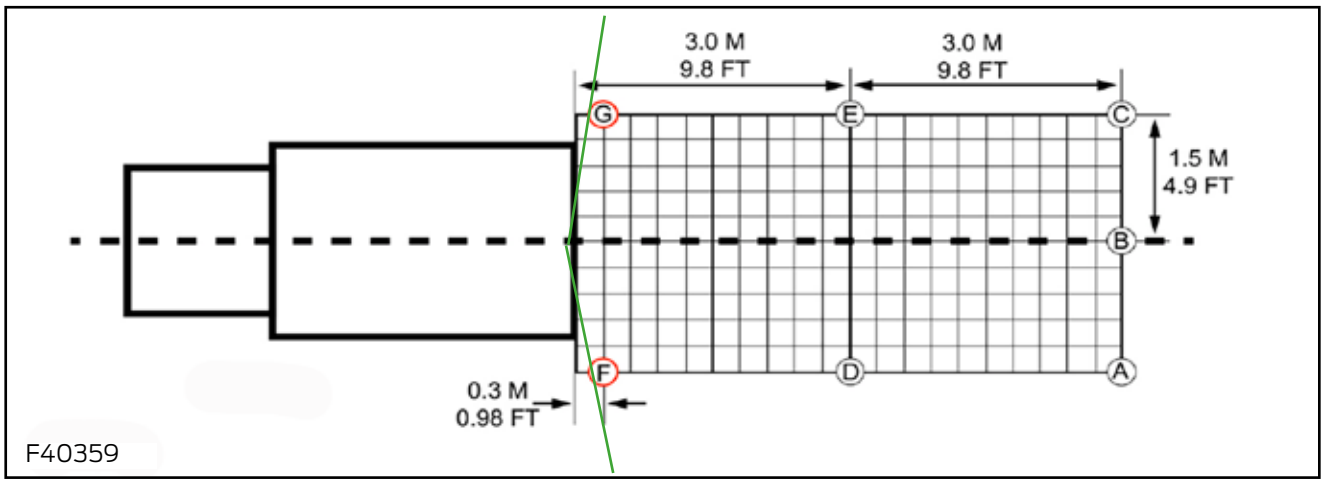
F40127

Rear View Camera Viewing Angles



F40135

Rear View Camera Field of View

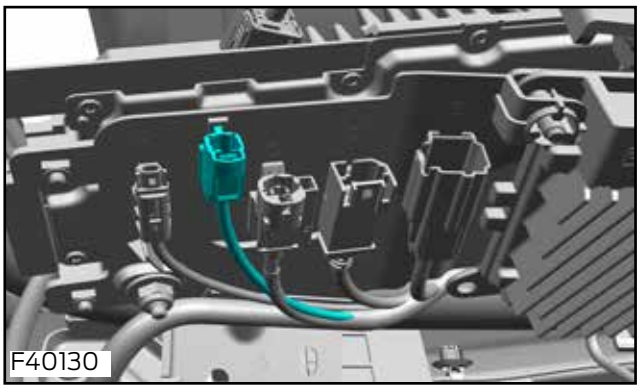


4.26.4 Rear View Camera Coax Cable Routing for Chassis Cab/Cutaway

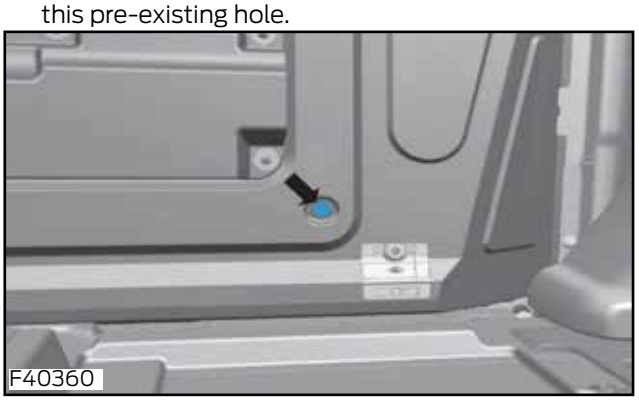
NOTE: Read the entire installation sheet that is provided with the kit. Routing coax cable requires removal of interior trim pieces.

1. Plan routing of coax cable for your conversion. Cable routing will start inside cab, exiting said cab through a hole behind driver's seat on cab back panel, and into your conversion. Route coax cable (black connector end) in such a way that is not exposed or bent. For routing guidelines, refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guidelines. Ensure that wire harness is not transferring any force onto camera housing assembly.
2. Remove glovebox as per workshop manual instructions.
3. Locate SYNC module jumper harness under SYNC module.

4. Disconnect the black FAKRA connectors. Connect black connector on the coax cable to black connector secured on bracket which is the connector to the SYNC module jumper harness. See F40130 for the connector highlighted.



5. Once harness is routed, connected, and secured inside cabin, ensure necessary sealing is made. The grommet located on coax cable assembly will seal the same hole covered by a plug behind driver seat on cab back panel.
6. Locate access plug behind driver seat on cab pack panel. To ensure adequate cabin sealing, remove plug and use this pre-existing hole (F40360) to exit coax cable from cabin to the conversion. The grommet located on coax cable assembly will seal this pre-existing hole.



7. Connect wire harness to camera.
8. Reinstall all removed trim panels by reversing removal process.

4.26.5 Rear View Camera Operation After Installation

Once installation of the camera is complete, verify that the camera view is acceptable. Follow the guidelines found within the sections 4.26.2 General Information for Rear View Camera on Chassis Cab/Cutaway and 4.26.3 Rear View Camera Installation Kit for Chassis Cab/Cutaway.

Note added

NOTE: Make sure all DTCs are deleted after connecting the camera.

4.26.6 Rear View Camera Service

For interior and exterior mounted camera service requirements, refer to Installation sheet that is provided with the kit.

4.26.7 Reverse Brake Assist

NOTE: Do not paint or modify the rear camera or rear bumper as this will impede the Reverse Brake Assist functionality.

NOTE: No change to power steering system is supported by Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: No modification to the traction control system or ABS system is supported by Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: Modification to door latching system or removal of doors may interfere with Reverse Brake Assist.

NOTE: Fitting of accessories to the rear of the vehicle will impede the functionality of Reverse Brake Assist, in these instances the feature should not be used - False Reverse Brake Assist events may occur.

NOTE: Do not obstruct rear camera.

NOTE: Do not move or modify any camera mounting positions or brackets, as this will impede on camera and Reverse Brake Assist functionality.

NOTE: Do not disconnect or remove any cameras fitted to the vehicle.

NOTE: Do not interfere with the full field of view cone of the rear camera.
NOTE: Any object mounted within the field of view cones of the front and side-mirror cameras will obstruct the 360-camera visibility.

NOTE: Change to track width is not recommended and will result in the dynamic guidelines not being representative of vehicle turning circle.

4.26.8 360º Camera

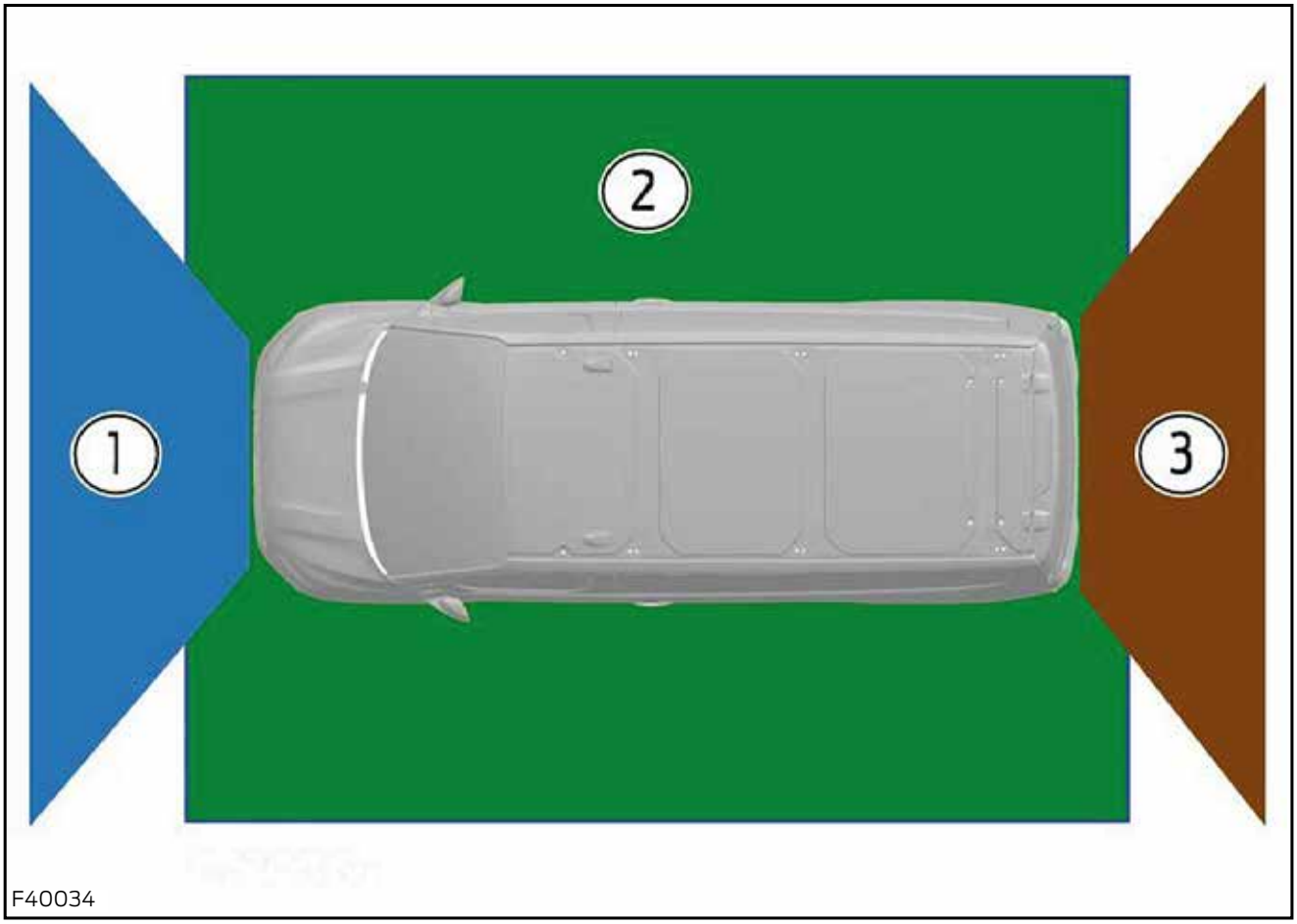
NOTE: Any change to track width will result in the dynamic guidelines not being representative of vehicle turning circle.

NOTE: Attachment of towing extensions to side mirrors may impede on 360 camera visibility.

NOTE: Do not interfere with the full field of view cones of the 360º camera.

NOTE: Any object mounted within the field of view cones of the front and side-mirror cameras will obstruct the 360-camera visibility.

All Cameras Field of View



F40034

Item	Description
1	Front Camera Field of View
2	360° Camera Field of View
3	Rear Camera Field of View

4.27 Pro Power Onboard Cutaway/Single Chassis Cab (BEV)
- Section added

Cutaway and Single Chassis Cab variants include one 120V/20A out on the passenger-seat pedestal with a secondary outlet/wiring harness to be installed by final stage manufacturer.

Rear outlet is required and will need to be installed in Second Unit Body. Kit required for installation: KTNK4T-19J378-B*. This kit is provided in dunnage.

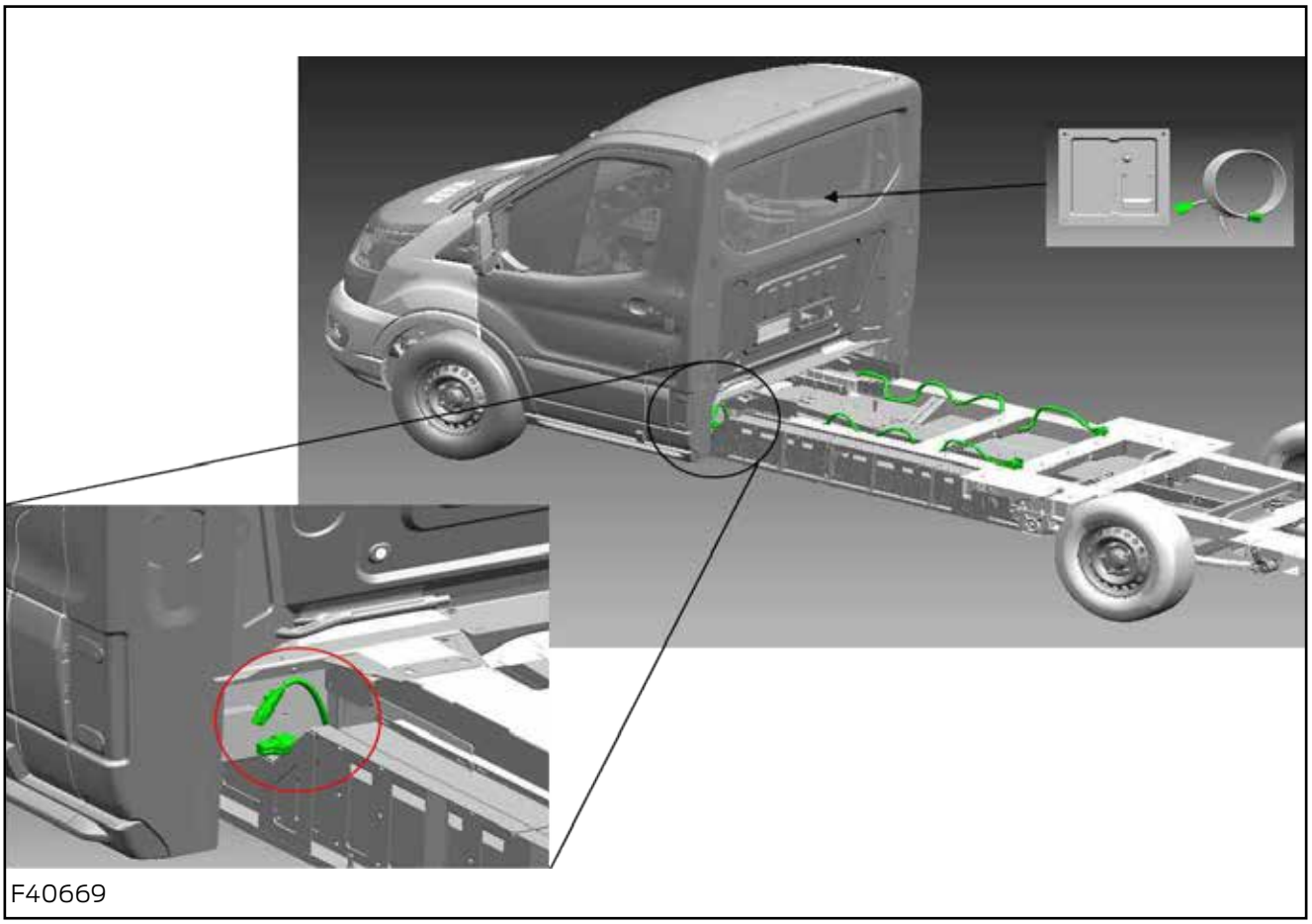
- Do not cover warning labels.
- Rear outlet is water resistant but should be installed such that it is protected from direct spray or flow of water. Wiring connectors are sealed and do not need to be protected from the elements.
- Rear outlet should be installed on a substantially vertical surface.
- Aux outlet should not be installed near any significant source of heat.
- Rear outlet has a ~550 mm wiring pigtail. The included grommet and retaining clip may be carefully removed if desired.
- Attach aux outlet to the SUB using all four holes provided (recommend M6 or #12 Pan head screw with 12mm (0.47 in) max head diameter and 4.8 Nm (3.5 ft-lb) max installation torque).
- In case auxiliary outlet is not planned to be installed (either it cannot be packaged in SUB or is not desired by customer), Pro Power Onboard feature will function as delivered from the factory with the cab outlet only.

A 6m (18 ft) extension wiring harness is provided in dunnage to allow flexibility in placement of auxiliary outlet. Aux outlet pigtail can also connect directly to chassis wiring if preferred.

Chassis wiring connectors for auxiliary outlet are located near the LH frame rail at back of cab. These connectors have sealed caps which should remain in place until rear outlet is plugged in (directly or via extension harness) to prevent contamination and potential shock hazard. The vehicle should be in "key off" state when removing the sealed caps from chassis wiring and connecting extension harness and aux outlet pigtail.

NOTE: If auxiliary outlet is connected to the vehicle and later removed, chassis wiring must be sealed before vehicle re-enters service.

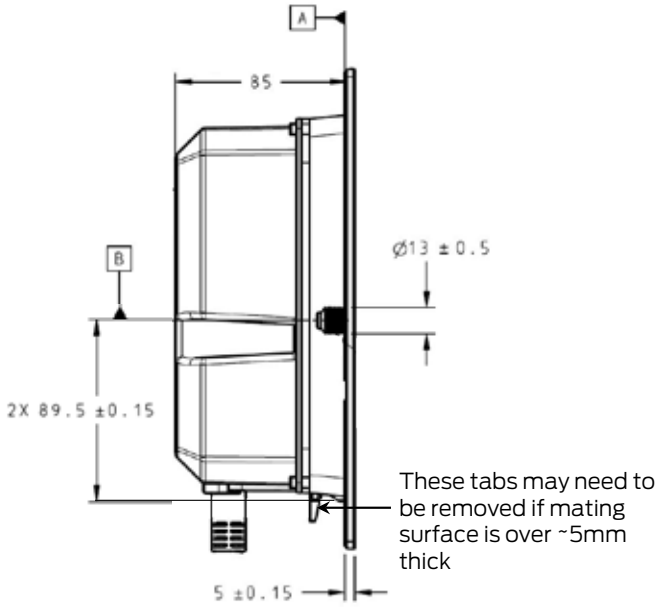
PPOB Wiring Location



F40669

Pro Power Onboard Outlet All Dimensions

Aux Outlet Side View



Wiring Length from tip of Strain Relief (+/- 10mm)

- to Grommet - 290mm
- to Clip – 430mm
- to Signal connector – 550mm
- to Power connector – 580mm

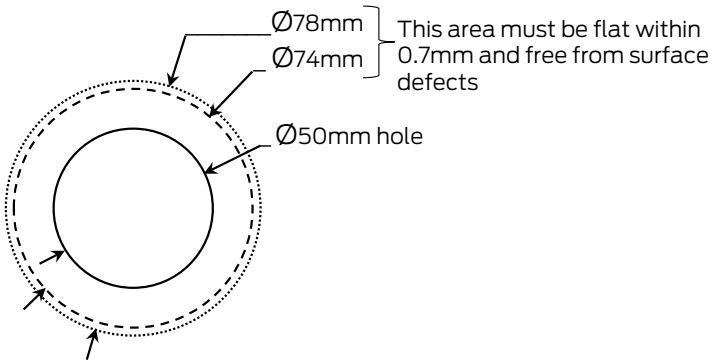
Wiring Clip Mating Surface

Sheet Metal Thickness Range: 0.60mm – 6.75mm Applicable Oval Hole Sizes:

A. 6.2 x 12.2mm
B. 6.5 x 12.5mm
C. 6.5 x 13.0mm
D. 7.0 x 12.0mm

Wiring Grommet Mating Surface

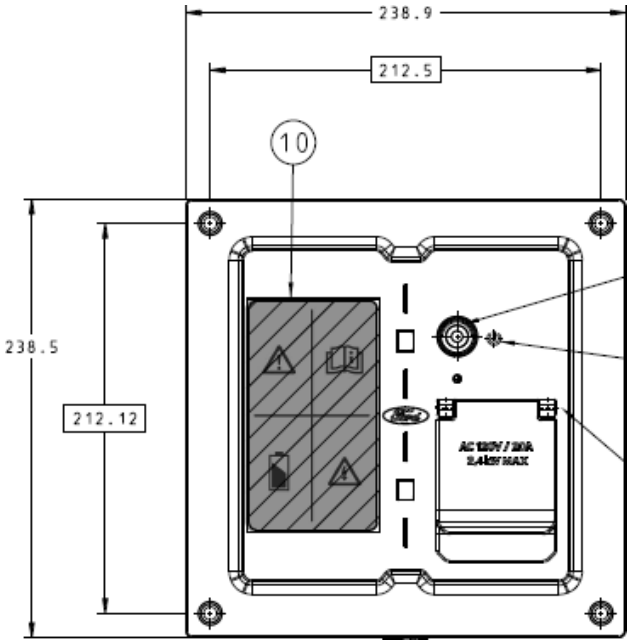
Mating surface thickness 0.5 – 3.0mm



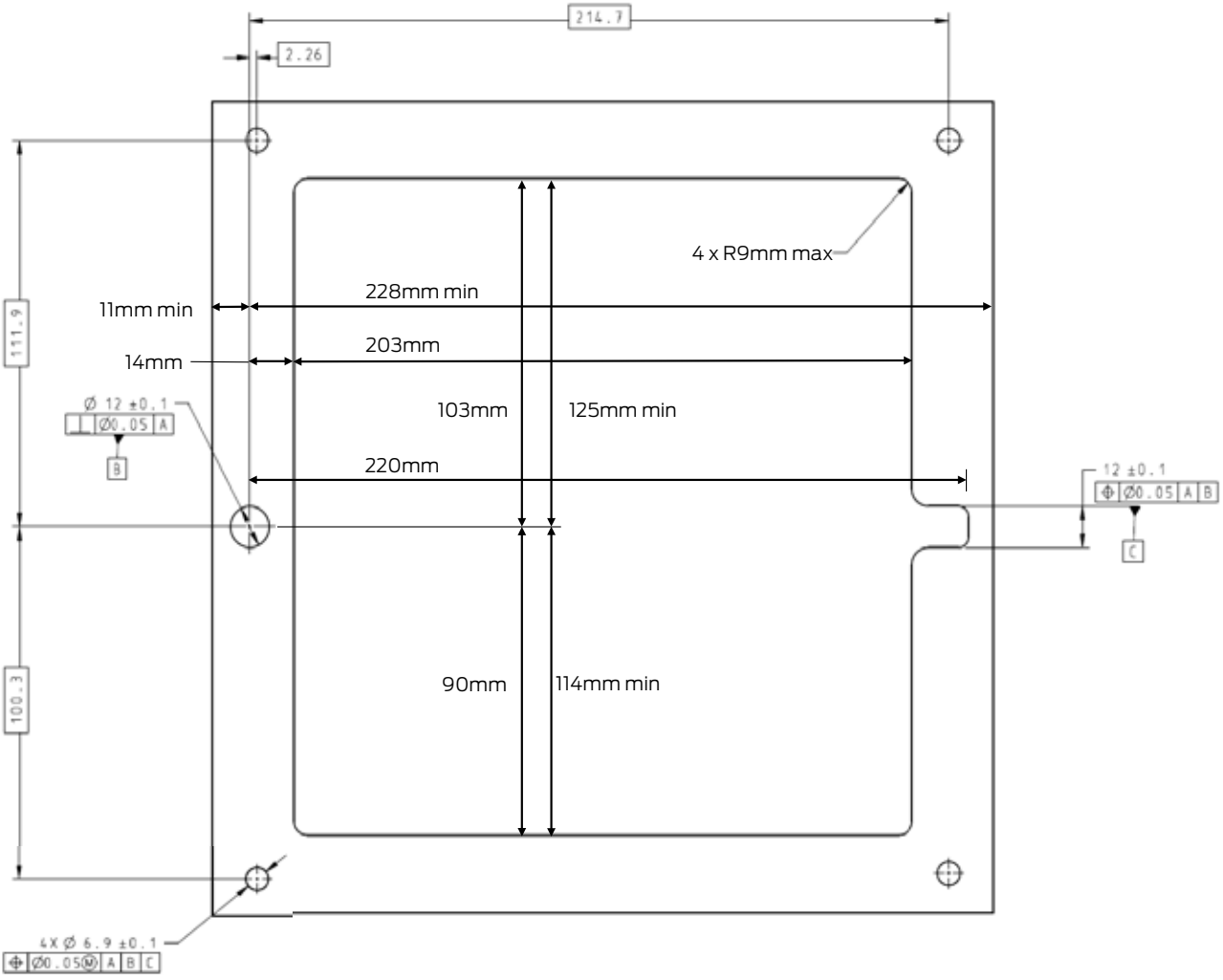
F40228

Pro Power On Board Outlet All Dimensions Continued

Aux Outlet Front View



Aux Outlet Mating Surface



F40668

5.1 Body

5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info

WARNINGS:

Before drilling see figures E184299 and E185270 for Boron Steel parts, in this section of the manual.

Before drilling the floor around the fuel tank, check the Precautionary Drill Zones in this section.

(BEV Only) Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause damage to the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 140°F (60°C). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damaging the high voltage battery, which could cause serious personal injury or death by fire or explosion. Please refer to the Ford E-Transit workshop manual.

(BEV Only) The following components, as installed by Ford Motor Company, must not be removed, relocated, altered, or modified in any way:

- **High-voltage battery, battery connectors, battery cradle (carrying structure), outriggers, energy absorption members, brackets, and attachment hardware.**
- **Front-end structure, including aluminum extrusion assembly ("Megabrace"), attachment brackets, and attachment hardware.**

All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

The Ford side protection must not be removed as part of any conversion.

Caution recatagorized as warning

Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

When carrying out vehicle conversions, the following should be considered:

- Make sure the vehicle structural integrity is maintained.
- Do not drill into closed frame body members.
- Make sure that the design for the body alterations or additional structure disperses the load evenly.
- Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection legislation.

Ensure proper sealing against ingress of water, salt and dust after cutting or drilling the body. Use Ford approved sealing and finishing materials, and underbody corrosion protection.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

- Make sure that fixings in the 'B' pillar area do not encroach on the seat belts or seat belt reels.

For unique floor fixings, see (Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing), refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.

.

For Load Compartment Tie Downs (Load Lashing Points), refer to 5.4 Loadspace.

For additional Precautionary Drilling information, refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides and 5.6 Body Closures.

5.1.2 Welding/Plasma Cutting

WARNING: Before welding see figures E184299 and E185270 for Boron Steel parts, in this section of the manual.

Before welding work is performed on a vehicle body, all safety measures for the protection of people, modules and electrical components must be observed.

Electronic Components

NOTE: After disconnecting the power supply and before performing further work, a wait time of up to 15 minutes must be maintained, depending on the vehicle. Work on airbag systems may only be performed by a Ford dealer.

Increased use of comfort and safety electronics in modern motor vehicles also requires the greatest attention to be paid during body work. Over voltages produced during welding and in alignment work during body shell rectification may cause electronic systems to be damaged. In particular, the safety instructions for performing welding work on vehicles with airbag systems must be adhered to.

Pay attention to the following:

- Disconnect the battery negative clamp and cover the battery terminal.
- Disconnect the electrical connector at the airbag control module.
- Disconnect: Powertrain Control Module, Cluster, ABS Module, Fuel Tank, Body Control Module, Diesel and SCR Module.
- If welding is to be performed directly near a control module, it must be removed beforehand.
- Never connect the negative cable of the welder near an airbag or a control module.
- Connect the negative cable of the welder close to the location of the weld.

Before Welding

Interior surfaces of new bodywork components, which will no longer be accessible after installation, must be painted beforehand. The welding flanges are treated with a special welding primer. The joint areas are not always accessible from inside later, therefore, prepare these areas so that no soot is produced by burning

paint during welding.

NOTE: In order to ensure that the corrosion protection produced in production is not destroyed, the working area must be kept as small as possible.

NOTE: Do not touch cleaned bare metal with bare hands. The dampness of your hands will corrode the metal.

Procedure:

- Remove the primer or paint/zinc layer in the welding area using a tress wire brush to prevent the formation of soot from the paint.
- Thoroughly clean the welding area with a metal cleaning agent and rub dry.
- Coat the welding flange with welding primer on all sides and allow to dry.

NOTE: The welding primer must only be applied thinly to the spot welding area, to minimize spattering when welding.

The following points must be noted when welding:

- Zinc starts to melt at about 420°C.
- Zinc vaporizes at a temperature of about 900°C.
- The amount of heating determines the damage to the zinc coating and, therefore, to the corrosion protection.
- Resistance spot welding is particularly suitable for welding zinc-coated panels because no widespread warming occurs.
- With electrolytically zinc-plated panels, there is no need for any special preparation because the zinc coating does not need to be removed.

After Welding

During work, body panels are often heated at very high temperatures, which results in the destruction of the corrosion protection. Working of the affected areas is therefore vital:

- Grind the welded seams flat and clean thoroughly with silicone remover. Dry with a lint-free cloth.
- If the join area is accessible from the inside, the transition area to the paint must be abraded for all types of join, so that good adhesion of the primer is achieved later.
- If the join area is not accessible from the inside and the cleaning and sanding work cannot be done, ensure that there is as little contamination as possible in the area of the repair. This allows the cavity wax applied later to penetrate the join area without hindrance.

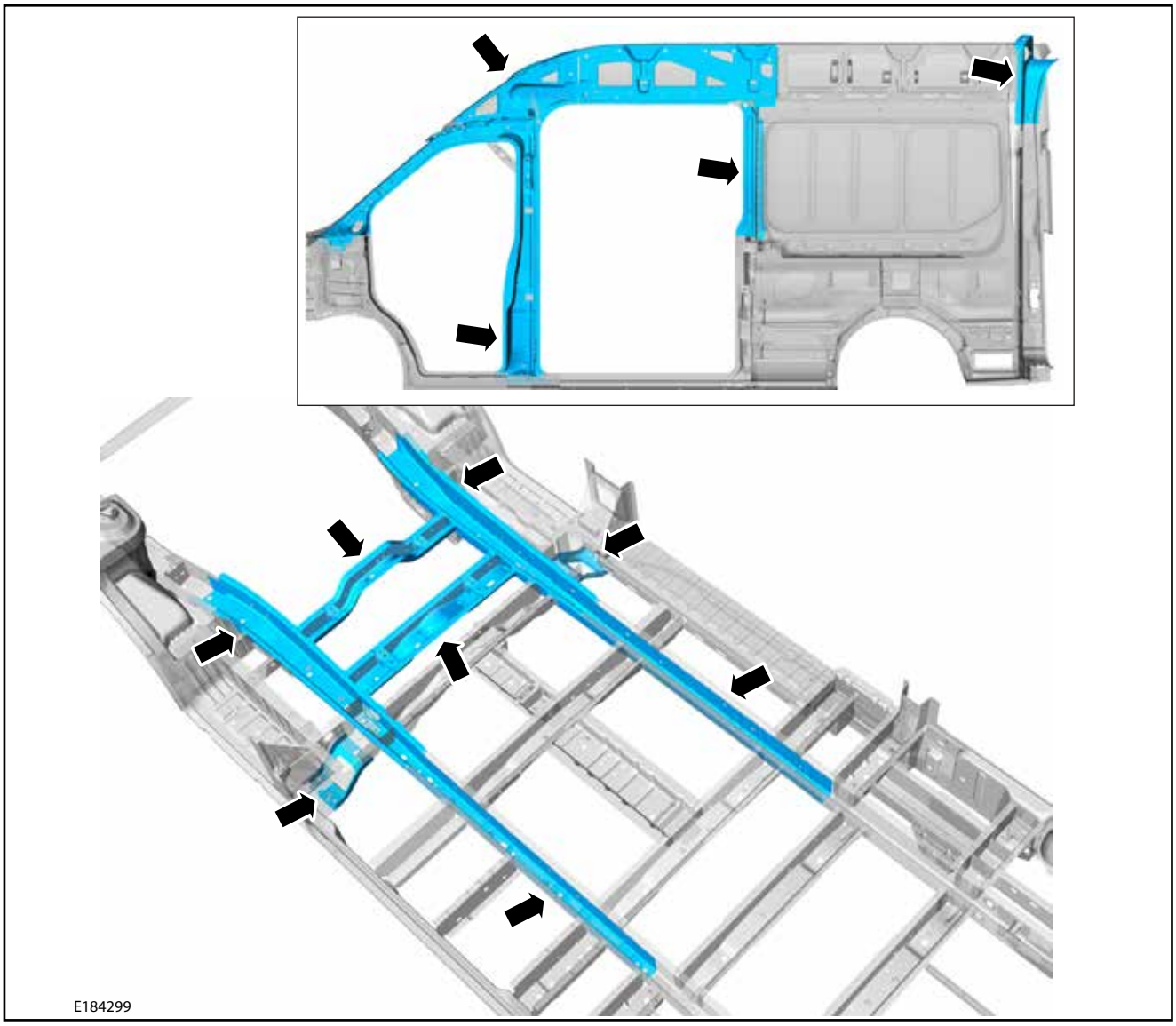
NOTE: Only apply a small amount of panel cleaner to the cleaning cloth when cleaning the area. Make sure that no cleaner reaches the connecting flange, so that the welding primer is not washed away.

Priming after welding

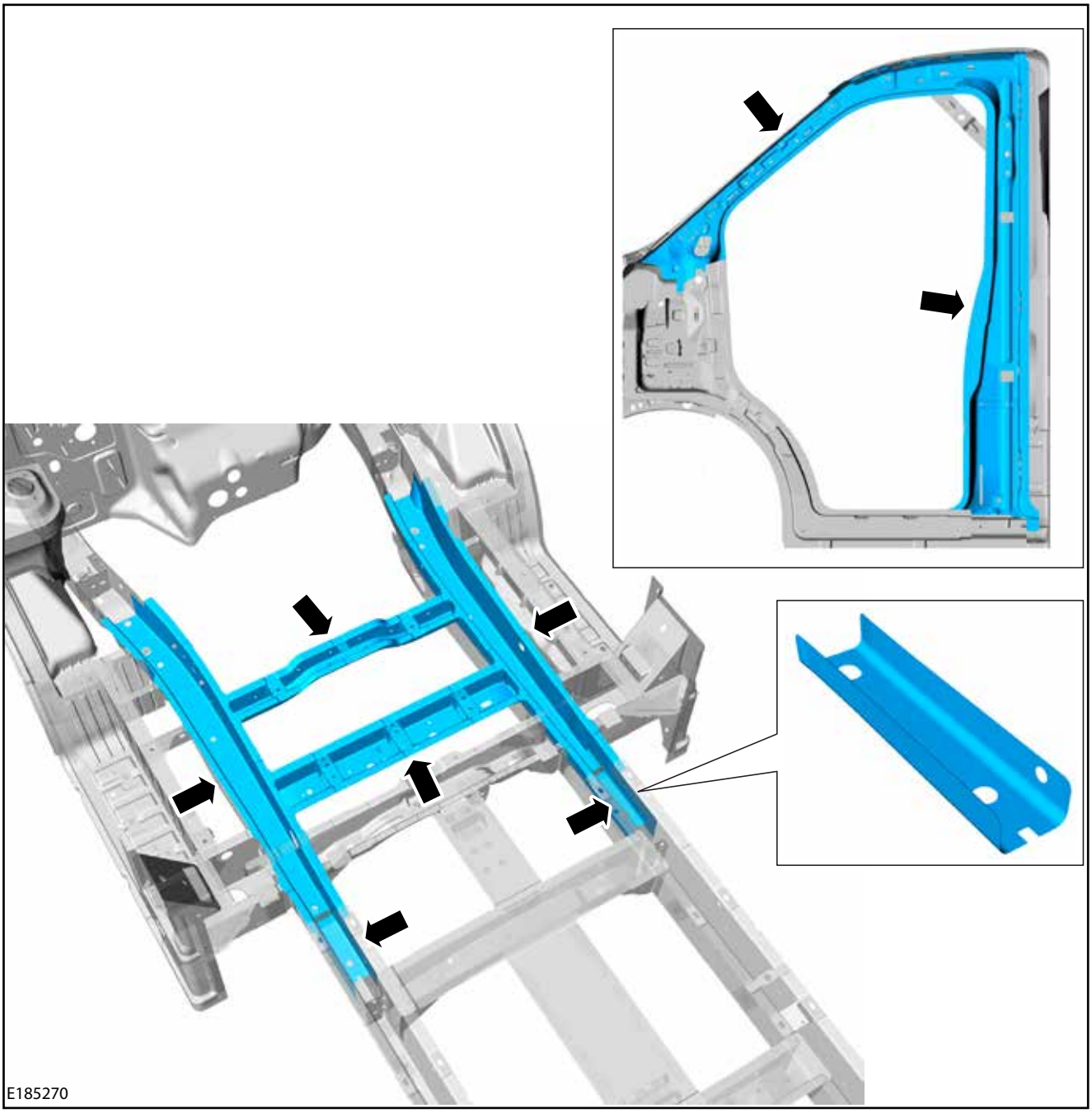
Primer should be applied to the welded flanges after cleaning. A check must also be made that the production corrosion protection is present in the area of the flanges. Any damage must also be re-primed.

5.1.3 Boron Steel Parts

Boron Steel Parts, Van/Wagon - Precautionary Drill or Weld Zones



Boron Steel Parts, Chassis Cab/Cutaway - Precautionary Drill or Weld Zones



5.1.4 Precautionary Floor Drilling - Gasoline - Title updated/ images removed/content updated

WARNINGS:

Use care when drilling around fuel tank, lines, use drill shields where applicable, use drill depth gauges, don't point fasteners down/towards fuel components. Use acorn style rounded cap nuts where possible.

All fixings through the floor, sides and roof must be sealed.

CAUTION: Care should be taken when drilling the floor of the passenger compartment and rear cargo area. The fuel tank, brake lines and electric cables are present below the floor.

It is recommended that Transit Van CAD is obtained to understand vehicle component placement/ location of Fuel tank, fuel filler, wire harness routing, and hydraulic brake line routing. CAD can be obtained from **Ford Body Builder Advisory Service** by submitting a helpdesk ticket to https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

When adding holes/fasteners to the floor of the vehicle, consideration must be given to all components below the floor.

It is strongly recommended that drill-depth stops be used. Drill stop depth shall not exceed 1.0" (25mm) maximum depth.

NOTE: Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection requirements.

For further information, refer to:

- 5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info
- 5.14 Corrosion Prevention

5.1.5 Precautionary Drilling/ Welding - BEV -Title updated/images removed/content updated

WARNINGS:

It is recommended that no drilling welding or any other operation be performed in order to prevent damage to the components located beneath the floor. Such components include HV/LV system components, HV/LV cables, coolant/AC/ brake lines. Refer to separate guidance in section 5.1.6 Precautionary Floor Drilling: BEV Vans.

Do not drill the side impact bars or side energy absorption members.

Do not weld to the high voltage battery, casing or cradle.

Do not ground welding equipment to the battery, battery casing or battery cradle.

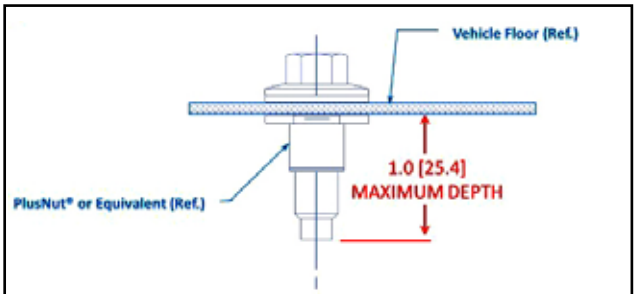
It is recommended that E-Transit Van CAD is obtained for upfitter use to understand vehicle component placement/location of high/low voltage wire harness routing, coolant line routing, hydraulic brake line routing, rear drive unit placement, etc. CAD can be obtained from **Ford Body Builder Advisory Service** by contacting us at https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

5.1.6 Precautionary Floor Drilling: BEV Vans - Title updated/ images removed/content updated

Whilst it is recommended that no drilling is undertaken, some limited drilling and fixing is permissible on the cargo floor area of the BEV Van variant providing the following guidelines are explicitly followed:

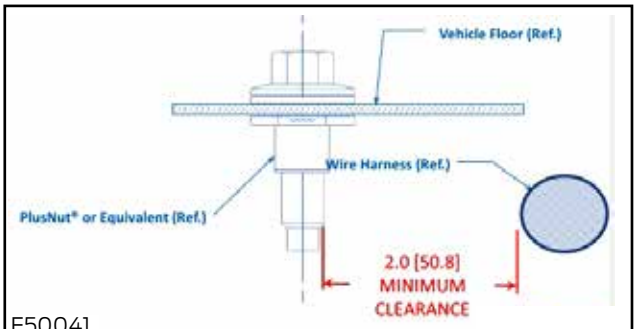
Take precautions when undertaking drilling, or any other operation, rearward of the B-pillar in order to prevent damage to any components under the Van floor. HV grounding points in the vehicle are not to be touched.

- When adding holes/fasteners to the floor of the vehicle to secure upfits, consideration must be given to all components below the floor.
- It is strongly recommended that drill-depth stops be used. Drill stop depth shall not exceed 1.0" [25.4mm] MAXIMUM DEPTH.
- Fasteners (including PlusNut® or equivalent) extending below the floor of the vehicle shall not exceed 1.0" [25.4mm] MAXIMUM DEPTH (Figure F50040).



F50040

- Fasteners (and/or alternative fastening method) extending below the floor of the vehicle shall have 2.0" [50.8mm] MINIMUM CLEARANCE to any surrounding high/low voltage wiring and/or coolant line routing and/or hydraulic brake line routing to prevent any damage/chafing. (Figure F50041).



F50041

NOTE: Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection requirements.

NOTE: All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

For more information, refer to:

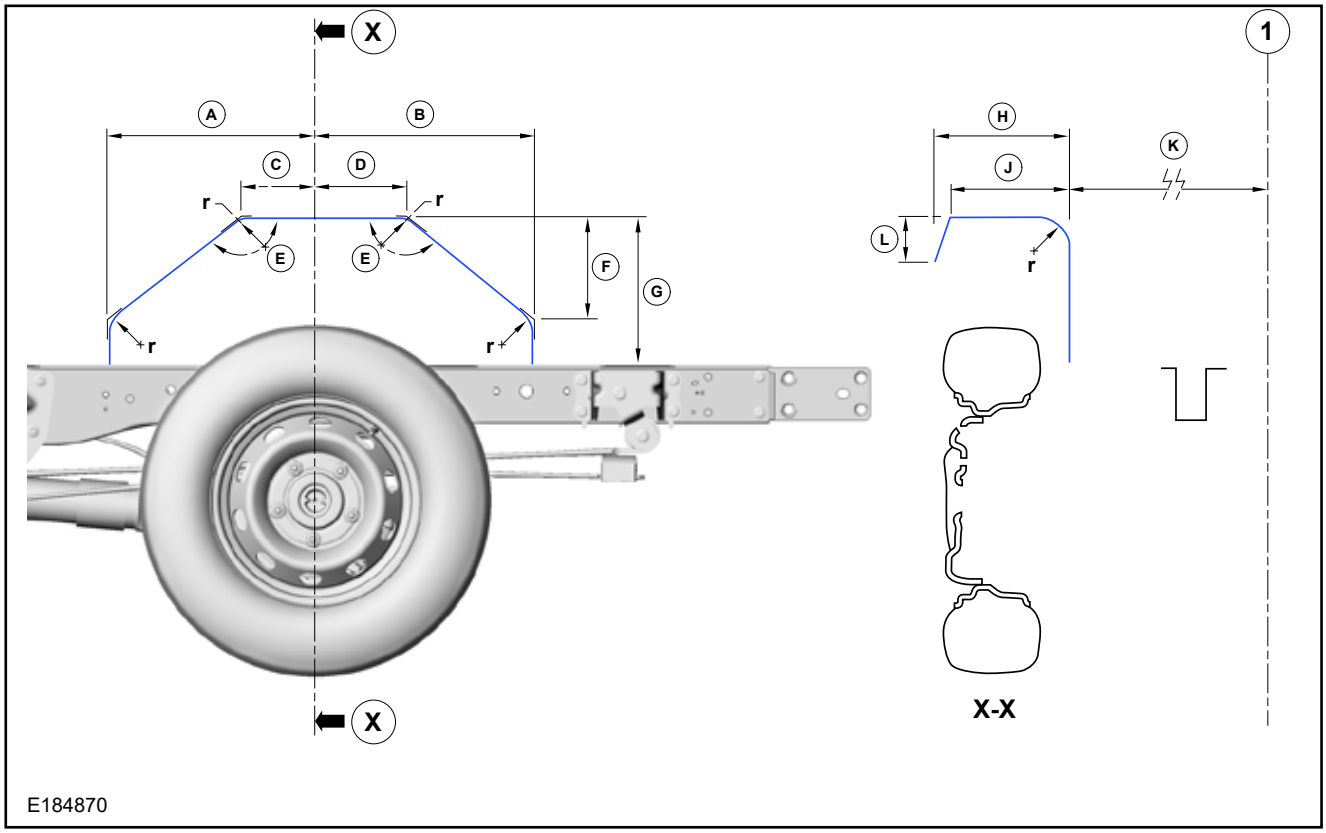
- 5.1.1 Body Structures - General Info
- 5.14 Corrosion Prevention

5.1.7 Integrated Bodies and Conversions

For integral structures such as ambulances or motorhomes, with increased rear overhang built onto the chassis, the following applies:

- Reduced departure angles, e.g. rear entry step, should be discussed with the end user/customer. Consider removable components to avoid damage on ferries or lowloaders.
- Unique spare wheel stowage may be required if obscured by rear step, check for accessibility.
- The recommended dimensions for wheelhouses on conversions are outlined in figures E184870 and E184871.
- If a Chassis Cab or Cutaway vehicle is ordered with the optional spare tire, it will be necessary to provide access on the side of the second unit body for spare tire winch access. Alternatively, the spare tire maybe relocated.

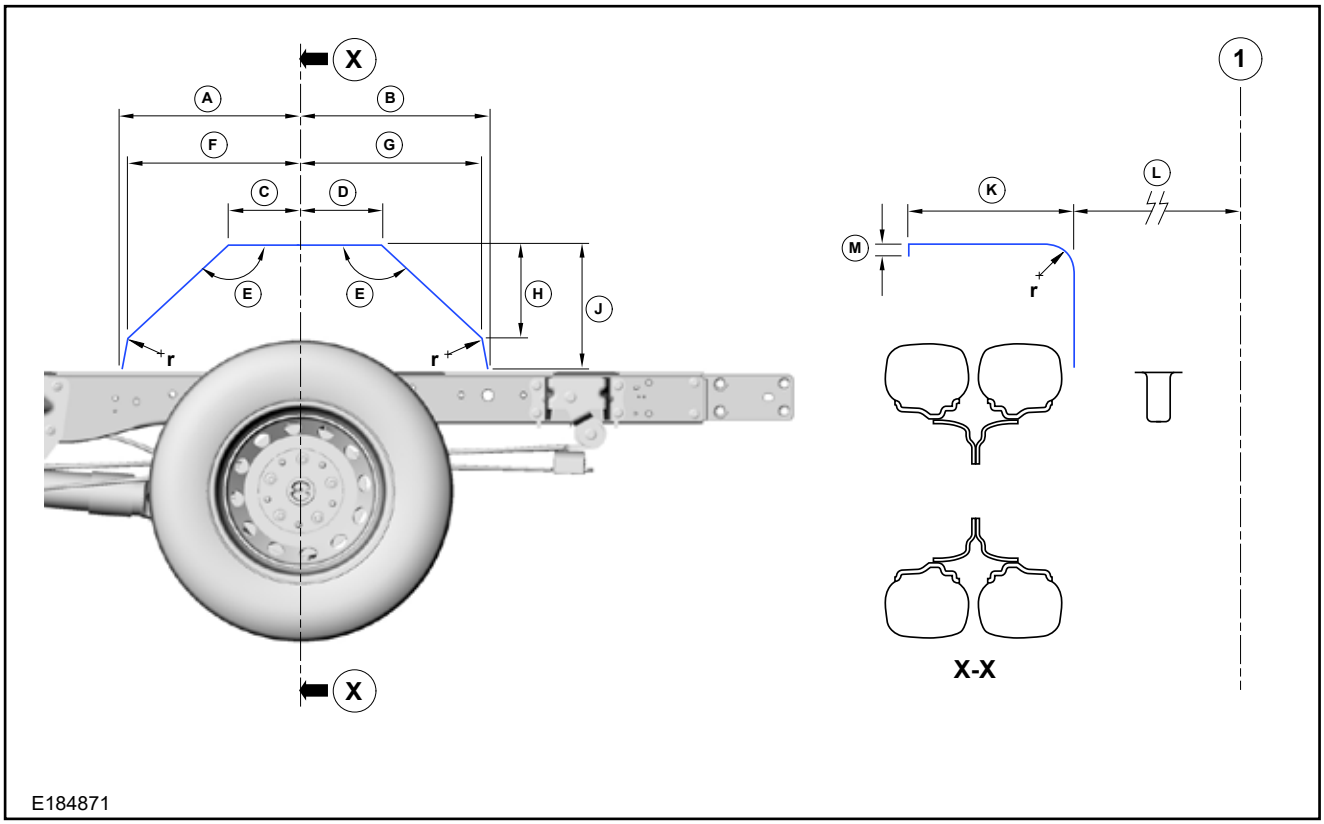
Chassis Cab/Cutaway with Single Rear Wheel Axle



E184870

Wheelhouse Dimensions for Chassis Cab/Cutaway with Single Rear Wheel Axle			
A	16.5” (418mm)	G	10.4” (265mm)
B	17.6” (448mm)	H	10.5” (268mm)
C	6.5” (165mm)	J	9.5” (242mm)
D	7.6” (194mm)	K	27.4” (696mm)
E	141º	L	3.1 (80mm)
F	7.8” (197mm)	r	2.9” (75mm)
1	Center line of Vehicle		
X	Section through Center of Wheelhouse		

Chassis Cab/Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheel Axle



Wheelhouse Dimensions for Chassis Cab/Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheel Drive Axle			
A	16.5” (418mm)	G	17.2” (436mm)
B	17.6” (448mm)	H	7.7” (197mm)
C	6.5” (165mm)	J	10.4 (265mm)
D	7.6” (194mm)	K	15.9” (403mm)
E	141º	L	22.7” (577mm)
F	16” (406mm)	M	1.1” (27mm)
1	Center line of Vehicle	r	2.9” (75mm)
X	Section through Center of Wheelhouse		

5.1.8 Chassis Cab/Cutaway

WARNINGS:

Excessive heat can build up from the exhaust system, in particular from the catalytic converter. Ensure adequate heat shields are maintained.

All fixings through the floor, sides or roof must be sealed.

Caution recatagorized as waring

Uneven load distribution could result in unacceptable handling and braking characteristics.

CAUTIONS: (BEV Only) For E-Transit Battery Electric Vehicle Chassis Cab, conversions behind the B-pillar may exhibit low mass inertia, resulting in longitudinal vibrations of the cabin (nodding). These can be addressed by applying a Tuned Mass Damper, please consult your dealer for availability.

NOTE: E-Transit BEV Single Chassis Cab Variant
If fitting a platform/float/stake style second unit body, Ford Motor Company REQUIRES a Tuned Mass Damper system to be fitted.

The required kit number is KTNK41-110867-A*
When carrying out vehicle conversions/modifications the following points should be considered:

- Make sure that all of the reinforced holes provided in the Chassis/Cutaway frame top surface are used for full length bodies or subframes, see figures F50100, F50098 and F50099.
- Make sure that the vehicle structural integrity is maintained.
- Do not drill into closed frame body members.
- Make sure that the design for the body alterations or additional structure disperses the load evenly.
- Re-paint metal edges after cutting or drilling. All metal edges must comply with exterior and interior protection legislation.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

- Ensure that any additional equipment in the vicinity of the fuel tank will not damage the tank in

a crash condition.

NOTE: The reinforcement plate in cab back panel to chassis member area must be maintained. Do not drill or cut into this area, see figure E167672 later in this section.

For additional information, refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.

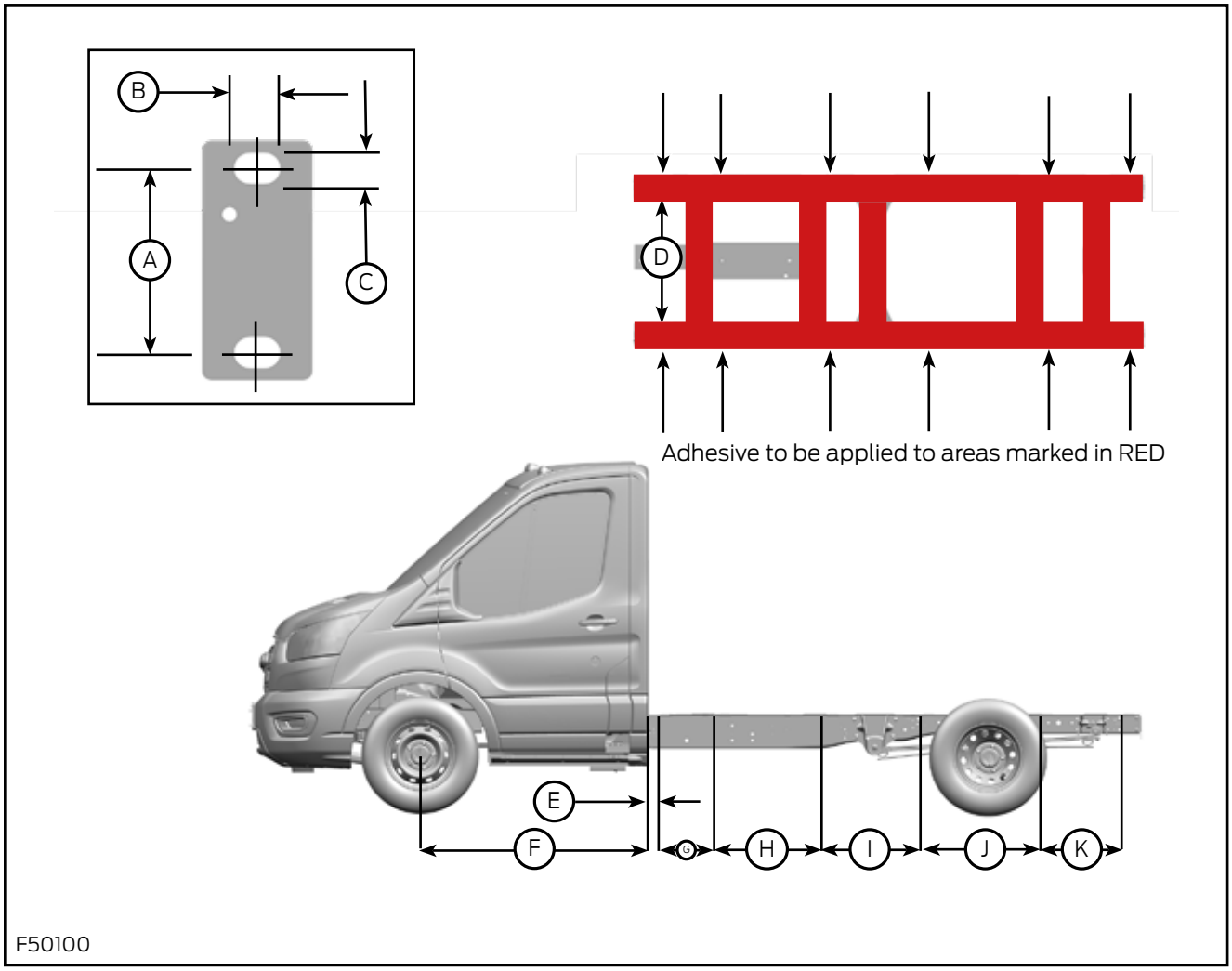
For any conversion structure attached to - or mounted onto - the base vehicle cab structure, the following applies:

- Ensure that neither the conversion structure nor the existing vehicle structure get pre-loaded by the assembly process.
- Adhesive jointing is recommended but should be supplemented with mechanical fasteners to prevent initial peel and long term failure.
- When attaching a second unit body on Lightweight Chassis SVO (AALA1) applications, it is mandatory to apply adhesive to the top surface of both chassis rails and all cross members, as well as bolting to the chassis rails at all the existing fixing points. The adhesive specification used must be either a combination of Betaprime 5404 AND Betaseal 1858-1, or an equivalent that meets the material specification, WSS-M11P57-A5.
- Spread bolt loads to minimize local stress

When mounting a Second Unit Body, the attachment holes shown in figures F50098, F50099, F50100 should be used.

Illustrations updated

Body Attachment Holes - Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 138" Wheelbase



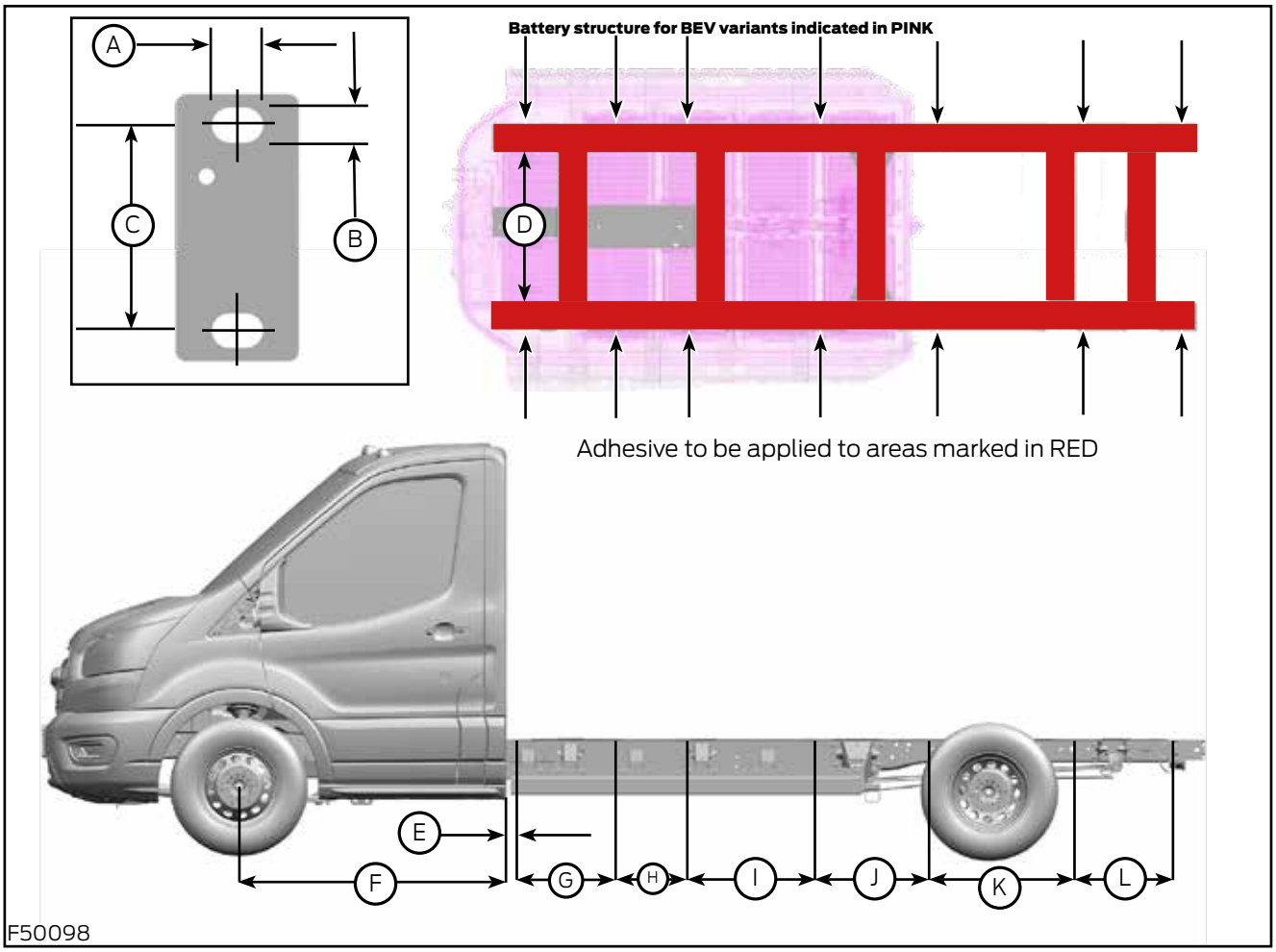
F50100

Body Attachment Holes -Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 138" Wheelbase			
A	1" (25mm)	G	14.5" (367mm)
B	0.7" (17mm)	H	26.2" (665mm)
C	3.9" (100mm)	I	23.3" (592mm)
D	32.8" (832mm)	J	28.7" (730mm)
E	4.2" (108mm)	K	19.9" (506mm)
F	55.4" (1407mm)	-	-

Refer to 1.10 Package and Ergonomics Vehicle Dimensions for wheelbase dimensions.

See Incomplete Vehicle Manual (Standard F/CMVSS 301) for more information.

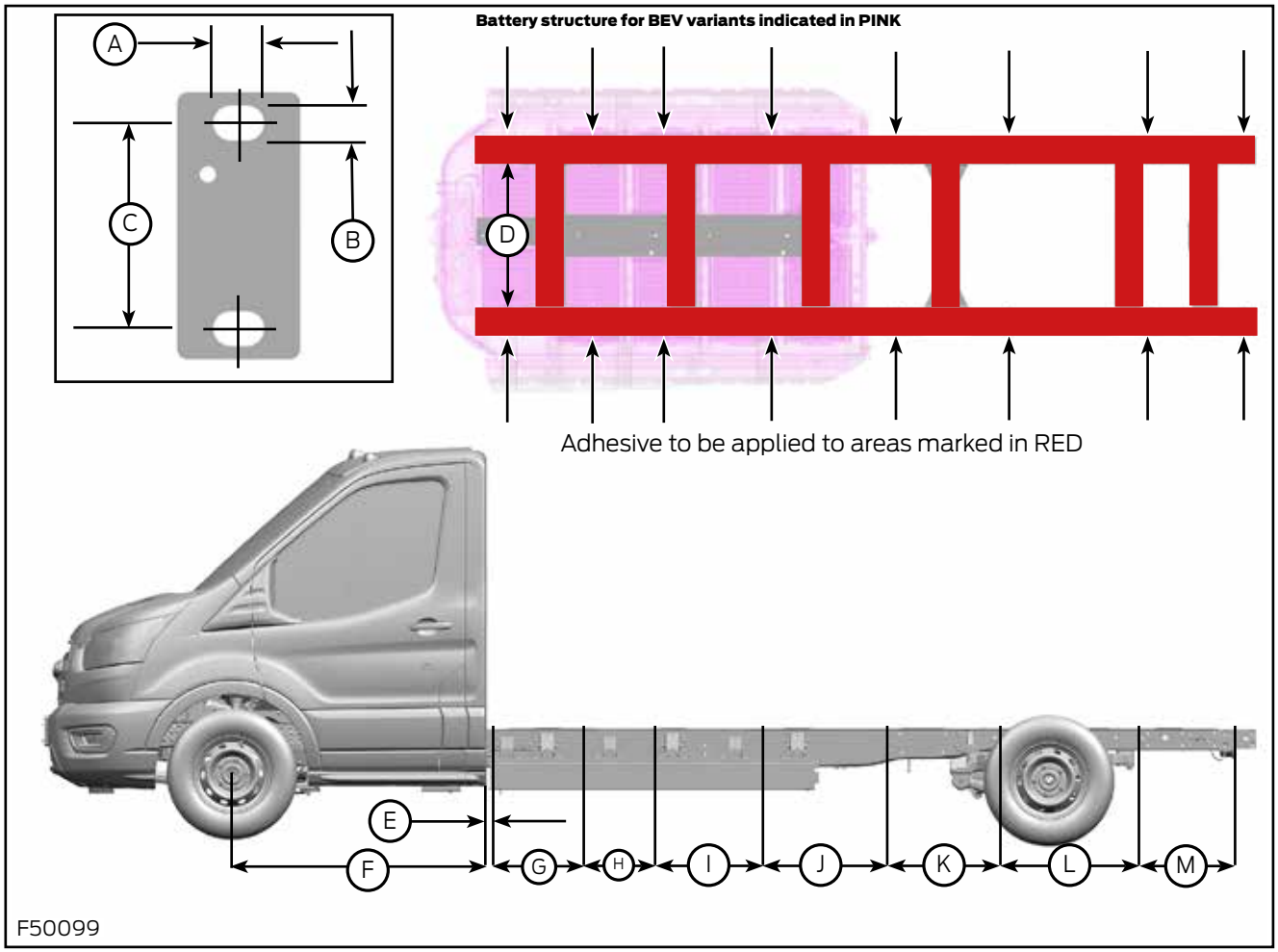
Body Attachment Holes - Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 156” Wheelbase



Body Attachment Holes - Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 156” Wheelbase			
A	1” (25mm)	G	17.7” (450mm)
B	0.7” (17mm)	H	14.5” (367mm)
C	3.9” (100mm)	I	26.2” (665mm)
D	32.8” (832mm)	J	23.3” (592mm)
E	4.2” (108mm)	K	28.7" (730mm)
F	55.4” (1407mm)	L	19.9” (506mm)

Refer to 1.10 Package and Ergonomics Vehicle Dimensions for wheelbase dimensions.
See Incomplete Vehicle Manual (Standard F/CMVSS 301) for more information.

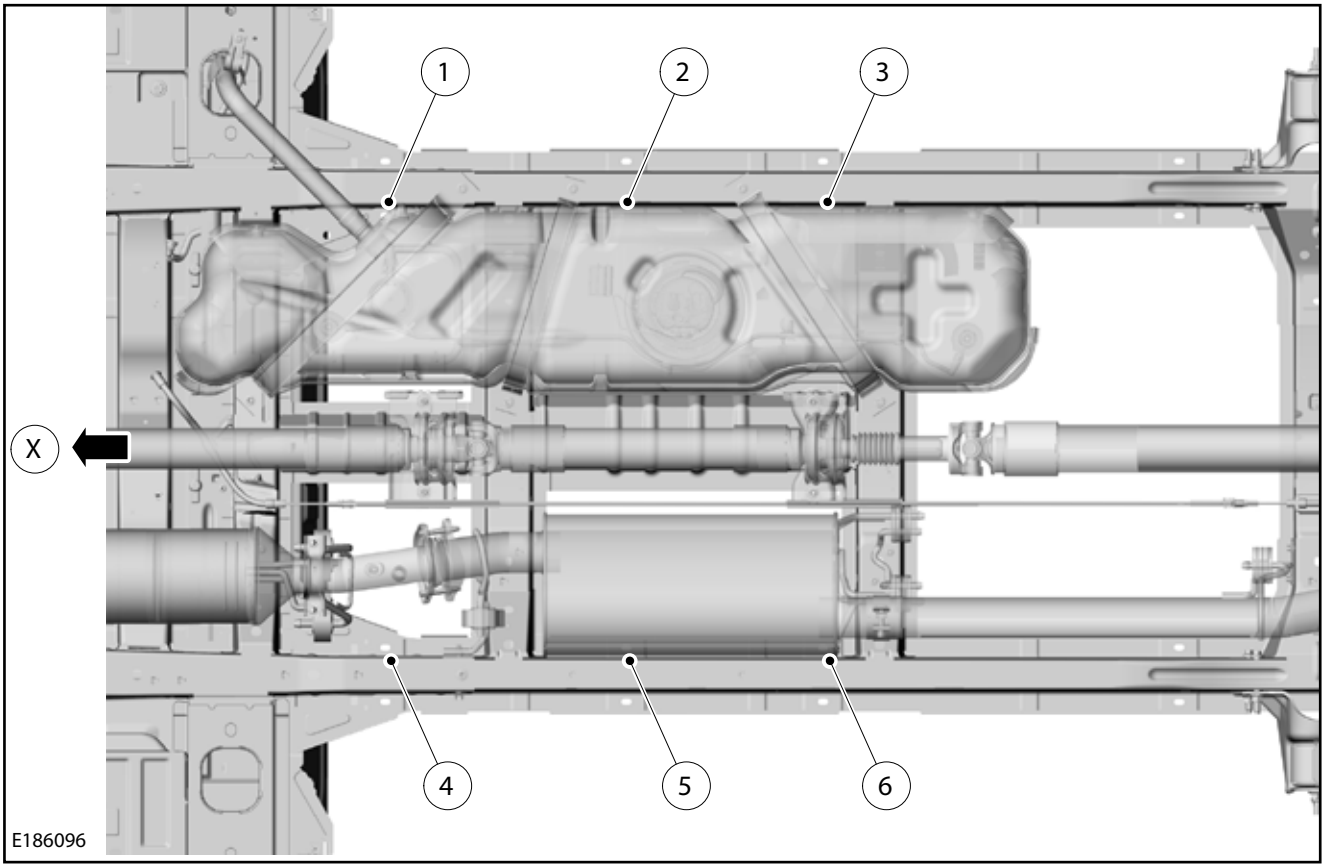
Body Attachment Holes - Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 178” Wheelbase



Body Attachment Holes Chassis/Cutaway Frame Top Flange 178” Wheelbase			
A	1” (25mm)	H	14.5” (367mm)
B	0.7” (17mm)	I	22.4” (568mm)
C	3.9” (100mm)	J	26.2” (665mm)
D	32.8” (832mm)	K	23.3” (592mm)
E	4.2” (108mm)	L	28.7” (730mm)
F	55.4” (1407mm)	M	19.9” (506mm)
G	17.7” (450mm)	-	-

Refer to 1.10 Package and Ergonomics Vehicle Dimensions for wheelbase dimensions.
See Incomplete Vehicle Manual (Standard F/CMVSS 301) for more information.

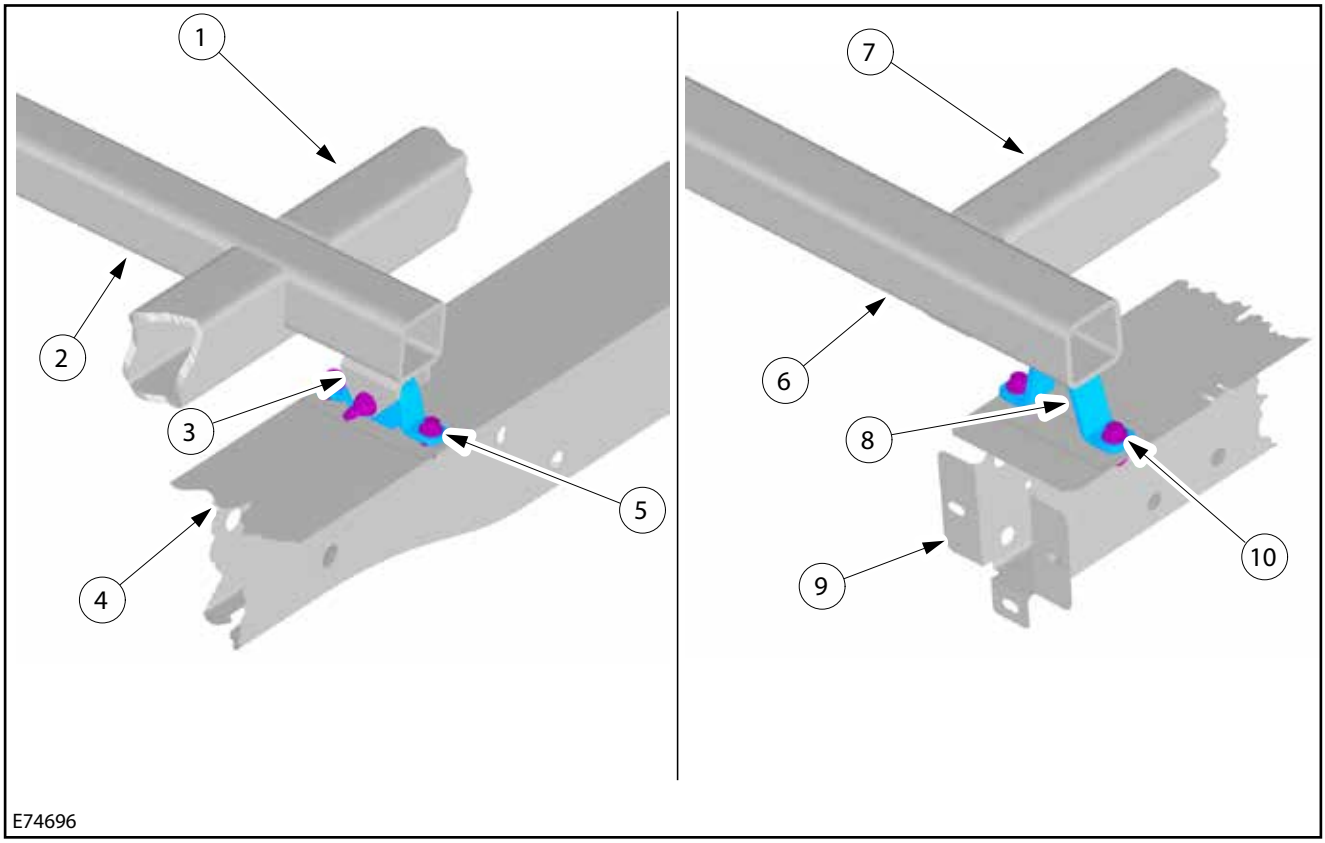
Recommended Second Unit Body Fitting Strategy (Bottom View)



NOTE: Some of the attachment holes are difficult to reach or obscured by the fuel tank. See figure E186096. It is recommended that Inboard attachment points 1 and 4 should always be used. However, attachment points 2,3,5 and 6 can be omitted.

Consult Incomplete Vehicle Manual for further recommendations/requirements.

Subframe Attachment to Chassis Frame



Item	Description
1	Subframe Longitudinal
2	Subframe Outriggers
3	Compliant Mount
4	Chassis Frame
5	M10 Bolts and Self Locking Nuts
6	Subframe Outriggers
7	Subframe Longitudinal
8	Solid or Fixed Mount
9	Chassis Frame
10	M10 Bolts and Self Locking Nuts

It is recommended to design subframes in the way that there is no adverse strain on the vehicle structure. Use compliant and fixed mounts to attach to the vehicle body.

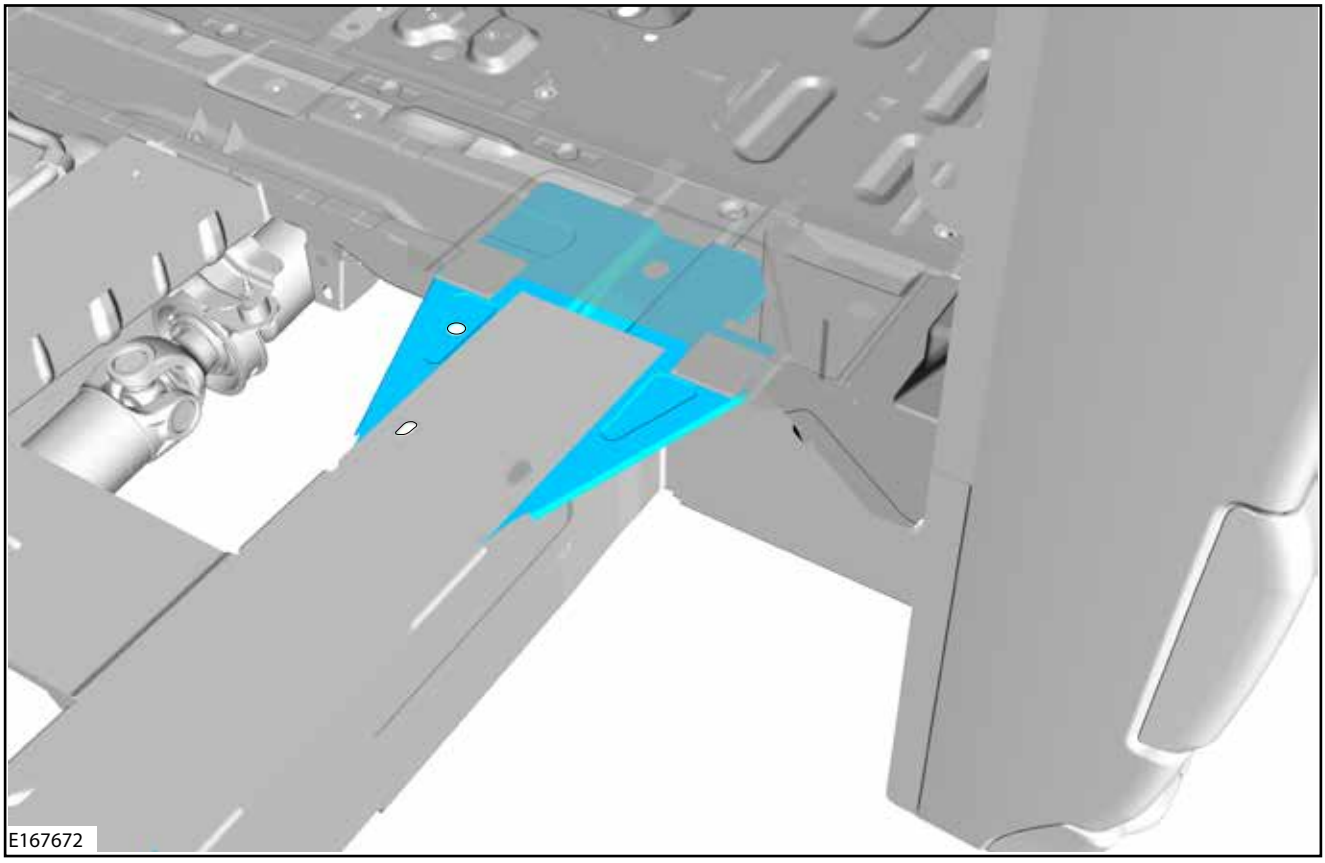
Subframe ends must be relieved at forward end to minimize local contact stress concentrations.
Refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.

It is recommended to mount the longitudinal brackets with a clearance to the chassis frame top surface.

Stiff subframes, for example closed section longitudinal rigidly connected with similar section cross members, may damage the chassis frame by preventing its natural flexing. Therefore appropriate compliant mounts should be used. Please refer to E74696.

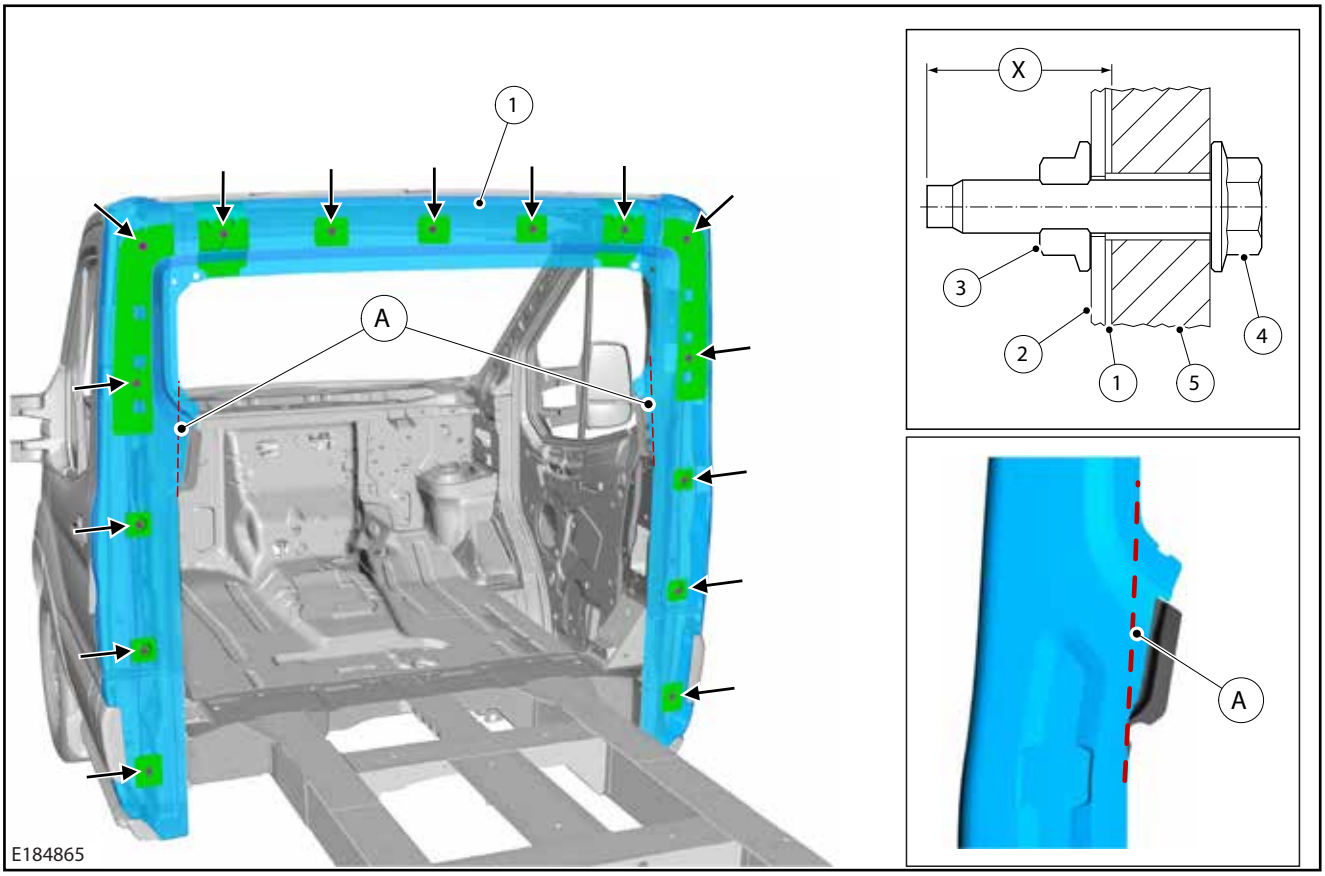
Each set of brackets must use 2 x M10 bolt grade 8.8 minimum.

Reinforcement Plate on Single Chassis Cab Vehicles



Do not drill or cut in the reinforcement plate on single chassis cab/cutaway vehicles.

5.1.9 Cutaways



Item	Description
A	Flange trim line
1	Cutaway flange with added reinforcement
2	Reinforcement plate (see positions arrowed)
3	Non threaded weld nuts (15x see positions arrowed)
4	Use MR8 TAPTITE 2000® bolts - not supplied (15x positions) or equivalent size, gauge, self-tapping fastener.
5	Second Unit Body
X	Maximum intrusion 1" (25mm)

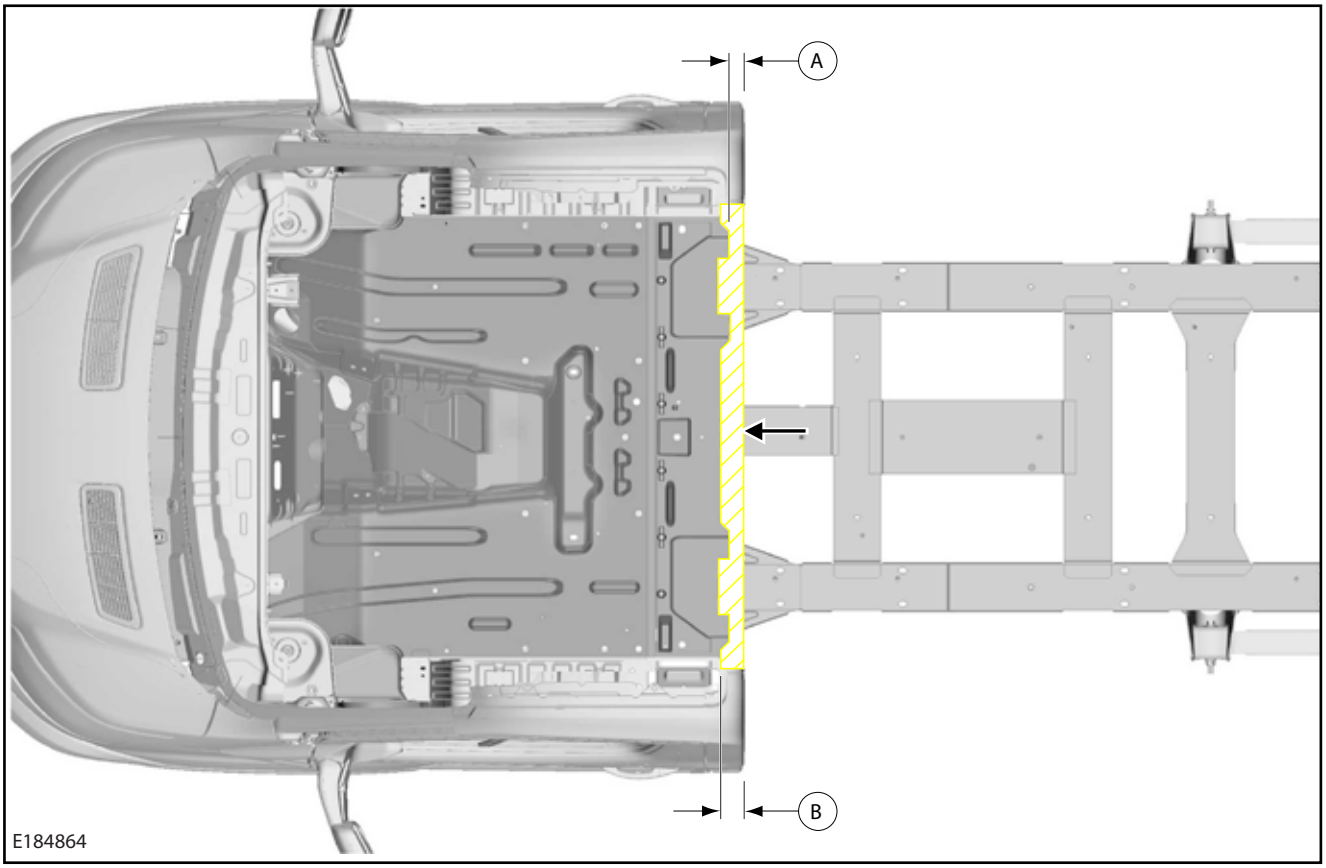
NOTE: When trimming the edge, do not cut further outboard than the trim line 'A' (Left hand side shown, right hand side symmetrically opposite) as shown in figure E184865. Do not cut outboard of the last spotweld joining the two panels together on each flange. The cut must be more than 0.2" (5mm) away from the last weld.

For attaching a second unit body to the Cutaway cabin, fifteen weld nuts are provided. See figure E184865. All fifteen weld nuts must be used. The bolts must not exceed 1" (25.4mm) intrusion into the vehicle cabin structure.

NOTE: If implementing a fully sealed body, a minimum of 23.3in² (150cm²) air extraction cross sectional area is required on each side of the vehicle cab. An ideal position for the extractors would be in the back panel of the cab.

If this is not feasible, then extractors should be situated rearward of the B-pillars such that there is a free airflow path equating to at least the minimum extractor effective cross sectional area, both upstream and downstream of each extractor, to maintain windshield defogging performance and door closing efforts. Extraction should not be installed near exhaust components nor areas exposed to potential fuel spillage.

Cutaway - Floor Spacer



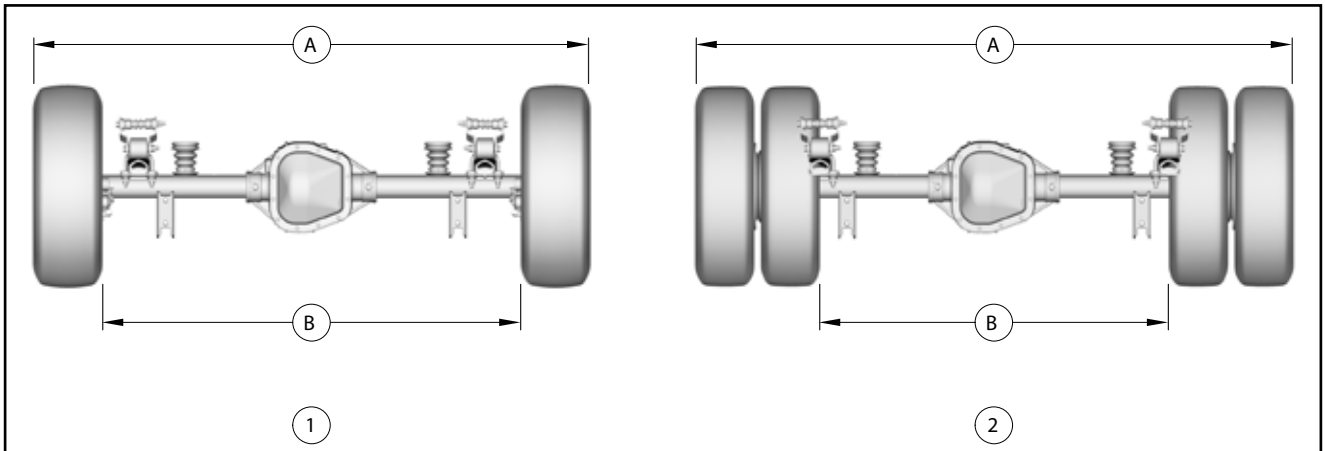
Item	Description
A	1.8” (45mm)
B	3.1” (77mm)

Cross hatched area shown in figure E184864 is a floor gap and will require a spacer plate (not supplied) to close off the gap on Cutaway vehicles for certain types of upfits including box vans, utility bodies and similar.

NOTE: Check Precautionary Drill Zones for the fuel tank before fitting a spacer plate.

NOTE: Added spacer and attachments through the floor must be sealed for water/exhaust fumes.

Cutaway Rear Axle



E185648

Chassis Cab/Cutaway Rear Axle			
Single Rear Wheel (1)		**Dual Rear Wheel (2)**	
A	78.3” (1987mm)	A	83.1” (211mm)
B	59” (1498mm)	B	48.4” (1230mm)

5.1.10 Front End Integrity for Cooling, Crash, Aerodynamics and Lighting

Cooling: Continuous air flow through the front end and engine compartment is not to be hindered by adding any additional equipment.

Lighting: Do not alter the lighting system.

Crash: Do not cut, drill or weld any parts that are load path relevant in case of crash. Do not add material in the crash zone. This could affect the crash sensor calibration.

The side airbag system is not permitted if:

- A swiveling device is fitted on the front seats.
- Any additional material or structure is attached to the B-pillar inner and/or outer area.

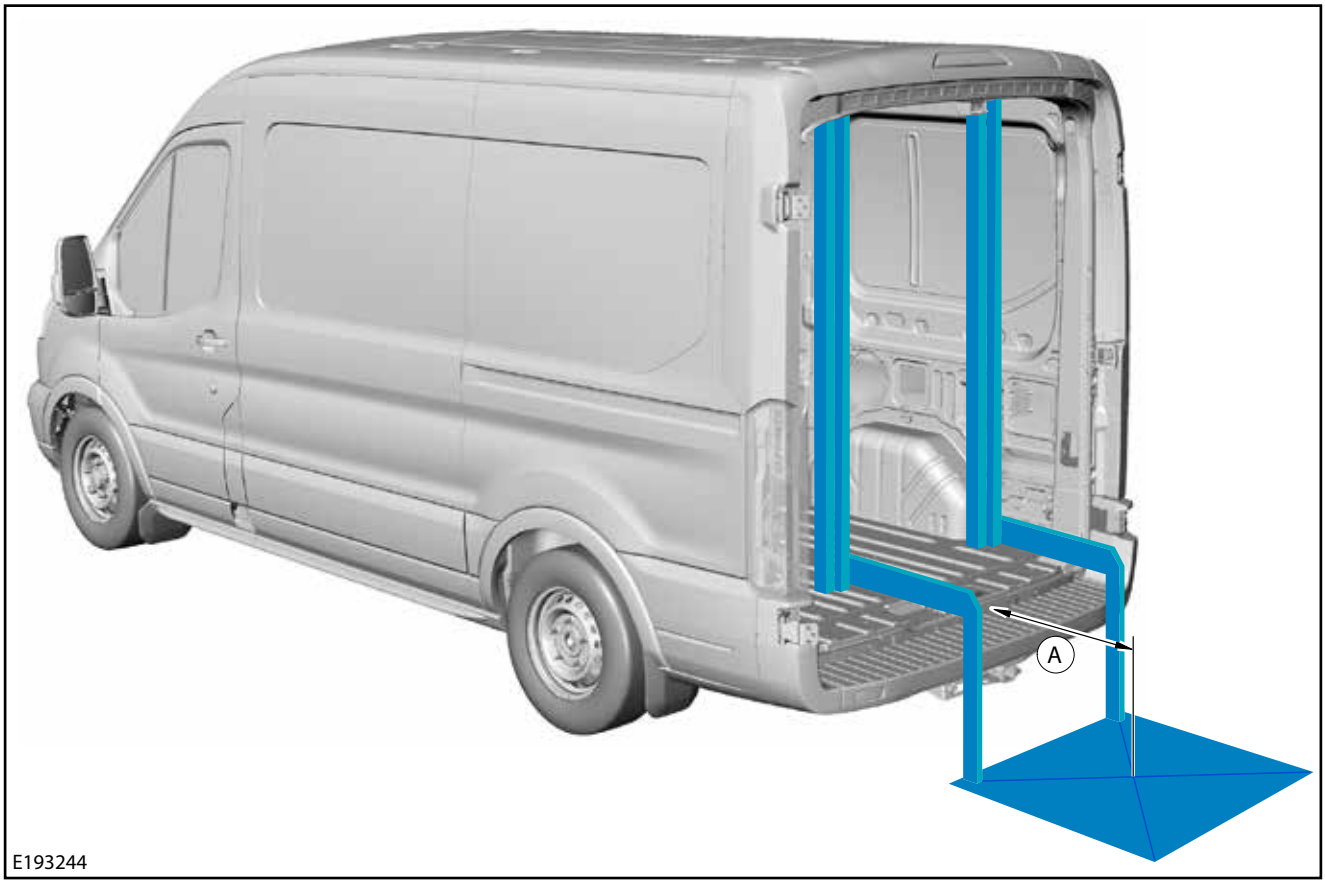
Aerodynamics All aerodynamic drag reduction devices should not hinder the performance of cooling system, lighting and crash requirements.

For a summary of aerodynamic drag reduction device refer to BBAS website: https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

Installation of the drag reduction devices should comply with the “no drill zone” requirement.

5.2 Hydraulic Lifting Equipment

5.2.1 Hydraulic Liftgate



Item	Description
A	39” (1000mm)

It is recommended to fix lift framework on bottom and top sides by using reinforcing plates and through bolts. It is also recommended to design and/or locate the reinforcing plates in a way that load can be routed into adjacent reinforced body structure.

Hydraulic underslung tail lifts are not recommended for Transit Van or Wagon.

For Chassis Cab and Cutaway with tail lift design it is recommended to use unique body sub-frame for fixing to Chassis Cab and Cutaway structure.

5.3 Racking Systems

5.3.1 Racking Systems

WARNING: Racking Systems must not be designed in a way that allows for the Center of Gravity to be raised beyond specified limits.

Refer to 1.12 Load Distribution.

WARNING: Racking that is added must be designed to enable the user to secure items on the rack to avoid items shifting during motion.

For attaching a racking system, it is recommended to use the marked areas shown in figure E192242.

NOTE: Upper fixing locations are not structural and take a 30kg maximum load only.

- Frames should be rigid, self-supporting and bolted through the floor. Use reinforcements on the underfloor.
- It is not recommended to drill through the floor in combination with plastic load floor liners.
- For alternative fixing through the floor to the side members, refer to Frame and Body Mounting section of this manual, Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing.
  Refer to 5.15 Frame and Body Mounting.
- Load compartment tie downs can also be used for additional fixing locations.
  Refer to 5.4 Loadspace.
- Ensure proper sealing against ingress of water, salt, dust, after cutting or drilling the body. Use Ford approved sealing and finishing materials, and underbody corrosion protection.
- To minimize stress in body side upper area, additional cross brace roof bows are to be used.
- If linings are planned for the inside of the load area, all racking through bolts must be designed to be accessible through the lining to the body structure with spreader plate.
- No load bearing fixing to the lining only.
- For increased crash performance the racking system should be designed with diagonal reinforcements.
- Vehicle should be equipped with a bulkhead to give best protection to driver and front passengers.
- Preferably, there should be a rack each side to balance the vehicle load.

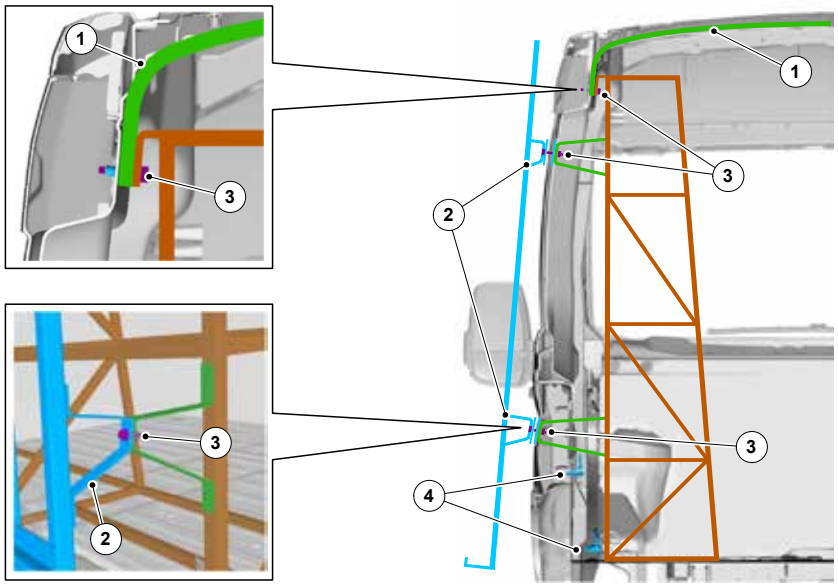
For additional information, refer to:

- 5.14 Corrosion Prevention
- 5.4 Loadspace

For additional information on Precautionary Drilling, refer to:

- 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides
- 5.1 Body
- 5.6 Body Closures

Glass Carrying Racking - Recommended Fixing Locations



E176512

Item	Description
1	Full width cross bow brace.
2	Load bearing attachments, through body side to internal structure (2x minimum top and bottom).
3	Through bolts.
4	Load compartment tie down loops.

Glass Racking on Outside of Van - Through Fixed to Internal Strong Structure (Recommended Minimum)

Glass Racking on Outside of Van

For designing glass carrying rack on body side outer, construct internal structure and bolt through the body side to the internal structure, using the recommended fixing locations, see figures E192242 and E176512, or load compartment tie downs.

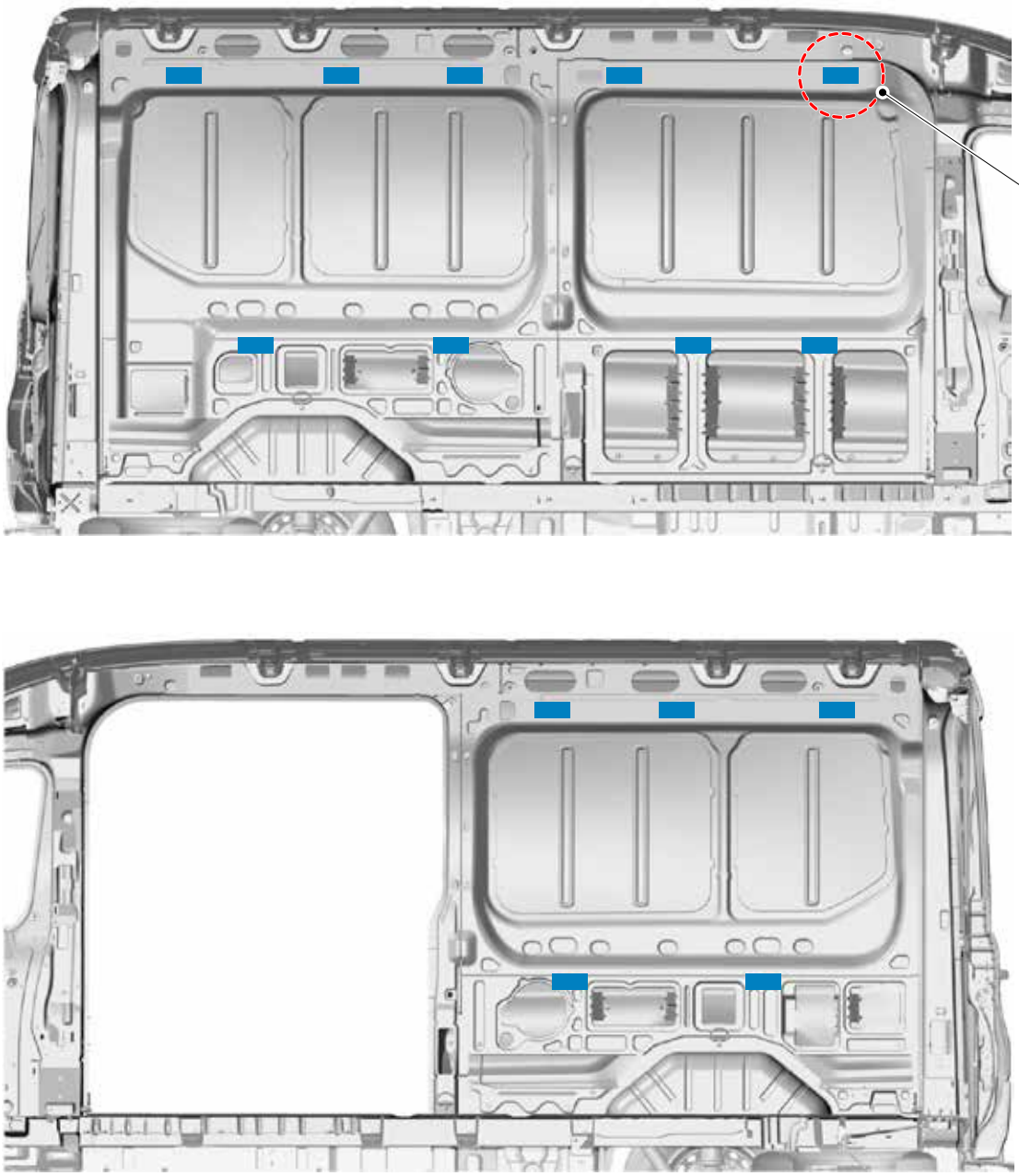
For designing glass carrying rack on body side outer, the following unique requirements are recommended:

- Construct the internal structure and bolt through the body side to the external structure. See figure E176512.
- Internal structures should be rigid, self-supporting and bolted through the floor. Use reinforcements on the underfloor.
- Avoid the no-drill zones when selecting fixing locations.

Refer to 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides.

- It is recommended to balance the vehicle load. Refer to 1.12 Load Distribution.
- Distribute the force equally to the fixed structure.

Recommended Fixing Locations (Medium Roof shown)



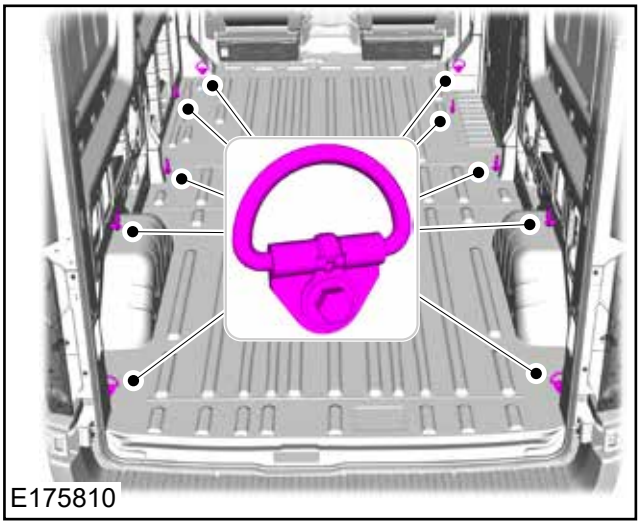
E192242

Item	Description
A	Low Roof Vehicles do not have this fixing location

5.4 Loadspace

All vehicles are fitted with load compartment tie downs. These are all 'D' rings as shown in E175810. Not all vehicles will have all locations shown, it will depend on the base vehicle.

Refer to 5.3 Racking Systems.


E175810

5.5 Internal Partitions/Bulkhead

Driver and Front Passenger(s) Protection on Van, Bus

WARNING: Do not obstruct any of bulkhead vents.

It is the Vehicle Modifier's responsibility to ensure local current legislation, governing bulkheads and protective window grilles, is met. It is also the Modifier's responsibility to ensure legal load constraint requirements if using a non-Ford standard bulkhead.

5.6 Body Closures

5.6.1 Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System

CAUTION: To avoid locking system security complications, it is recommended to discuss with your local Ford dealer prior to conversions taking place.

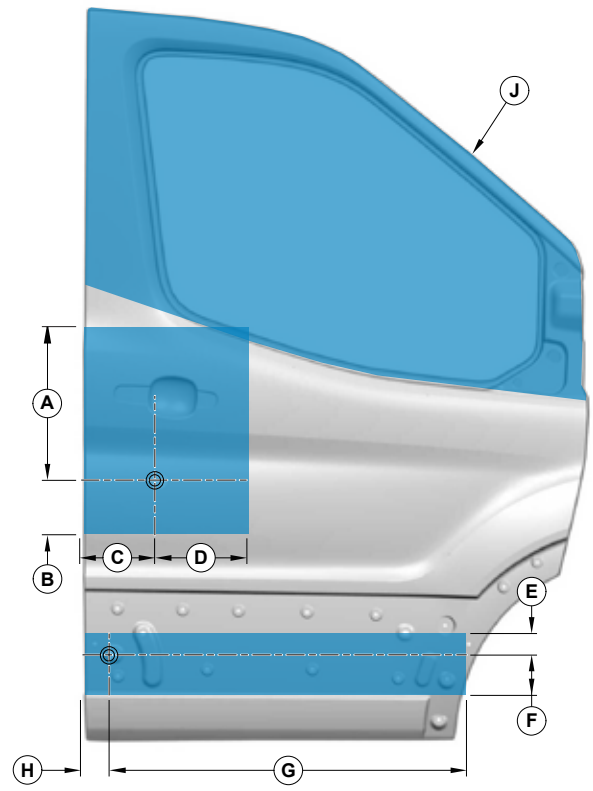
NOTE: It is not recommended to alter the locking system or damage the security shielding around the lock and latch.

When removing and reapplying door seals, take care to fit correctly using the same seals, as this is critical to door closing efforts. Any modification to the sealing flanges or surfaces will require consultation with your local Ford dealer. This may also include air extraction/ venting adjustments to assist door close efforts if significant changes to closures are required.

The Body Control Module is designed to work specifically with the Ford Transit lock and latch mechanisms and therefore drives latches to lock and unlock for specific time periods. Additional power locking functionality should be based around the use of additional Ford Transit latch mechanisms. Additional latches can be driven via relays connected in parallel with existing latches.

The following figures outline the areas in which it is not advisable to drill.

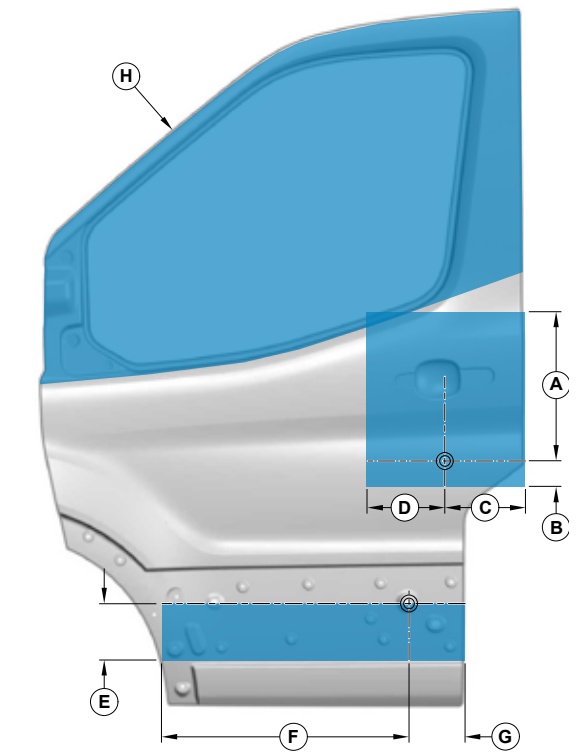
No Drill Zone - Right Hand Side Door



E188546

Item	Description
A	16.93” (430mm)
B	1.97” (50mm)
C	7.87” (200mm)
D	5.91” (150mm)
E	0.79” (20mm)
F	3.15” (80mm)
G	31.5” (800mm)
H	2.56” (65mm)
J	No drill zone - Airbag deployment

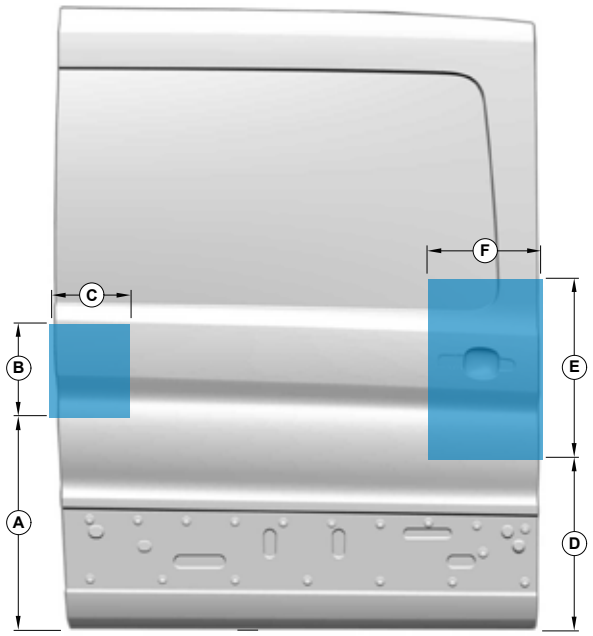
No Drill Zone - Left Hand Side Door



E188547

Item	Description
A	16.93” (430mm)
B	1.97” (50mm)
C	7.87” (200mm)
D	5.91” (150mm)
E	3.94” (100mm)
F	23.62” (600mm)
G	2.76” (70mm)
H	No drill zone - Airbag deployment

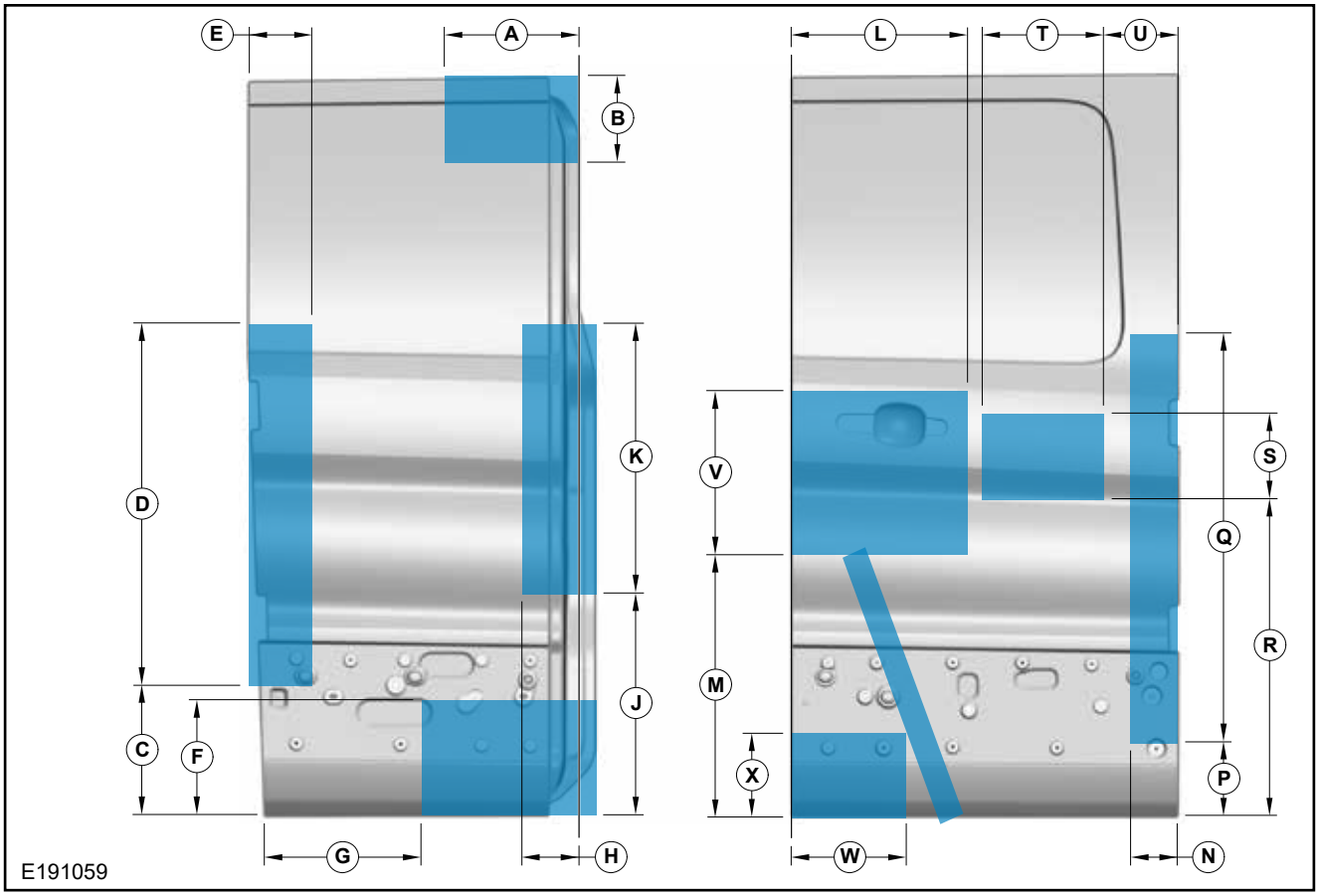
No Drill Zone - Side Sliding Doors



E188548

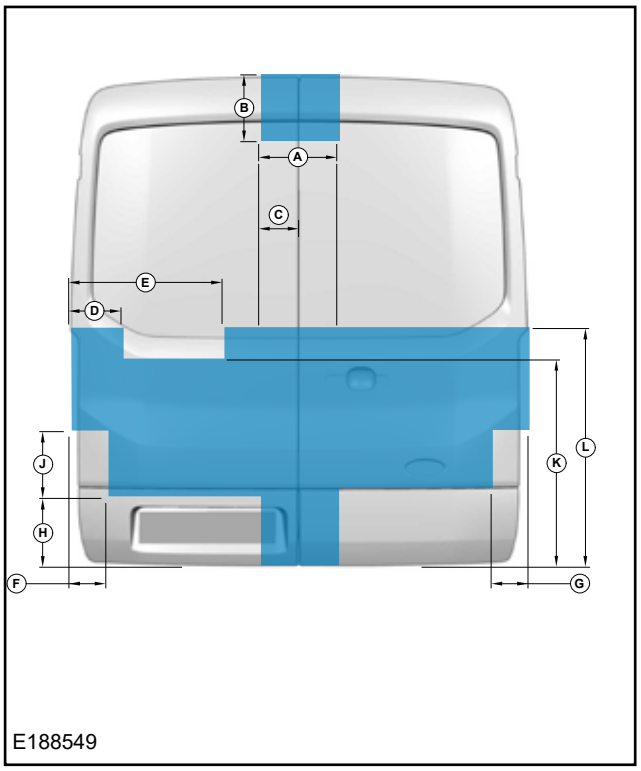
Item	Description
A	21.65” (550mm)
B	13.78” (350mm)
C	5.91” (150mm)
D	19.69” (500mm)
E	24.41” (620mm)
F	17.72” (450mm)

No Drill Zones - 60/40 Opening Side Cargo Doors



Item	Description
A	9.84” (250mm)
B	7.09” (180mm)
C	11.81” (300mm)
D	30.31” (770mm)
E	4.33” (110mm)
F	10.63” (270mm)
G	14.17” (360mm)
H	6.3” (160mm)
J	19.69” (500mm)
K	21.65” (550mm)
L	14.57” (370mm)
M	19.29” (490mm)
N	4.33” (110mm)
P	6.5” (165mm)
Q	34.25” (870mm)
R	28.35” (720mm)
S	3.94” (100mm)
T	7.09” (180mm)
U	7.09” (180mm)
V	17.91” (455mm)
W	9.45” (240mm)
X	5.91” (150mm)

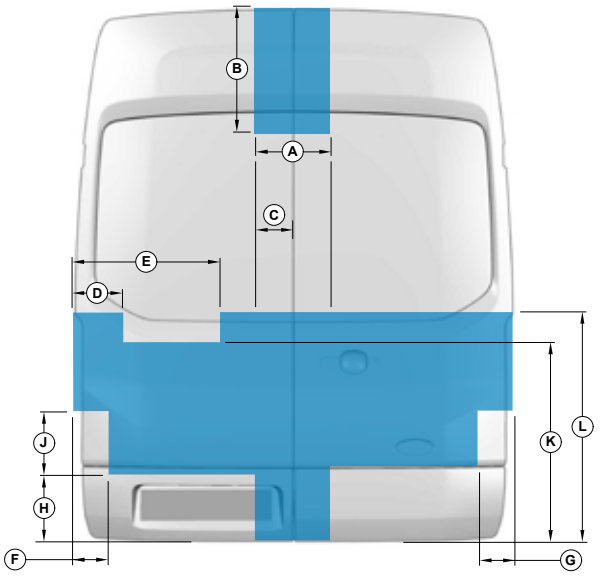
No Drill Zone - Rear Cargo Doors, Low and Medium Roof



E188549

Item	Description
A	13.39” (340mm)
B	12.6” (320mm)
C	6.69” (170mm)
D	9.84” (250mm)
E	23.62” (600mm)
F	7.87” (200mm)
G	7.87” (200mm)
H	11.81” (300mm)
J	11.81” (300mm)
K	31.5” (800mm)
L	36.22” (920mm)

No Drill Zone - Rear Cargo Doors, High Roof



E188550

Item	Description
A	13.39” (340mm)
B	21.7” (550mm)
C	6.69” (170mm)
D	21.7” (550mm)
E	13.39” (340mm)
F	7.87” (200mm)
G	7.87” (200mm)
H	11.81” (300mm)
J	11.81” (300mm)
K	31.5” (800mm)
L	36.22” (920mm)

5.7 Interior Trim

5.7.1 Load Compartment Interior Lining

Do not damage the lock, hinge, latch or check arm system (electrical cables, release system) when applying interior lining.

Be careful not to damage the weather shield (water shield covering inner door access hole) when removing or applying interior door trim.

WARNINGS:

Plan fixing points for other fitments, such as racking, to ensure through bolting can be achieved. Fixing to the lining material may be inadequate for normal safe operation of the vehicle.

Varnish or paint wooden interior cargo area panels if exposed to high humidity conditions.

The additional weight of the linings on doors may require additional reinforcements to the door and pillar at the hinge and check mechanism.

5.7.2 Plywood Lining/Cladding

CAUTION: Do not drill into the vehicle before checking 'No Drill Zones' and electrical wire routing.

For further information, refer to:

- 4.2 Wiring Installation and Routing Guides
- 5.6 Body Closures
- 5.1 Body

- Panels should be precision cut by machine, not by hand jigsaw, to reduce rough edges and splinters.
- Panels should be pre-drilled.
- Do not drill through floor panels, use existing load lashing points when securing the panels.
- It is recommended that when fitting a plywood floor that it is joint free.
- Use aluminum floor trims.
- Plywood should be water resistant (WBP, water and boil proof).
- It is recommended to use 3/8" (9mm) thickness for floors and 1/4" (6mm) thickness for side and door lining.

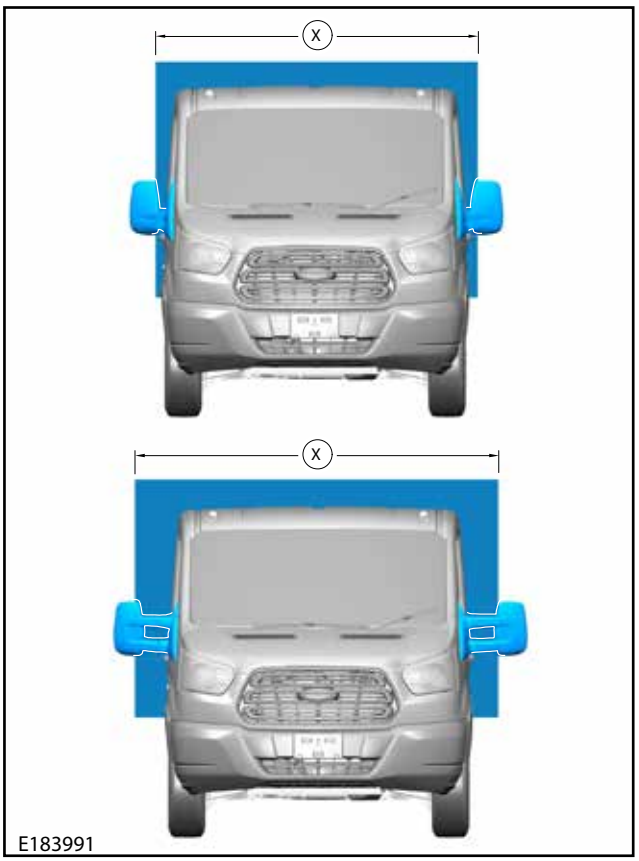
5.8 Door Mirrors

Short Arm Mirrors allow vehicle or trailer maximum widths of up to 86” (2184mm).

Long Arm Mirrors allow vehicle or trailer maximum widths of up to 96” (2438mm).

For availability of short and long arm mirrors or the less mirrors option, please contact your local Ford dealer.

NOTE: Vehicle modifiers must ensure that second unit body modifications comply with F/CMVSS requirements as specified in the IVM Manual.



5.9 Seats

NOTE: Care should be taken to properly wrap restraints to avoid contaminants during any modifications.

NOTE: When reassembling the seat and the seat belt, use specified bolts and ensure to apply the specified torque. For torque specifications consult the workshop manual.

NOTE: Ensure that all electrical connections between the airbag and seat are reassembled where present.

NOTE: Cycle seat belt (by pulling seat belt out) after assembly to ensure proper functionality.

NOTE: On eTransit BEV, if the passenger seat is not fitted (passenger seat delete option) or removed, the standard charger unit cord storage location is lost, and the modifier must provide an alternative storage feature for the cord.

For further information, refer to:

- 5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)
- 5.12 Seatbelt Systems

5.9.1 Van - Section added

CAUTION: Do not install seats in the rear cargo area of a van.

5.9.2 Windowed Van - Section added

The body and floor of a windowed van are not equipped with the appropriate reinforcements required for Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEM) rear seats and seat belt systems. Do not install original rear seats or rear seat belts.

For the installation of non OEM rear seats, the rear seats and seat belt systems need to comply and conform to all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and all applicable federal and state standards.

Refer to the Incomplete Vehicle Manual for further guidance https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

5.9.3 Heated Seats - Section added

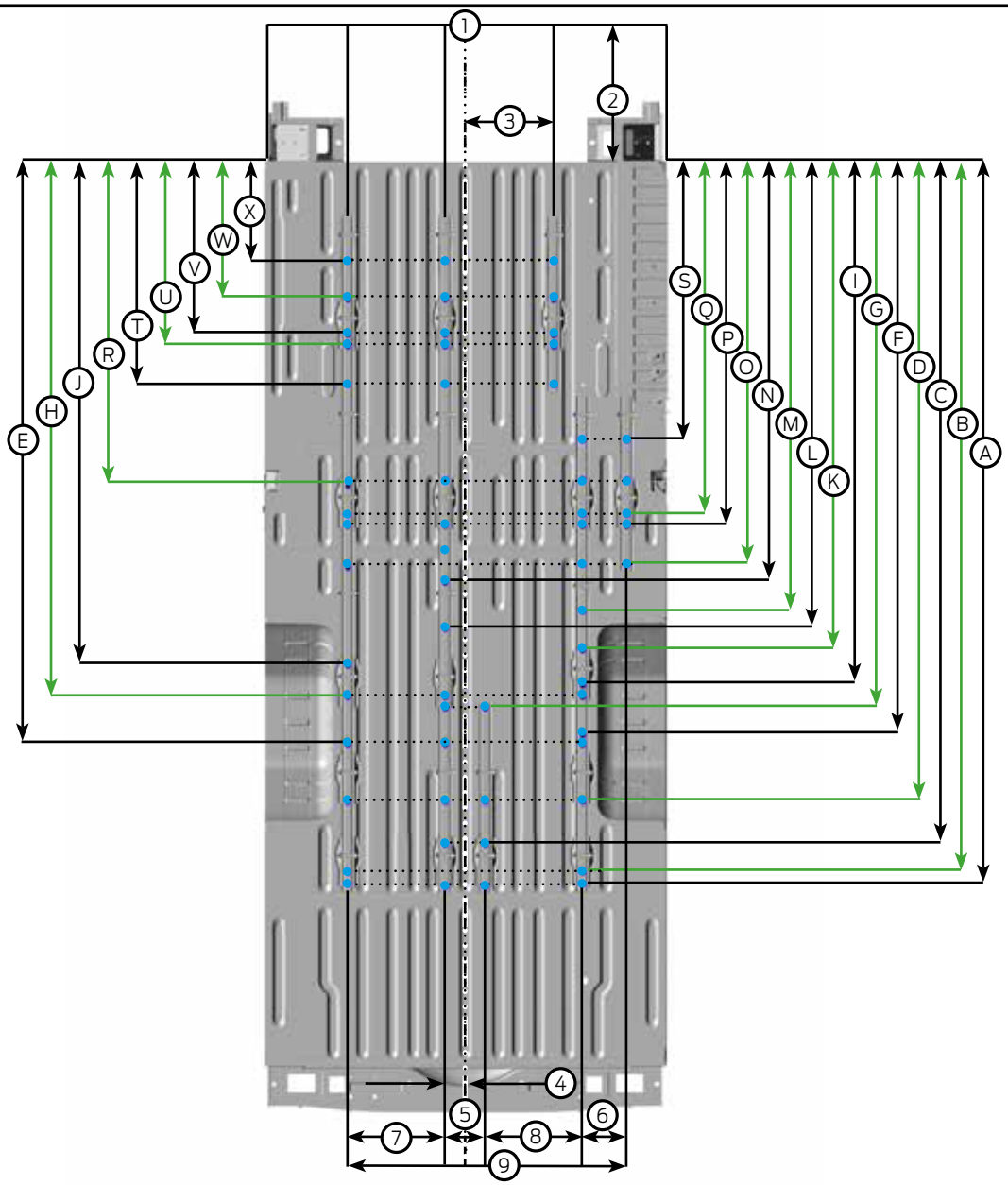
WARNING: The electrical feed for the original heated Ford seat must not be used for other purposes, e.g. other electrical consumers.

It is not advisable to retrofit heated seats due to potential airbag operation or malfunction (incorrect configuration).

5.9.4 Rear Seat Fixing Positions - Section added

Figure F50097 shows the second, third, fourth and fifth row seat fixing positions in the floor (15 seater bus). These positions are independent of the wheelbase. The fixings are always present but access to the fixing is dependent on floor pan. Access holes in the floor pan may be required to gain access to the fixing.

Rear Seat Fixing Positions (15 Seat Bus shown)



F50097

Item	Feature/Fixing Position (“(mm))	Item	Feature/Fixing Position (“(mm))	Item	Feature/Fixing Position (“(mm))
1	Center line of vehicle	D	110.27 (2800.8)	P	60.76 (1543.3)
2	Front Axle	E	100.52 (2553.1)	Q	55.84 (1418.3)
3	18.7 (475)	F	94.2 (2392.8)	R	48.02 (1219.6)
4	3.46 (88)	G	92.24 (2342.8)	S	38.48 (977.3)
5	6.93 (176)	H	90.27 (2292.8)	T	31.88 (809.8)
6	7.59 (192.7)	I	86.78 (2204.3)	U	29.91 (759.8)
7	16.76 (425.7)	J	84.17 (2137.8)	V	23.81 (604.8)
8	16.76 (425.7)	K	80.44 (2043.3)	W	17.12 (434.8)
9	48.02 (1219.7)	L	77.47 (1967.8)	X	11.32 (287.5)
A	124.42 (3160.3)	M	72.53 (1842.3)		
B	122.45 (3110.3)	N	69.93 (1776.3)		
C	117.61 (2987.3)	O	60.6 (1539.3)		

5.10 Glass, Frames and Mechanisms

5.10.1 Heated Rear Window

WARNING: The base system must not be tampered with (controlled by body control module and multiplex architecture) and no feeds taken from the associated wiring or controller.

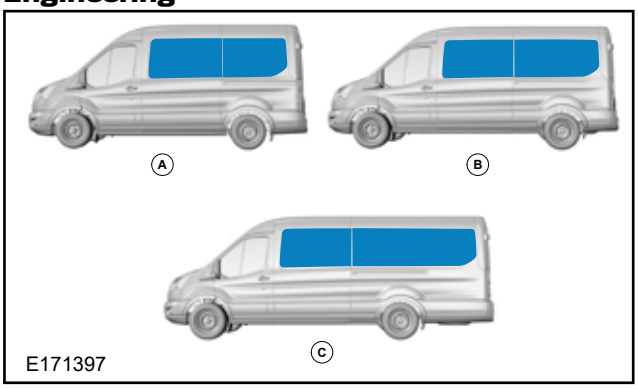
5.10.2 Rear and Side Windows - Section added

For windows, it is recommended to specify the base vehicle as a Kombi or Bus body. However, when converting a van, the following should be adhered to:

- Cut the outer panel of the body side and door to within 1mm of the inner panel flange.
- Do not cut across panel joints or pillars.
- Use approved glass for installation according to legal requirements.
- After cutting the outer panel, join the inner panel and the outer panel robustly together.

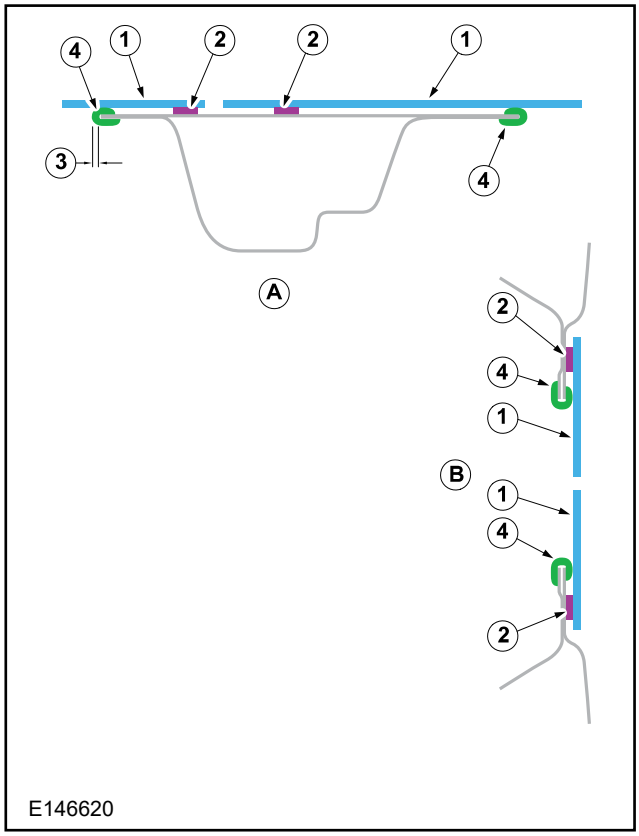
WARNING: For rear seat installation refer to 5.9 Seats.

Typical Van Body Side view for Window Engineering



For vehicle wheelbase and Roof height refer to the Body Builder Advisory Service website https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/upfit/bbas.

Section through Typical Van Body Side for Window Engineering



Item	Description
A	Horizontal Section Through C Pillar
B	Vertical Section Through Side Window (Non Side Load Door)
1	Glass
2	Adhesive
3	Cut outer panel flange flush with inner panel flange edge all round within 0 and 1.5 mm
4	Window trim strip

5.11 Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

5.11.1 Airbags

Illustrations and notes updated

Front Airbag Deployment Zones

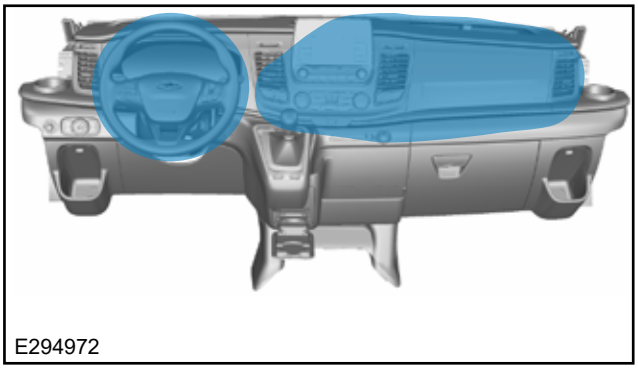
WARNINGS:

Do not place accessories in the deployment zone of the driver and passenger airbags as they may impair airbag deployment.

Do not place stickers or decals over the airbag covers as this may impair airbag deployment.

NOTE: All vehicles are fitted with a front passenger airbag as standard unless the front passenger seat is deleted. A passenger airbag deactivation switch is fitted in the glovebox. DO NOT remove or obscure the deactivation switch as this could restrict access or impair the function of the switch.

Front Airbag Deployment Zone



E294972

Side and Curtain Airbag Deployment Zones

WARNINGS:

Do not place accessories in the deployment zone of the side and curtain airbags as they may impair airbag deployment.

Do not place stickers or decals over the airbag covers as this may impair airbag deployment.

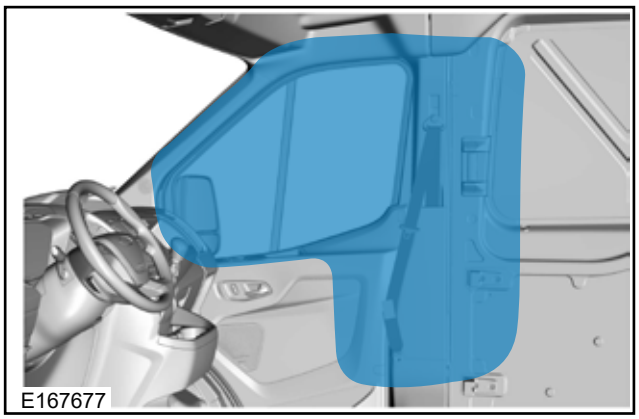
NOTE: All Passenger Vans/Buses get standard side seat/side curtain airbags. It is recommended to specify a base vehicle without airbags if planning modifications in this area.

Side Airbags (Seat Mounted): The side airbags on this vehicle have not been validated for use with swiveling front seats. Do not specify a base vehicle with side airbags if planning to retrofit a swiveling device on the front seats and/or an armrest on the outer side of the front seats; this may affect the function and/or deployment of the side airbags. Ensure any seat covers installed are designed to be used with side airbag equipped seats.

Curtain Airbags: Extensive modifications to the roof and headlining may impair deployment of the curtain airbags. If roof or headlining is to be modified or replaced, do not specify curtain airbags on the base vehicle.

If access to the roof is required, to install roof mounted exterior accessories for example, ensure the unmodified headlining is refitted using the existing mounting points.

Front Side Curtain Airbag Deployment Zone

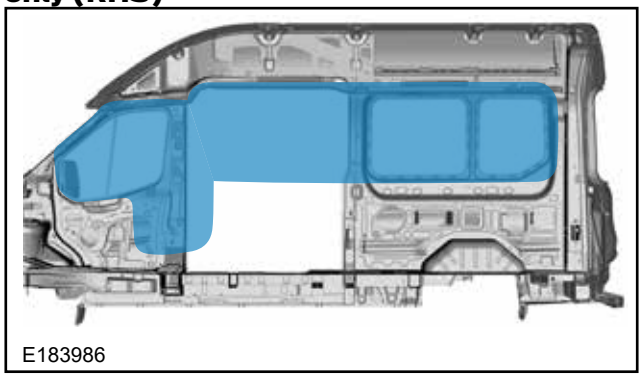


E167677

WARNING: Do not drill in Right Hand/Left Hand side retractor assy area.

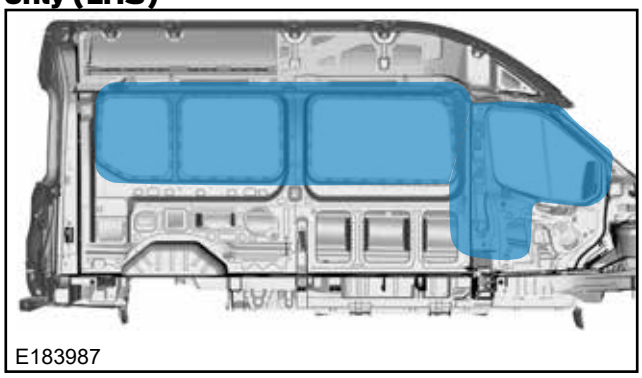
For additional information on No Drill Zones, refer to 5.6 Body Closures.

Curtain Airbag Deployment Zone - Wagon only (RHS)



E183986

Curtain Airbag Deployment Zone - Wagon only (LHS)



E183987

5.11.2 Restraints Control Module (RCM)

Illustration and content updated

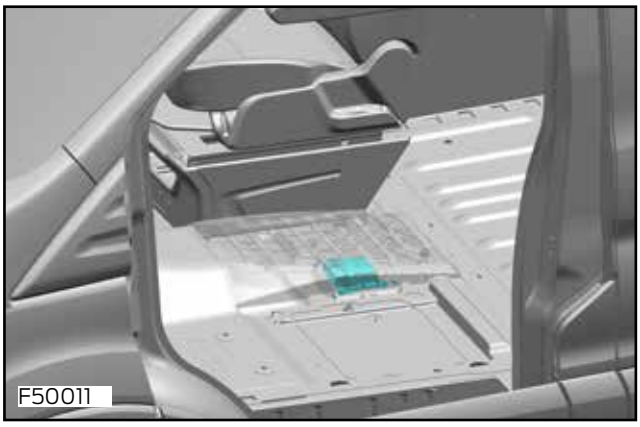
The RCM is located between the front seats, underneath the center floor console/"walk through" structure. (figure F50011).

WARNINGS:

Conversions or reinforcements in the area of the RCM may affect the side airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled side airbag deployment.

The RCM device is protected by the parking brake and/or console to prevent damage from occupants when stepping past the seat to access the rear of the vehicle. The parking brake/console or "walk through" structure must be maintained in their fitted position to ensure protection for the RCM.

RCM with Electronic Parking Brake and "Walk Through" Structure



5.11.3 Front, Side and Door Sensors

The airbag sensor for the front airbags is located behind the front grille. See figure E167679.

The sensors for the side airbags are located at the bottom of the B-pillars. See figure E145412 and, in the front door, see figure F50010.

Additional side airbag sensors are located under the windows on wagon variants. See figures E183988 and E183989.

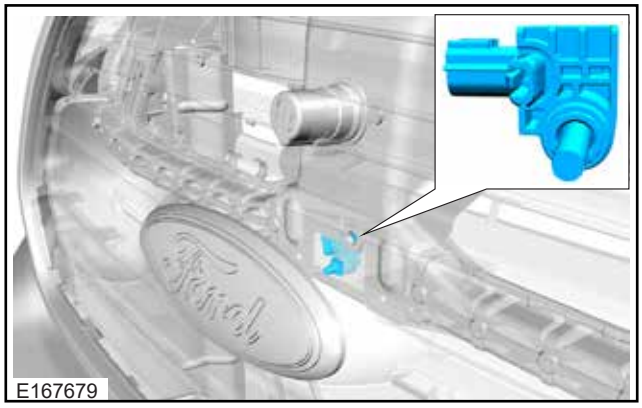
WARNINGS:

Modifications or reinforcements in the area of the sensors may affect the side airbag deployment timing and result in uncontrolled side airbag deployment.

Drilling or grinding operations in these areas is only permitted when battery cables are disconnected.

If the battery is disconnected, refer to 4.5 Battery Systems Battery and Monitoring Sensor section for reconnecting battery.

Front Sensor - All Variants



Front Side Sensor - All Variants

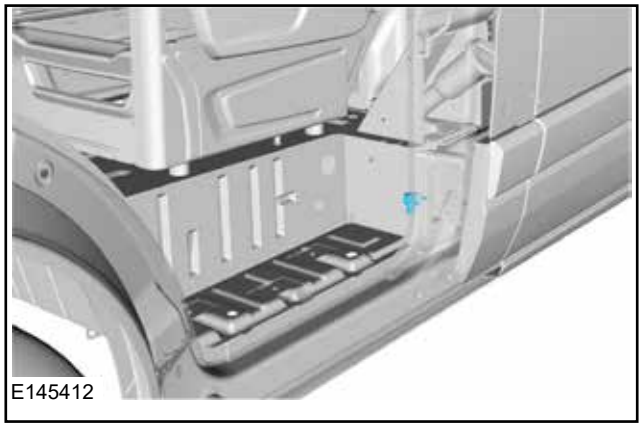
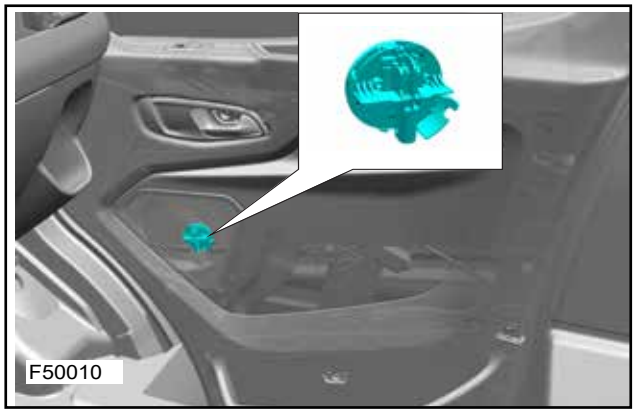
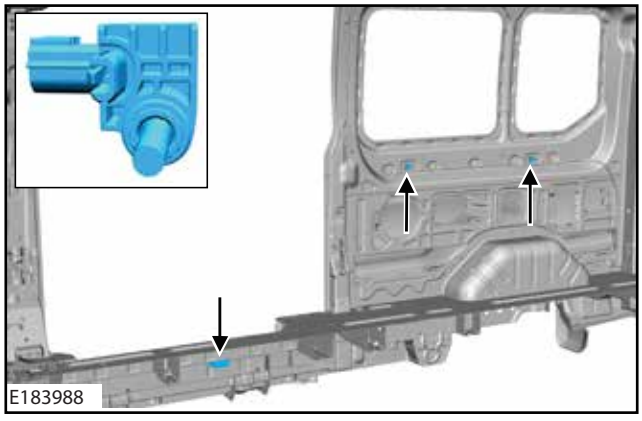


Illustration updated

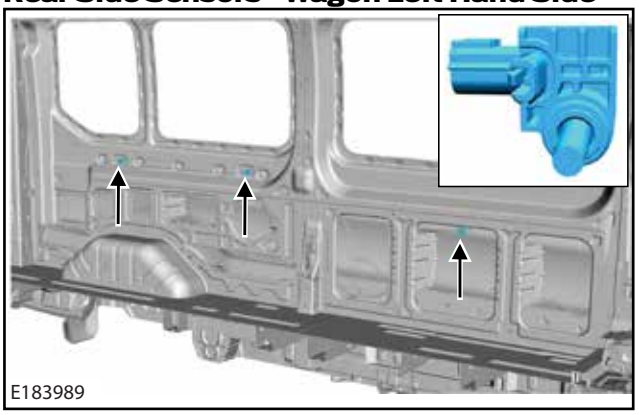
Door Sensor - All Variants



Rear Side Sensors - Wagon Right Hand Side



Rear Side Sensors - Wagon Left Hand Side



5.12 Seatbelt Systems

5.12.1 Seatbelts

WARNING: Follow removal and installation procedures for the seatbelt system to ensure correct function of the restraints system.

Seat Belt Buckles must not be modified in situ on the Seats. If Seat Belt Buckle requires modification or removal, then this must be performed by OEM Seat supplier.

The removal and re-installation of the seatbelt, buckle or any component of the seatbelt system should be avoided. However, if removal and re-installation of the system is required during the conversion, follow the removal and installation guidelines of the seatbelt system as described in the workshop manual.

When removing the seatbelt system, a seat belt webbing forked retainer should be applied to the webbing 200mm below the webbing button stop. This prevents a situation where all the webbing runs back into the retractor and the retractor becomes locked.

When re-installing, fit the retractor to the body first and gently pull the webbing out of the retractor to allow fitment of the D loop; then remove the forked retainer. If the retractor is locked, allow a small amount of webbing to reel back into the retractor to allow the webbing lock to release. Do not attempt to release the retractor by pulling on the webbing with significant force or by manually interfering with the locking mechanism.

5.12.2 B Pillar No Drill Zone

WARNINGS:

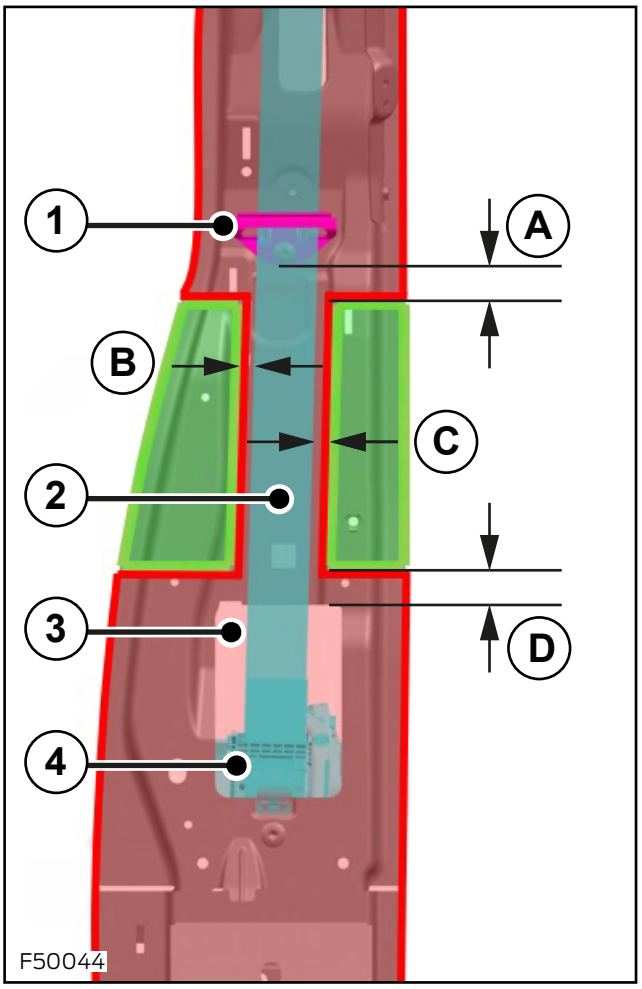
Do not drill in right hand/left hand side retractor assembly area.

Drilling is only permitted in the green area indicated.

Retractor damage: If drilling holes near or above the retractor and anchor pretensioner, the mechanisms must be covered to prevent swarf/debris from falling into the assembly and causing functional issues.

Webbing damage:
1) Any additional hardware fitted must not cut, pinch or interfere with the seatbelt webbing along its entire path (from retractor to D-ring area).
2) Avoid sharp brackets near webbing; all edges must have a minimum radius of 0.5mm.
3) Avoid upfitting parts that may change the belt routing to the occupant.

Front Seat Belt/B Pillar Drill Zone Definition



Item	Description
1	Webbing Guide
2	Seatbelt Webbing
3	Retractor Hole
4	Retractor
A	30mm Below Webbing Guide
B	15mm Left of Webbing
C	15mm Right of Webbing
D	30mm above Retractor Hole

5.12.3 Seatbelt Reminder - Title and content updated

Seatbelt Reminder for front row seats is a legal requirement for all new vehicles.

For front seats (including single and dual passenger seats) a sensor is provided in the seatbelt buckle to sense the seatbelt wearing status of the occupant, in addition to occupant detection mats in the seats.

If a vehicle is modified, these functions must be retained.

For rear seats, the seatbelt buckle sensor only is provided.

Chime Deactivation/Reactivation Procedure

The deactivation/reactivation procedure will deactivate/reactivate the audible signal for front seats individually or all the rear seats together.

1. With the vehicle stationary, Key On the ignition.
2. Perform 4 buckling and unbuckling actions. The sequence should start and end with 'unbuckled'.
3. The Seat Belt Reminder tell-tale lamp flashing will confirm successful deactivation/reactivation.

The procedure will not be started or will be cancelled if one or more of the following conditions occur:

- The vehicle starts moving.
- The status of another seat belt buckle changes.
- 30 seconds elapsed since vehicle is On.

NOTE: Any seat belt buckle can be used for the procedure.

NOTE: Additional (non-factory-fitted) seats cannot be added to the belt-minder function using this procedure.

NOTE: The Vehicle Modifier shall not provide the procedure for Seat Belt Reminder de-activation to the owner/operator via handbook or other easily accessible sources.

NOTE: If the seat trim is exchanged, the functionality of the Seat Belt Reminder will need to be successfully tested during trim development. The final seat assembly will need to be verified for function at End-Of-Line.

5.12.4 Wireless Beltminder - Section added

Low Roof Bus , Medium and High Roof Bus

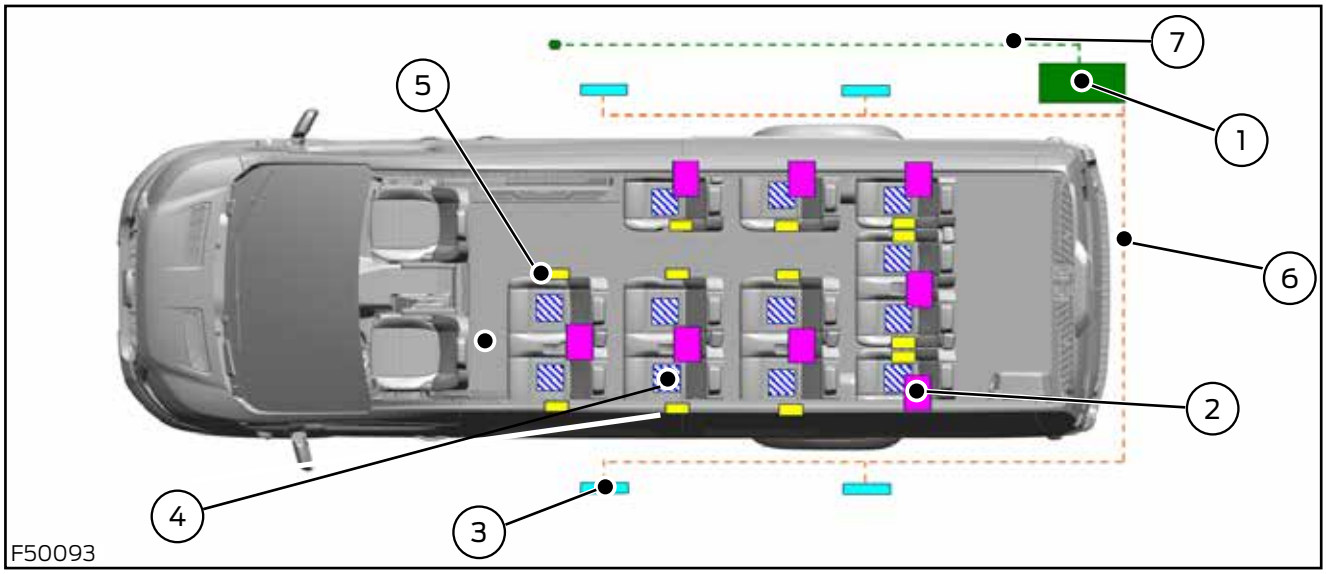
The Wireless Beltminder consists of a number of wireless transmitters in the rear seats and 4 antennas which are body mounted; see following figure. The transmitters in the rear seats need to triangulate their position by sensing the field strength of the antennas. The antenna power is calibrated for each body style.

The system will not measure the correct rear seat position for every rear seat if:

- Antennas are re-positioned.
- Mounted on different material.
- Shielded from the seats by any conductive (metal) material.
- Magnets are packaged closer than 70mm to the antennas.

NOTE: For installation and programming of additional Ford Rear Seats which are equipped with a wireless buckle status sensor the only method is by using a Ford diagnostic service tool with the correct level of security clearance. The Ford dealer has the correct tools and level of security to do this if required.

Seatbelt Minder Layout Example



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Wireless buckle controller (WBC)	5	Seat buckle switch
2	Wireless buckle sensor	6	Harness WBC to WBA
3	Wireless buckle antenna (WBA) (body mounted)	7	Main body harness
4	Seat Belt Reminder		

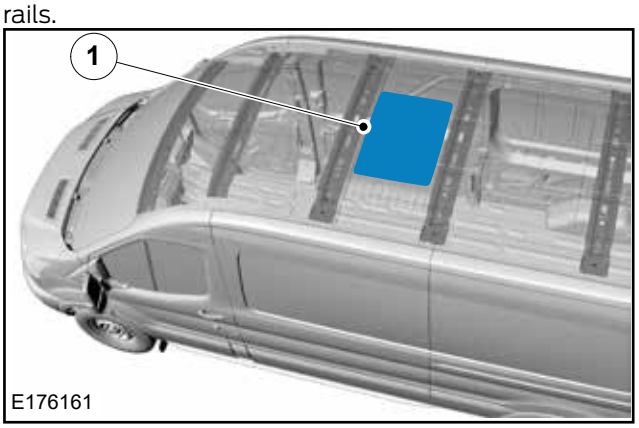
5.13 Roof

5.13.1 Roof Ventilation

General - Apertures must not cut through roof bows, see figure E176161. Ventilators must prevent direct entry of water and dust. A shut-off system should be available to prevent fume ingress. Interior and exterior projection legal requirements must be maintained.

In case a roof bow is cut or removed, it must be replaced by an appropriate structure providing the equivalent structural integrity and functionality as the original structure. Any legal requirements must be maintained.

Air Conditioning Units - Units weighing more than 55lb (25kg) must be internally supported on cross brace members distributing the load out to the roof rails.



E176161

Item	Description
1	Roof Panel Aperture

Ventilation Units - The roof panel can support up to 2.2lb (1kg) on an unsupported area of roof. Loads up to a maximum of 55lb (25kg) must be distributed over the full length of the roof rails between the roof bows.

5.13.2 Roof Racks and Load Carriers

Load Retaining Fixtures

WARNING: Refer to the Owner's Manual for information on Load Carrying and maximum roof loads.

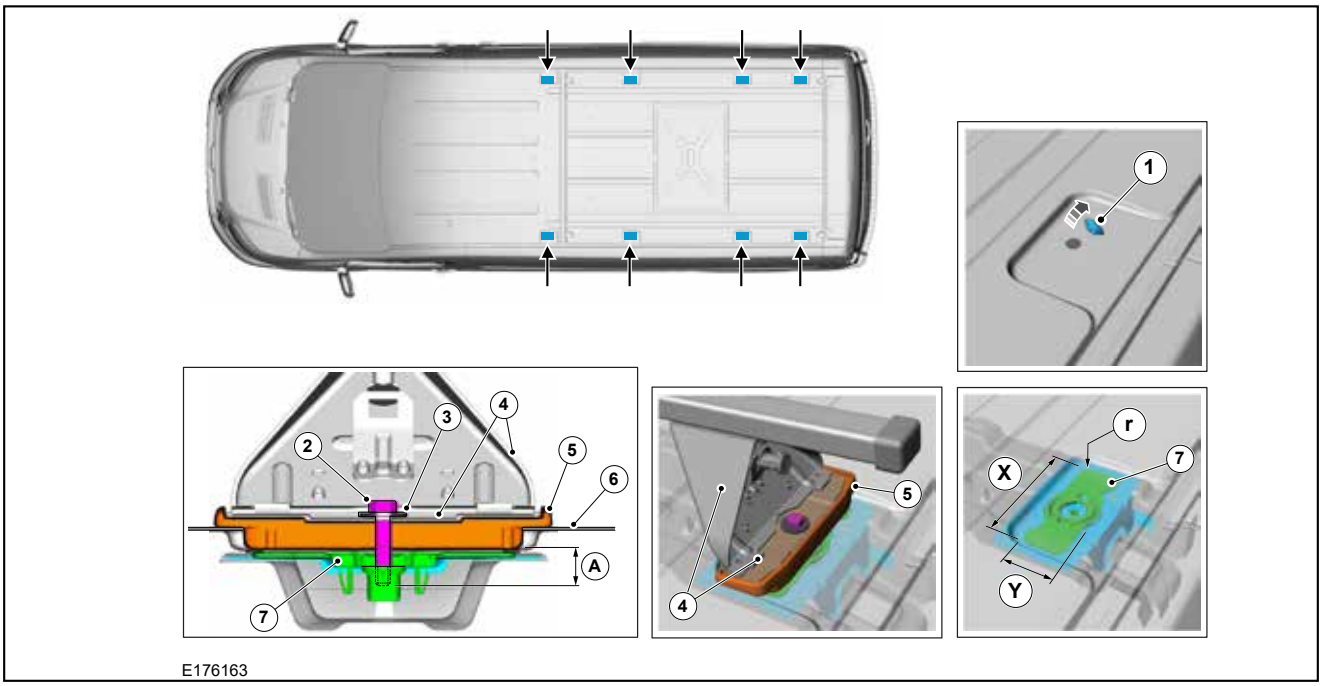
NOTE: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when fitting a roof rack.

NOTE: The number of load retaining fixtures vary depending on the vehicle.

Roof racks may be fitted to all Van, Bus and Kombi variants providing the following is satisfied:

- Load not to exceed 79.3kg at individual attachment points for local durability.
- Refer to 1.12 Load Distribution for guidance on center of gravity information.
- Ideally, the bearing surface of the roof rack attached should be the same as the reinforcement inside the roof. See figure E176163, item 7 and dimensions X,Y and r.
- Ensure sealing of surfaces, for example, with EPDM rubber material or equivalent and ensure sealing along the bolt for preventing water ingress into the interior of the vehicle. See figure E176163 items 3 and 5.
- The thread size is M8. The maximum intrusion of the M8 bolt into the roof is 16mm. See 'A' in figure E176163.
- Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when fitting a roof rack.
- When removing the roof rack ensure holes are properly sealed with sealing plugs or equivalent watertight elements.

Recommended Design Principles - Load Retaining Fixtures

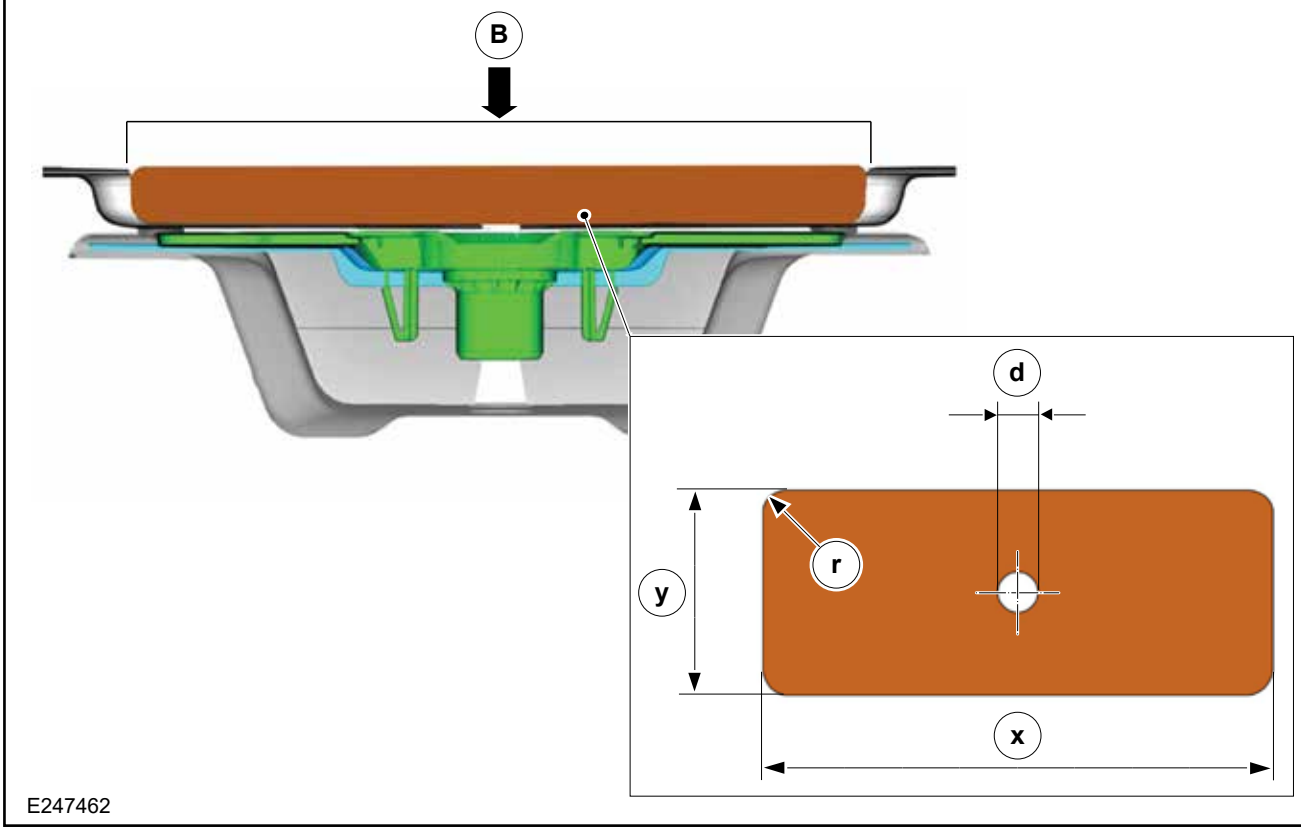


E176163

Item	Description
1	Plug to avoid water ingress and corrosion
2	M8 Bolt
3	Seal
4	Roof Rack System
5	Seal/Spacer (see E247462)
6	Roof Panel
7	Reinforcement
A	Maximum intrusion 0.62” (16mm)
X	5.1” (130mm)
Y	1.85” (47mm)
r	0.4” (10mm)

Item	Description
B	Load Bearing Surface – Lateral roof rack beams should be centered fore/aft over the roof mounting points/depressions
X	5" (127mm)
Y	2” (50.8mm)
r	0.25” (6.35mm) radius x4
d	0.394” ±0.0059” (10.00 ±0.15 mm) diameter hole (center of spacer)

Recommended Spacer Dimensions



E247462

NOTE: De-burr all edges.

NOTE: Avoid load application to Class A roof panel surface.

Trimline Tolerance ±/0.0197” (0.5mm)
Material Thickness Low Roof = 0.375” (9.523mm).
Material Thickness Medium and High Roof = 0.56” (14.28mm).

5.14 Corrosion Prevention

5.14.1 General

WARNINGS:

(BEV Only) Extreme heat, such as paint drying ovens, will cause the damage of the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery must be removed before using paint drying ovens longer than 45 minutes or with temperatures above 60°C (140°F). Failure to follow this instruction may result in damaging the high voltage battery, which could cause serious personal injury or death in a fire or explosion.

(BEV Only) Do not apply any coating/ corrosion prevention treatment to the HV battery pack area and connectors.

Avoid drilling into closed frame body members to avoid the risk of corrosion from waste metal filings.

If drilling is required, however:

- Re-paint metal edges and protect against corrosion after cutting or drilling operations.
- Endeavor to remove all waste metal filings from inside the side member and treat to prevent corrosion.
- Apply corrosion protection inside and outside of the chassis frame.

For Welding, refer to 5.1 Body.

5.14.2 Repairing Damaged Paint

After cutting or reworking any sheet metal on the vehicle, the damaged paint must be repaired.

Ensure all materials are compatible with the relevant Ford specifications and maintain the original performance where possible.

5.14.3 Under Body Protection and Material

WARNING: Do not over-coat or contaminate surfaces of components such as brakes or catalytic converters.

Ensure all materials are compatible with the relevant Ford specifications and maintain the original performance where possible.

Some proprietary products affect the original coatings.

5.14.4 Painting Road Wheels

WARNING: Do not paint wheel clamp surfaces in contact with other wheels, brake drum or disc, hub and holes or surface under wheel nuts. Any further treatment in these areas may affect the wheel clamp performance and the vehicle safety. Mask the wheel when changing the color or repairing paint.

5.14.5 Contact Corrosion

When using different materials with a different electrochemical potential, ensure that materials are isolated from each other to prevent contact corrosion caused by a potential difference.

Use appropriate isolation materials. Where possible, choose materials with low level of electrochemical potential difference.

5.15 Frame and Body Mounting

5.15.1 Mounting Points and Tubing

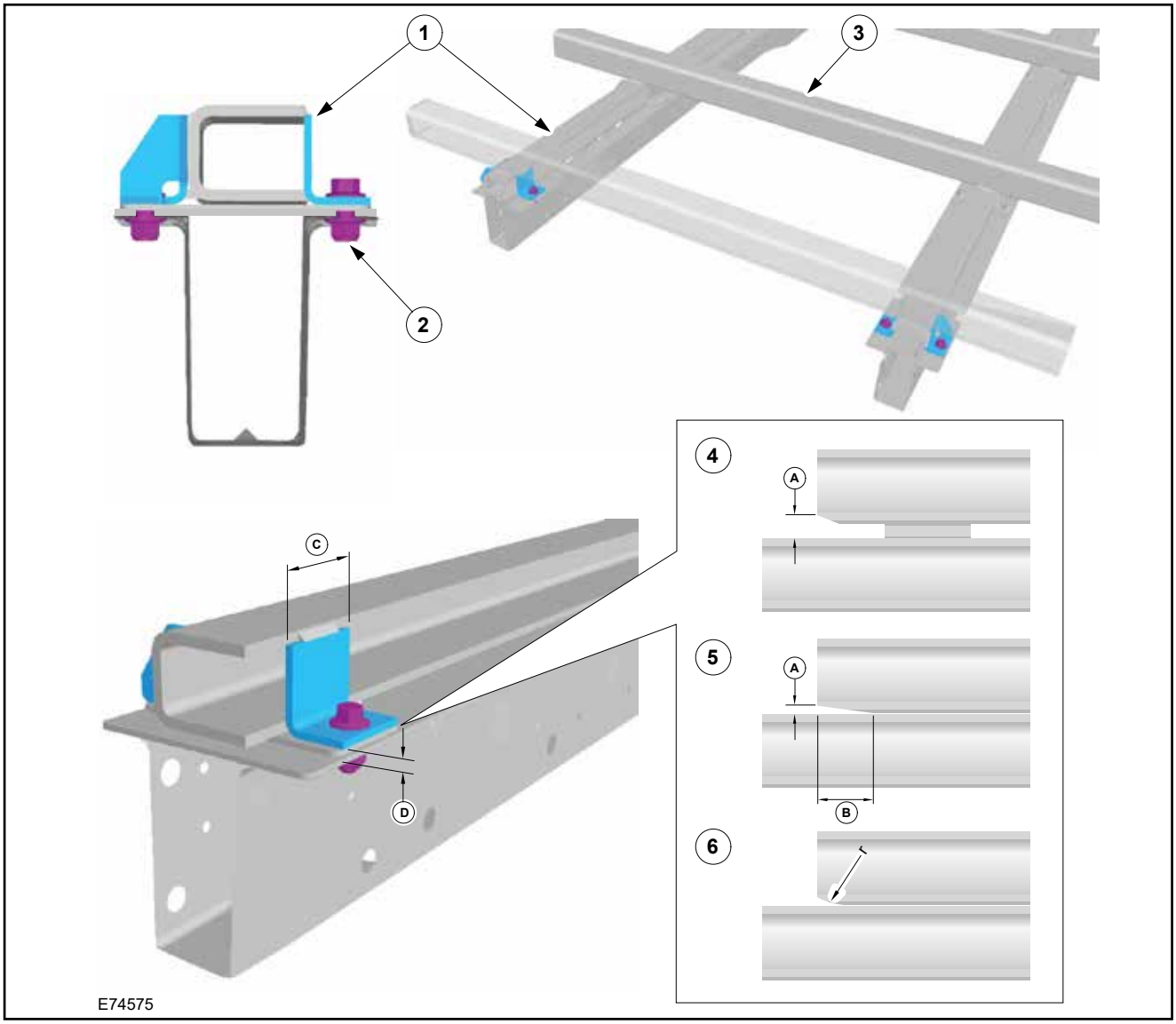
The holes on the frame are a result of the production process. They are not designed for fixing additional equipment. Tube reinforcements are required to avoid crushing of the box frame construction. If additional fixings to the chassis frame are required please follow the recommendation given in figure E192371. This does not apply to areas of load applications such as spring fixings or damper fixings.

Vehicle modifiers are responsible for added weight and design prove out.

NOTE: After drilling, deburr and countersink all holes and remove chips from the frame. Follow corrosion prevention.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

Subframe for Low Floor or other Equipment - Chassis Cab and Cutaway (Examples)



E74575

Item	Description
1	Continuous longitudinal float or body support member
2	Always use both sides of all chassis mounts
3	Crossmembers
4, 5, 6	Relief front end and longitudinal if there is a risk of stress concentration in chassis frame from longitudinal contact
A	0.2” (5mm) minimum
B	1.97” (50mm) minimum
C	1.97” (50mm) width for all brackets
D	Avoid longitudinal contact if possible which may create stress concentration
r	0.79” (20mm) minimum

5.15.2 Self-Supporting Body Structure

Bodies and structures can be judged as self-supporting providing they maintain the following rules:

- Cross members are used at each chassis mounting point. Please refer to 5.1 Body - Chassis Frame Body Attachment: figures E184867, E184868 and E184869, also E74576 and E189873 in this section.
- Each crossmember has a suitably engineered connection to the body sidewall (3) or to the continuous floor frame (5), shown in figure E74576.
- The body sidewall or the continuous floor frame supports any overhang beyond the chassis frame, whether on standard frame or extended frame.

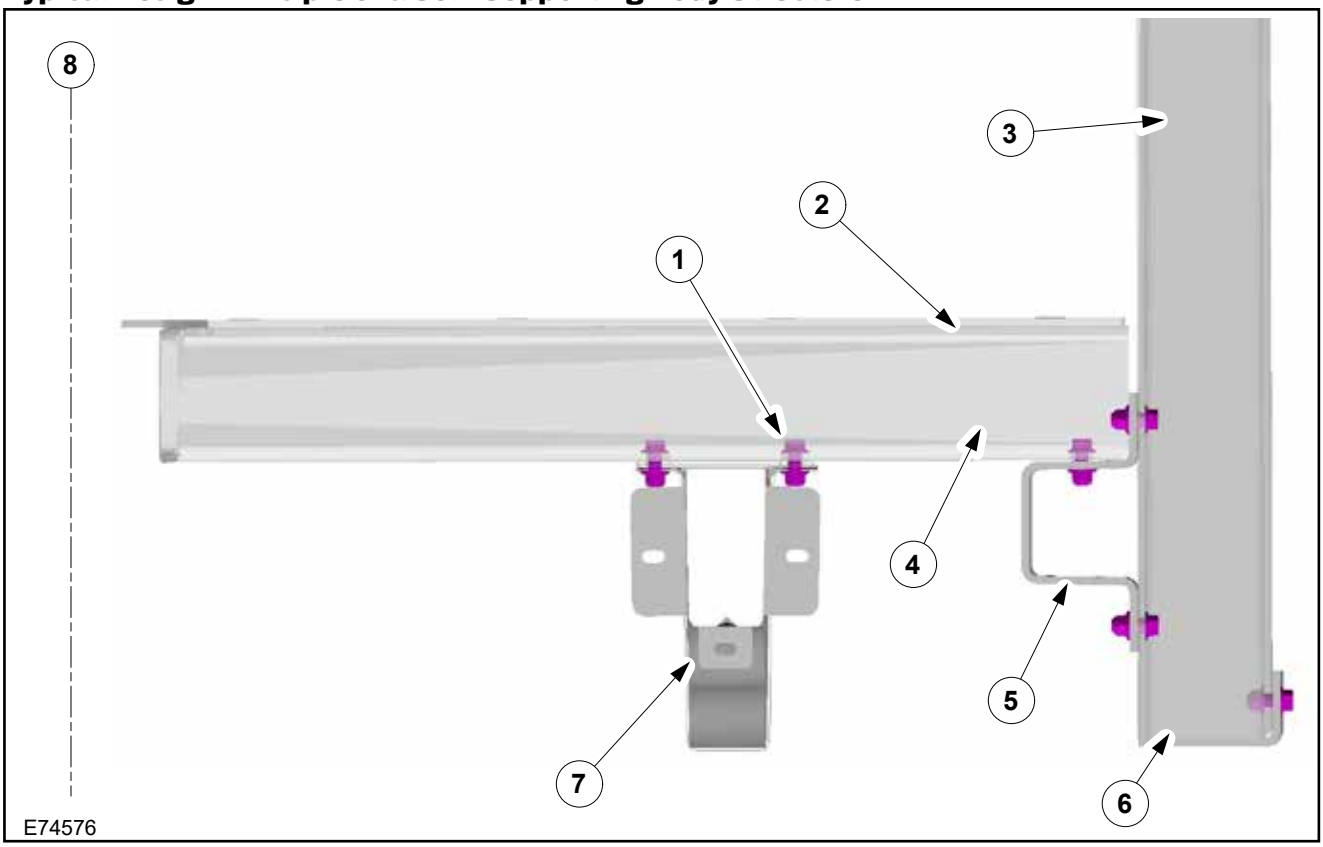
Alternatively, the self-supporting body structure can also be designed as shown in figure E74577. This concept is based on a self-supporting structure where the floor is mounted directly onto the top surface of the chassis frame.
Figure E74577 shows a generic vehicle cross section where the cross members and opposing outriggers are flush with the surface of the chassis frame side members.

It is important to the overall function of the vehicle structure that the outriggers are each connected to a continuous longitudinal floor side frame or a structural body side structure assembly.

Low floor re-work for guidance only:

- Engineer unique crossmembers and outriggers spaced at approximately 24" (600mm) maximum pitch.
- Outrigger moment to be re-acted with crossmember between chassis frame, with common through bolts where possible. See figure E74577 Low floor standard chassis frame.
- Drill frame and add spacer tubes. See frame drilling & tube reinforcing; see figure E192371
- Outrigger outboard ends should be attached to load bearing body side/floor edge frame or body side structure (including over wheel support).

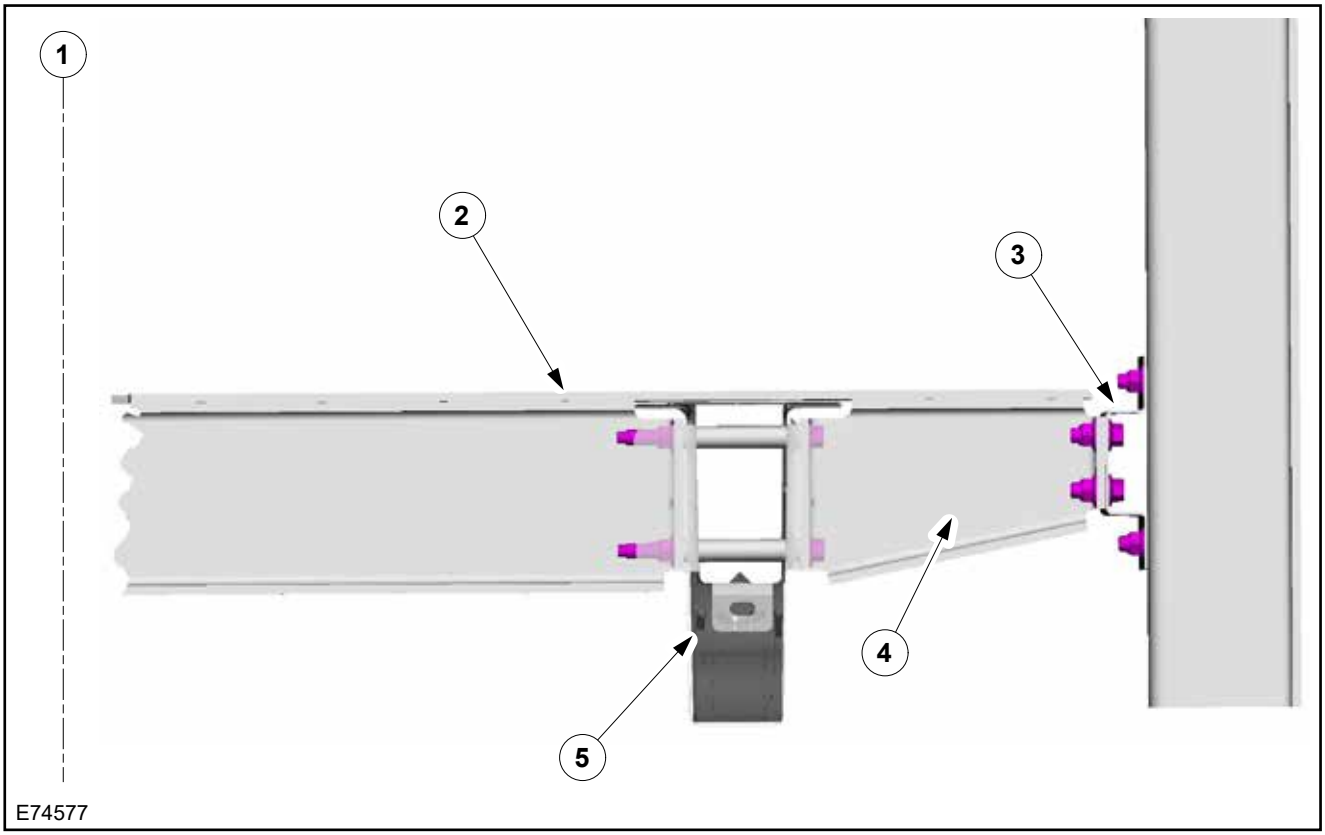
Typical Design Principle of a Self-Supporting Body Structure



E74576

Item	Description
1	Use all standard locations with 2x M10 fixings
2	Floor Panel
3	Body side frames
4	Floor crossmembers
5	Continuous floor U-profile frame
6	Longitudinal L-profile
7	Chassis frame rail of base vehicle
8	Vehicle center line of base vehicle

Low Floor Standard Chassis Frame



Item	Description
1	Vertical center line of vehicle
2	Floor panel
3	Continuous floor edge longitudinal
4	Outrigger
5	Low floor

- Structural wheel box should maintain longitudinal continuity with a rigid attachment to the floor edge frame or to the body side structure.
- Floor boards should be substantially attached to cross members and outriggers, but not to the chassis frame top surface.
- Low floor exhaust heat shields.

Refer to 3.5 Exhaust System (ICE).

5.15.3 Extended Chassis Frame

General:

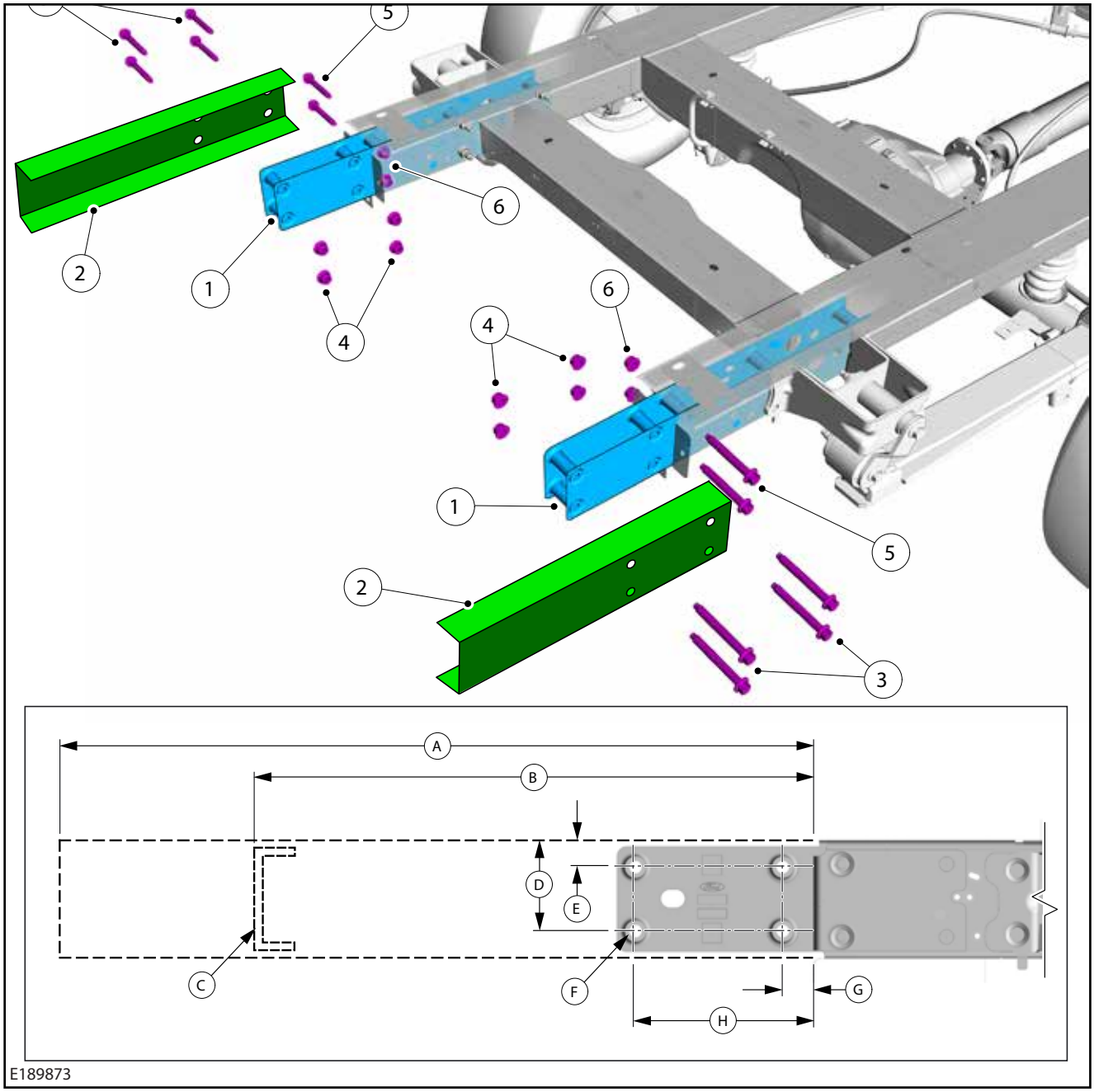
- Frame Extension Adaptors are supplied with vehicles.
- Bodies or equipment exceeding the standard extension length must be supported. Please refer to figure E74575 low body longitudinal members or figure E74576 self-supporting body structures.
- It is the Vehicle Modifier's responsibility to mark up the Owner's Manual advising the available payload. Axle plated weights and maximum allowable axle mass, as shown in this manual, must not be exceeded.
- The vehicle should be planned for uniformly distributed loads.

Extensions must comply with the following guidelines:

- Flat-beds and low bodies built onto Non Regular Production Option extensions must have continuous longitudinal members engineered by the Vehicle Modifier or equipment supplier. Please refer to figure E74575 to resolve the worst case moments at rear bump stop.
- Extensions should be secured to the Frame Adaptor utilizing the 4 bolts and 4 holes in the rear of the Frame Adaptor, total 8 per vehicle. See figure E189873 items 3 and 4.
- The Frame Adaptor should be secured to the frame utilizing the 2 bolts and 2 holes in the rear of the frame, total 4 per vehicle. See figure E189873 items 5 and 6.
- Drilling of the top flanges turned out is only permissible rearward of the spring hanger brackets, for continuity of the altered extension closing plate, if required. The diameter of the holes should be 0.24" (6mm) maximum.
- It is recommended that the altered extension has similar properties to the existing chassis frame.
- An equivalent open section for the extension assembly is at the Vehicle Modifier's discretion.
- Lightening holes in new extension and crossmembers are discretional.

Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extension

Non Standard Rear Chassis Frame Extension



E189873

Item	Description
1	Rear Frame Extension Adaptor (supplied with vehicles)
2	'C' Channel Frame Extension (Supplied, if required, by Vehicle Modifier)
3	4 x Bolts (each side) M12 -1.75 Grade 10.9 - Torque 66.4 -76 ft-lb (90-103Nm)
4	4 x Nuts (each side) M12 - 1.75 Grade 10.9
5	2 x Bolts (each side to be retrofitted by the vehicle modifier) M12 -1.75 Grade 10.9 - Torque 66.4 -76 ft-lb (90-103Nm)
6	2 x Nuts (each side to be retrofitted by the vehicle modifier) M12 - 1.75 Grade 10.9
A	Maximum Frame Extension Length - 138"(3505mm) RWB 30" (762mm), 156" (3962mm) LWB 50" (1270mm), 178" (4521mm) ELWB 80"
B	To be determined by the Vehicle Modifier
C	Greater than 60" (1524mm) extension requires additional crossmember
D	3.72" (94.4mm)
E	1.16" (29.4mm)
F	4 holes (each Side) 0.5" (12.8mm)
G	1.23" (31.3mm)
H	7.14" (181.3mm)

- Do not weld original chassis frame, except as specified when adding reinforcing tubes.
- Do not drill the top or bottom surface of the chassis frame, including the flanges turned out, except as recommended above for continuity of closure.
- Any alternative finish, such as hot dip galvanizing, is at the discretion of the Vehicle Modifier, providing it does not have a detrimental effect on the original Ford product.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

5.15.4 Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing

The chassis frame may be drilled, and reinforcing spacer tubes may be welded in place, providing the following is applied:

- Locate and drill holes accurately, using a drill guide to ensure holes are square to frame vertical center line (allow for side member draft angle).
- Drill undersize and ream out to size.
- Endeavor to remove all waste metal filings from inside side member and treat to prevent corrosion.
- Fully weld each end of the tube and grind flat and square, in groups if applicable. Be aware of side member draft angle.
- Apply corrosion protection inside and outside of the chassis frame.

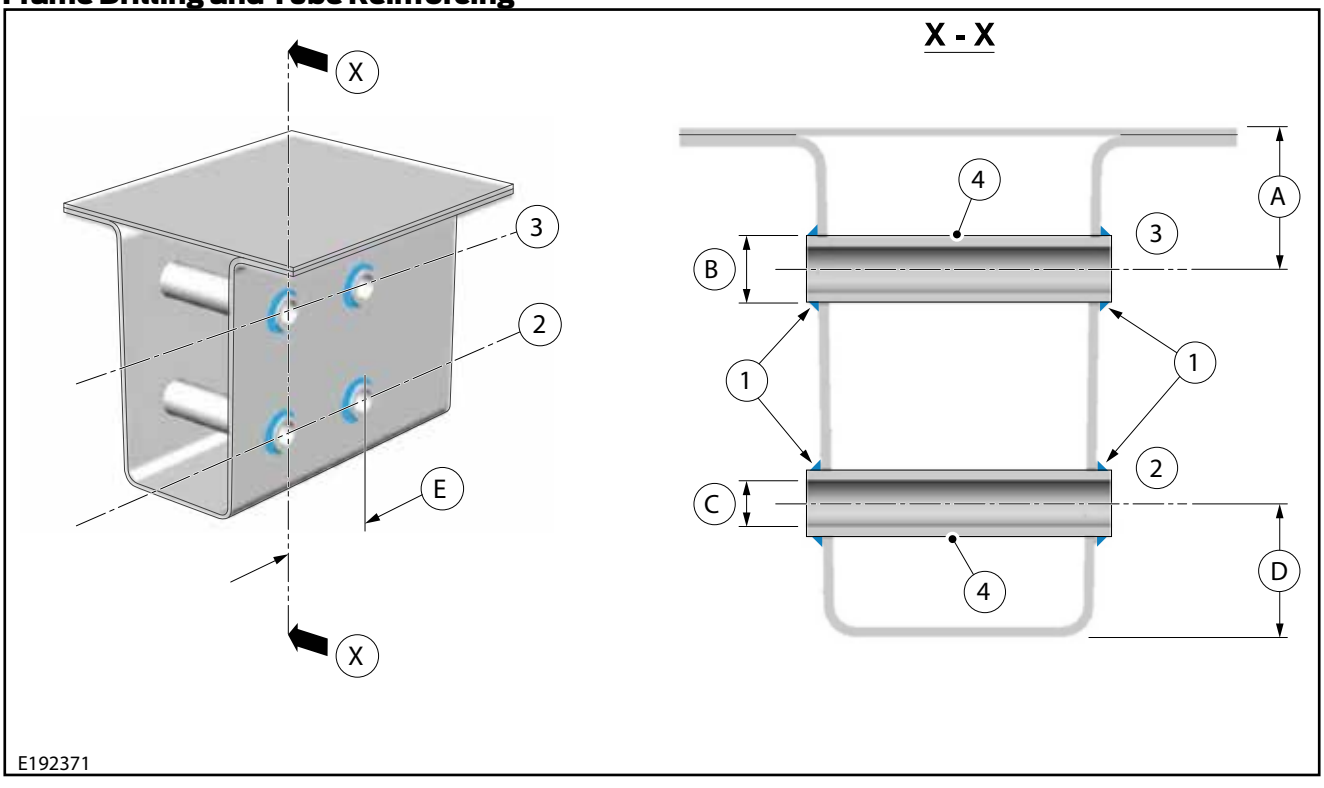
Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

- Holes should be in groups of two, either vertically spaced at 1.18” to 1.38” (30mm to 35mm) from chassis frame top and/or bottom surface, or horizontally at 2” (50mm) minimum pitch, 1.18” to 1.38” (30mm to 35mm) from top and/or bottom chassis frame surface.
- Always use M10 bolts with grade 8.8 minimum.
- Do not position tubes at the medium chassis frame height, this may create ‘oil canning’ of the deep section sidewalls.
- Where possible, the outrigger moments should be resolved by matching inner crossmembers between the chassis side members in line with the outriggers. Please refer to figure E74577.
- A diameter of 0.65” (16.5mm) is the maximum allowable hole size in the chassis frame sidewall, irrespective of the usage.

Avoid drilling into closed frame body members to avoid the risk of corrosion from waste metal filings.

Refer to 5.14 Corrosion Prevention.

Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing



E192371

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Full Penetration: Full diameter weld each side	B	Diameter 0.65” (16.5mm) maximum
2	Center line of holes/tubing	C	Diameter 0.43” (11mm)
3	Center line of holes/tubing	D	1.18” to 1.37” (30mm to 35mm)
A	1.18” to 1.37” (30mm to 35mm)	E	1.97” (50mm) minimum

It is recommended to always use a tube.

It is recommended to always use washers. Size minimum equal to lower rail width.

Drilling and welding of frames and body structure have to be conducted following the guidelines. Refer to 5.1 Body Welding.

5.15.5 Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mounting

Typical subframes and longitudinal members for flatbed and low or dropside bodies, or equipment exceeding the standard or Regular Production Order frame length, should adhere to the following guidelines (not for Motorhomes):

- Flat-beds and low bodies mounted on integral longitudinal members, channel or box section metal – not wood - must use both sides of all frame mounting brackets. See figure E74575 .
- Longitudinal members must be relieved at the front end if they are to contact the chassis frame top surface, to minimize stress concentrations. See figure E74575. However, it is preferable to mount the longitudinal onto the mounting brackets, with a clearance to the chassis frame top surface.
- Each set of brackets must use 2 x M10 bolts grade 8.8 minimum.
- The rear 2 sets of chassis frame mounting holes/ locations should have a full bolt torque with 100% grip. The attachment to the remaining forward chassis frame holes/locations must be precisely located and retained, but allow some relative flexing between the subframe and chassis frame. For example, clamp control devices such as conical washer stacks or machine springs with self-locking fasteners.
- Minimum floor heights will require wheel arch boxes to clear the rear tires, see Vehicle Data sheets for relevant tire jounce.

For flat beds and low bodies raised above the maximum ‘jounced’ tire position to obtain an uninterrupted flat floor surface see vehicle data sheets.

- Fore and aft longitudinal bracing must be added between the rearmost 2 cross members only.
- All chassis frame mounting holes/locations must always be used.
- All chassis frame mounting bracket fastenings must have a full bolt torque with 100% friction grip.

Symbols

3.5L PFDI and 3.5L EcoBoost Gasoline Fuel System 50
25 Gallon (95L) Fuel Tank 50
31 Gallon (115L) Fuel Tank 51
360º Camera 181

A

About this Manual 12
About this Publication 10
Accessory Drive 44
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 15
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) 127
Adaptive Cruise Control 124
Adding Connectors 146
Additional Internal Lamps 119
Additional Lighting for Rear of Vehicle Interior 119
Additional Loads and Charging Systems 100
Additional Vehicle Signals/Features 146
Aids for Vehicle Entry and Exit 26
Airbags 216
Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 216
Air Flow Restrictions 43
Alternator Characteristics 86
Ancillary Equipment - Subframe Mounting 229
Anti-Lock Control — Stability Assist 39
Automatic Engine Idle Shutdown (AEIS 109
Auto Transmission, Transfer Case and Transfer Unit 47
Auto Wipe/Lamp for vehicles with large overhangs 126
Auxiliary Fuse Panel (JZGAE) 136
Auxiliary Heater Systems 42

B

Battery Configurations
Battery Monitoring Sensor (BMS) 98
Battery Options 93
Battery Protection 101
Battery Rules 94
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) Relocation 165
BLIS and Park Aid Installation Kit 167
BLIS Radar Installation Considerations 168
BLIS Radar Relocation for Chassis Cab/Cutaways 167
Body 186
Body Closures 207
Body Control Module (BCM) 80
Body Structures - General Info 186
Boron Steel Parts 188
B Pillar No Drill Zone 219
Brake Hoses General 39
Brake System 39
Bull Shark Fin Antenna 122

C

Cameras 178
CAN-Bus System Description and Interface 77
Center of Gravity Height Calculation 32
Center of Gravity Height Test Procedure 30
Center of Gravity Position 30
Central Locking 128
Charge Balance Guidelines 85
Chassis Cab Body Extensions 26
Chassis Cab/Cutaway 192
Circuit Diagrams 85
Climate Control System 104
Commercial and Legal Aspects 14
Communications Network 77
Connector Pin Out Practices 60
Contact Corrosion 223
Contact Information 16
Conversion Effects on Parking Aids 26
Converter Fit Additional Third Party Batteries 95
Corrosion Prevention 223
Customer Connection Points 132
Cutaway Exhaust Systems 49
Cutaways 199

D

Disassembly - BLIS/Park Aid Packaging 168
Door Mirrors 212
Door Removal or Modification 128
Drilling and Welding 14
Driver Field of View 26
Driver Reach Zones 26

E

Electrical Connectors and Connections 132
Electrically Operated Door Mirrors 113
Electrical System Overview 59
Electric Drive Assembly 57
Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) 17
Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Awareness 62
Electronic Engine Controls 109
Engine Cooling 42
Engine/E Drive 41
Engine Types/E Drive Types 41
E-Transit BEV Vehicles 21
EV Charging 58
EV Training 10
Exhaust Heat Shields 49
Exhaust Pipes and Supports 49
Exhaust System 48
Extended Chassis Frame 226
Extensions and Optional Exhausts 48
Exterior Lighting 113

F

Formulas 32
Frame and Body Mounting 224
Frame Drilling and Tube Reinforcing 228
Front Climate Control System 104
Front End Accessory Drives (FEAD) 44
Front End Integrity - Cooling, Crash, Aero, Lighting 201
Front, Side and Door Sensors 217
Front Suspension 36
Front Windshield Camera 125
Fuel Economy and Performance 19
Fuel Fired Auxilliary Heaters 43
Fuel System 50
Fuses 131
Fuses and Relays 131

G

General (Brake System) 39
General Component Package Guidelines 26
General - Corrosion Prevention 223
General Information 82
General Product Safety Requirement 14
General - Rear View Camera CCAB/Cutaways 178
General Requirements 175
General Wiring and Routing 60
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms 215
Grounding 60, 153
Ground Points 153, 160
Guidelines When Converting Vehicles 90

H

Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems 128
Hardware 29
Harnesses and Aftermarket Kits 146
Heated Rear Window 215
Heated Seats 213
High Capacity Auxiliary Switches 143
High Current Supply and Ground Connections 133
High Voltage Battery 57
High Voltage Health & Safety Precautions 52
High Voltage System & Electrified Drivetrain 52
High Voltage System Overview 54
Horn 108
How to Use This Manual 12
HV Cooling System 56
HV System De-Energizing 56
Hydraulic Brake - Front and Rear Brakes 39
Hydraulic Liftgate 202
Hydraulic Lifting Equipment 202

I

ICE (Gasoline) Vehicles 20
Important Information 165
Important Safety Instructions 12
Information and Entertainment System 110
Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC) 107
Integrated Bodies and Conversions 191
Interior Lighting 119
Interior Lights and 12V Sockets 101
Interior Trim 211
Internal Partitions/Bulkhead 206
Introduction 12

L

Lamps for Wide Vehicles 113
Lamps – Front Fog Lamps 113
Lamps – Hazard / Direction Indication 113
Legal Obligations and Liabilities 14
Lifting 20
Lighting Loads 113
Load Compartment Interior Lining 211
Load Distribution 30
Loadspace 205
LV Charging System (12V) 82

M

Mandatory Requirements 165
Minimum Requirements for Brake System 14
Mounting Points and Tubing 224

N

Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH) 23

P

Package and Ergonomics 26
Painting Road Wheels 38, 223
Park Aid Sensor Installation Guidance 175
Park Aid Sensor Relocation Guideline 177
Park Aid System Check After Retrofitting 176
Parking Brake 39
Plywood Lining/Cladding 211
Positioning the Radar on Cutaways 171
Power and Connectivity Usage Recommendations 88
Power Connections 101
Power for Additional External Lamps 114
Precautionary Drilling/Welding - BEV 190
Precautionary Drill Zones - Cable Grounding 68
Precautionary Drill Zones - Chassis Grounding 71
Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Cables 63
Precautionary Drill Zones - HV Modules/LV Cables/Connectors 66
Precautionary Drill Zones - Rear Cargo Area 72
Precautionary Floor Drilling: BEV Vans 190
Precautionary Floor Drilling - Gasoline 190
Prevention of Squeaks and Rattles 61
Pro Power Onboard Cutaway/Single CCAB - BEV 183

R

Racking Systems 203
Rear and Side Windows 215
Rear Climate Control System 106
Rear Seat Fixing Positions 213
Rear Suspension 37
Rear View Camera Cable Routing CCAB/Cutaway 180
Rear View Camera Connector Changes 178
Rear View Camera Install Kit for CCAB/Cutaway 178
Rear View Camera Operation After Installation 181
Rear View Camera Service 181
Relays 131
Relocation of GNSS/5G Antenna 120
Remote Keyless Entry/TPMS Receiver 129
Repairing Damaged Paint 223
Restraints Control Module (RCM) 217
Restraints System 14
Reverse Brake Assist 181
Reversing Lamps 113
Road Safety 15
Roof 221
Roof Racks and Load Carriers 221
Roof Ventilation 221

S

SBG and Load Shedding - Functionality 102
Seatbelt Reminder 219
Seatbelts 219
Seatbelt Systems 219
Seats 213
Security, Anti-Theft and Locking System 207
Self-Supporting Body Structure 225
Sensor and Sensor Holder Painting Requirements 175
Sensor Positions and Tolerances 175
Single and Twin Battery Systems 99
Smart Regenerative Charging (SRC) 84
Spare Wheel 38
Split Antenna 122
Springs and Spring Mounting 37
SRC Override 84
Standard Battery Guard and Load-Shedding 101
Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) 109
Steps for Positioning the Radar on Cutaways 174
Supplemental Information 13
Suspension System 35
SYNC Radio and SYNC Radio with SDARS 111
System Layouts (Alternator-Based & BEV) 82

T

Test Functionality 85
Third Button on Key Fob - Single Chassis Cab 129
Third Party +12V PTO for Loads Exceeding 175A 97
Third Party High Power Mode 84
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 38
Tire Repair Kit 38
Tolerances 165
Towing 34

Trailer Tow Connectivity 76
Trailer Tow Electric Wiring Kit (C1DAD) 73

U

Under Body Protection and Material 223
Unused Connectors 60

V

Van (Seats) 213
Vehicle Dimensions 26
Vehicle Duty Cycle Guidelines 19
Vehicle Integration System (JRSAB) 146
Vehicle Interface Connector 134
Vehicle Maximum Speed Setting 109
Vehicle Ride and Handling Attributes 19
Vehicle Transportation Aids and Vehicle Storage 24

W

Water Leakage Prevention 61
Welding/Plasma Cutting 186
Wheel Clearance 38
Wheels and Tires 38
Windowed Van 213
Wireless Beltminder 220
Wiring Harness Information 60
Wiring Installation and Routing Guides 60
Wiring Specification 61
Wiring Splicing Procedures 61
Wiring through Sheet Metal 62